

Cortina's
CONVERSATIONAL
JAPANESE
With Illustrations

INTENDED FOR SELF-STUDY AND FOR USE IN SCHOOLS

With a Simplified System of Pronunciation

by

RICHARD D. ABRAHAM, Ph. D.
(Martin College)

and

SANNOSUKE YAMAMOTO



FIFTH REVISED EDITION

R. D. CORTINA CO. INC., *Publishers* NEW YORK 19, N. Y.

Exclusive Distributors to the Book Trade:

DOUBLEDAY & COMPANY, INC. GARDEN CITY, N. Y.

1974

Cortina Language Books



FRENCH IN 20 LESSONS
SPANISH IN 20 LESSONS
GERMAN IN 20 LESSONS
ITALIAN IN 20 LESSONS
MODERN GREEK IN 20 LESSONS
RUSSIAN IN 20 LESSONS
INGLÉS EN 20 LECCIONES
FRANCÉS EN 20 LECCIONES
INGLÊS EM 20 LIÇÕES
CONVERSATIONAL BRAZILIAN PORTUGUESE
CONVERSATIONAL JAPANESE
SPANISH CONVERSATIONAL GUIDE
SPANISH IN SPANISH
FRANÇAIS EN FRANÇAIS
ENGLISH IN ENGLISH
DEUTSCH AUF DEUTSCH
ITALIANO IN ITALIANO

ILLUSTRATIONS BY IRENE MURRAY

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 56-58607

COPYRIGHT © 1950, 1956, 1963 BY R. D. CORTINA CO., INC.

Printed in the United States of America



EX LIBRIS PROF. DR. DARCY CARVALHO.
SÃO PAULO, BRAZIL

PREFACE



There are many reasons why a practical knowledge of Japanese is both desirable and profitable for forward-looking Americans. During the postwar years the United States has developed far deeper political, economic, cultural and emotional ties with Japan than ever before in the history of our two countries. It is certain that American influence with the Japanese people will continue to be enormous for many years to come.

Japan at present is undergoing tremendous changes in her economic life. Since the war there has been a striking shift from low-quality, mass-produced goods to new industries manufacturing outstanding precision instruments, fine optical tools and solid household articles. America has played a prominent part in the development of these new and improved industries and will continue in a vital role, supplying a flow of trained people as well as equipment to Japan. Naturally, such high-quality products will find their place in American markets, providing new profitable contacts for enterprising Americans.

The economic and military conditions make it necessary for many Americans to live in or visit Japan. These contacts will have far-reaching effects in coming years, and it is clear that mutual understanding in these areas will be speeded up by a knowledge of each other's language. Nothing engenders confidence and respect so much as being able to converse with people in their own language. And naturally, the atmosphere thus created will make the American's stay in Japan more profitable, interesting and pleasant. Those who have a knowledge of the language are the best ambassadors for the United States in this important country.

Last, but not least, Japan offers enchantment, to the American tourist, with a variety of exotic scenery, quaint customs, fascinating local color in architecture, clothing, sculpture, religious habits, festivals and picturesque markets. Good hotel accommodations, delicious food, and meticulous service as only found in the Orient are all available at very low cost. And with a knowledge of Japanese you are free to travel to intriguing places that the ordinary tourist never sees.

All these are good reasons for studying Japanese, and the *Cortina Method* makes the study easy for you. The interesting lessons consist of normal, everyday conversations and a wealth of useful expressions. The exercises are based on the conversations and make you familiar with a wide variety of words and forms.

Language is habit! We are constantly expressing thoughts and ideas in speech, from habit, without paying attention to the words, phrases or idioms we use. When we say "How do you do?", "I've had a wonderful trip," "All right, let's go," we do so spontaneously. We are merely repeating a speech pattern that we have used so many times before that it has become automatic. Repetition, therefore, is the basis of language learning, and this is exactly the idea underlying the *Cortina Method*: to utilize the student's native language ability in the mastery of basic language patterns used in everyday topics, which the student absorbs and which encourage him to learn much faster than he would otherwise. The words are put to use right from the beginning, adding color and excitement to the lessons and engrossing the student's attention.

The lessons may be studied with little or no reference to grammar. However, a practical and easy-to-understand grammar is provided, which is tied closely to the lessons, for those who wish to use it.

For students wishing to accelerate their progress and master spoken Japanese in the

easiest possible way, the *Cortina Academy* has recorded the Japanese text of this book. The vocabularies and conversations are spoken by native Japanese instructors whose voices have been chosen for their excellence of pronunciation and accent, clarity of speech and pleasing tonal quality. In classroom study too, *the phonograph method of learning languages* (originated by Cortina) has been found an invaluable aid to both student and teacher for oral practice and ear training.



INTRODUCTION

The lessons and exercises of this book provide the essential conversation for every-day living and at the same time progressively teach the basic features of Japanese speech. The book is divided into the following sections: Record Text, Exercises, Grammar, Japanese-English Dictionary and English-Japanese Dictionary.

The Grammar is both functional and systematic. As each new point appears, there is a superimposed number in the record text which indicates the section of the Grammar where that topic is discussed. The student may, if he likes, read the entire topic, but many will prefer to study only as much of the grammar topic as may be necessary to understand the particular sentence or phrase of the record text. In later lessons the student will in most cases be referred to this same topic again, and after reviewing the first part, he will continue reading more of the topic until he understands the further development of the point in question. In the Grammar after the examples quoted, there usually appears in parenthesis a roman numeral indicating the record and an arabic numeral indicating the line where that example occurs. Thus, points of grammar are presented as needed, and yet the Grammar is not merely a collection of isolated notes, but is classified and related to the work as a whole.

Beginning with section 104, there are many new charts which facilitate the understanding and use of the more important forms. Sections 116 and 117 give the most widely used forms of every kind of verb in the Japanese language. The verbs are listed there alphabetically by their conclusive endings, so that the student has only to follow the chart to arrive at the tense, mood, or voice of any verb he may wish to use.

The Japanese-English Dictionary provided at the end of the book, page 219, is more than a vocabulary and should be consulted even when the text is perfectly clear, for not only are the words of the text included and their construction explained, but many other words related in form and meaning are given as well. This feature will aid the student in remembering the words he is learning and enable him to acquire a vocabulary of related words, and at the same time lead him to an understanding of Japanese word-formation.

The principal meanings of the words (not only the meaning of the word as used in the text and exercises) are given in the Dictionary. By consulting it, the student will learn the main concepts the word represents and he will know in what other senses it can be used if he desires to vary the sentences of the exercises. Also in this section of the work he will find all the inflected forms used in the text and notes as to how they are identified.

It is recommended, therefore, that the Dictionary be not neglected, but that it be studied along with the Grammar. Every word of the text appears there with an indication as to the record and line where it is used. If the student wishes to hear the pronunciation of any word, he should be able to find and hear it in a matter of a few seconds. The English-Japanese section of the Dictionary also gives all the words of the records, so that if a student forgets how to say a certain word he can find it there. If he wishes, he can then look in the Japanese-English section of the Dictionary and find out exactly where that word may be heard.

The English-Japanese Dictionary also gives many useful words with which the student may vary the exercise sentences.

In order not to confuse the student with too many diacritical marks, short or whispered vowels have been marked only in the record text while pitch is marked only in the Japanese-English section of the Dictionary. It is also important to note that an asterisk *after* a word in the Exercises indicates only that it appears in the Dictionary, but an asterisk *before* a word in the Dictionary itself indicates that the word is pronounced with level pitch.

Where a knowledge of the history of the various forms will clarify and relate them, the authoritative work of Sir George B. Sansom, *An Historical Grammar of Japanese*, published by the Oxford University Press, 1928, has been cited in the Grammar. This work has been referred to by the abbreviation HGJ.

Although the aim of this work is to teach spoken Japanese, the *katakana* syllabary with instructions for its use has been given in the Appendix. As this is the simplest form of writing and is known to all Japanese, it should prove useful in the writing and reading of brief notes.

The authors wish to express their gratitude to Sir George Sansom, who most kindly sent his own notes on his historical grammar, to Dr. Edwin B. Williams, Dean of the Graduate School, University of Pennsylvania, and general editor of the Conversaphone series, for invaluable aid in planning the work, to Mr. James Iannucci, head of the Language Department of St. Joseph's College, Philadelphia, for helpful suggestions, to Lt. Adam Cappello, Japanese language intelligence officer of the U. S. Army in Japan, for reading and correcting the manuscript and proofs, to Mrs. George Anderson for assistance in the construction of the dictionaries, to Mrs. William Goodis, for clerical aid, and to many students for help and advice.

R. D. A.
S. Y.



TABLE OF CONTENTS

LESSON	SUBJECTS OF CONVERSATION	SUBJECTS OF GRAMMAR	PAGE
I	Names of things and daily life. Greetings and taking leave	Declarative and interrogative constructions. Number. Word order. Use of postpositions <i>wa</i> , <i>ga</i> , and <i>to</i> . Affirmative and negative of the verb <i>to be</i> and of verbs in <i>-masu</i>	2
II	Names of people. Nationalities. Possession	Use of contraction <i>ja</i> . Postposition <i>mo</i> . Possessive relationship	6
III	Eating, drinking, reading, writing, and sending things	Formation of the past tense. Dative relationship and designation of the indirect object	12
IV	Wishes, ability and reasons. Sitting, Japanese style	Desiderative form of verbs. The periphrastic potential. The conclusive form of verbs. Classification of verbs. <i>Either . . . or</i> . Use of <i>kara</i>	18
V	School life. Taking and bringing people. Asking permission. Forbidding actions	Present progressive. Polite commands. Construction and use of the gerundial form in <i>-te</i> . Use of <i>mo</i> in asking permission. Use of <i>ikemasen</i> in prohibitions	26
VI	A social visit	Humble and honorific expressions. Form and use of adjectives. Adverbial form of adjectives. Comparative and superlative of adjectives. <i>Neither . . . nor</i> . Continuative form of the verb. Possession. Desiring things	32
VII	Counting and telling time. Age. Preference. Suggestions. At the butcher shop. At the grocery	Noun form of the verb. Negative stem of the verb. Form of the adjective with <i>gozaru</i> . Use of cardinal and ordinal numbers of Chinese and native origin. Fractions. Probable present and future	38
VIII	At the baker's. At the fish store. Days of the week. Months of the year. Dates. Taking a rickshaw	Use of <i>sō desu</i> . Interrogative adjectives and pronouns. Numeral auxiliaries. Phonetic changes in numerals and auxiliaries	48
IX	Asking directions. Taking a street car. At a department store	Alternative questions. Approximate number. Use of attributive form of the verb with <i>tsumori</i> to express	58

		intention. Use of <i>to if</i> . Direct discourse. Conditional meaning of the verb in <i>-tara</i> . Use of <i>yō desu</i>	
X	At the shoe store. Buying hats. Seasons of the year. At the tailor's	The verb <i>morau</i> meaning purchase. Wearing clothes. Affixation of <i>sugiru</i> to adjectives. Expression of <i>only</i> . Temporal conjunctions. The verb <i>oku</i> . Negation and affirmation. The postposition <i>ya</i>	68
XI	Laundry. At a Japanese restaurant	Relative clauses. Simple form of the present, past, and future. Indefinite adverbs. The interjection <i>yo</i>	78
XII	Stopping at a hotel. Taking a bath	Conditional. Potential form of the verb	88
XIII	A telephone conversation. Health. A visit from the doctor	Transitive and intransitive verbs. Passive form of the verb. Causative form of the verb	96
XIV	At the bank. At the post office. Sending a telegram	Use of <i>tokoro</i> . Use of <i>suru</i> to make verbs of nouns. The verb <i>shimau</i>	106
XV	At the barber's. Taking a train. A boat trip. Customs	Use of the suffix <i>zu</i> to express <i>without</i> . <i>Ni</i> with direct object of the verb <i>au</i>	116
XVI	Geography, religions, educational system, sports and diversions of Japan	Stereotyped expressions. The prefix <i>ma</i> . <i>The former, the latter</i> . The suffix <i>rashii</i>	126
	Grammar		133
	Appendix		213
	Japanese-English Dictionary		219
	English-Japanese Dictionary		239
	Index		247



KEY TO JAPANESE PRONUNCIATION

The Japanese ideographic writing can be transliterated, as in this book, with the Roman alphabet. The system of Romanization used is the Hepburn System, the one most widely accepted.

The sounds of Japanese are easy to master for English speakers. The instructions given below for the individual sounds will help the student greatly in acquiring a correct pronunciation.

VOWELS

The *short* vowels are:

a as in *father*, but shorter

e as in *met*

i as in *machine*

o as in *north*

u as in *rule*, but shorter

The vowels *i* and *u* between two voiceless consonants, and in some cases elsewhere, are whispered or not pronounced at all. They are usually marked short: *ɪ* and *ʊ*.

The *long* vowels, marked in the text by a short line above them, are pronounced as the corresponding short vowels but are held twice as long. Vowels followed by a nasal (*m* or *n*) in the same syllable are pronounced long. The long *ī* is written *ii*.

CONSONANTS

The consonants *b*, *k*, *m*, *n*, *p* and *w* are pronounced as in English.

The *w* of the postposition (*w*)*o* is not usually heard except after a word ending in *n*. It is therefore placed in parentheses, as are all letters which may or may not be pronounced.

D and *t* are pronounced as in English, but with the tongue touching the upper teeth.

G is always pronounced as in *give* or *go*.

S approximately as in *see*

Sh " " " " *ship*

Z " " " " *zinc*

Ts " " " " *gets*

Ch " " " " *cherry*

J " " " " *jeer*

F, which occurs only before *u*, is pronounced with the lips close together.

H before *a*, *e* and *o* is pronounced as in English, but before *i* as a strong form of *h* (as *ch* in the German "*Chirurg*" or *g* in the Spanish "*gitano*").

R is pronounced by a quick flapping of the tip of the tongue lightly touching the upper gums.

The double consonants *kk*, *mm*, *nn*, *pp*, *ss*, *ssh* (long *sh*), *tts* (long *ts*) and *tch* (long *ch*) are held twice as long as the single ones.

For further hints on pronunciation and accentuation, the student is referred to pages 133 to 136.

1

Dai⁵² Ikk(w)a (Lesson I)

✓ arigatō thank you
 arimasen is not, are not,
 am not
 asa morning
 ban evening
 desū is, are, am
 empitsū pencil
 fude (*writing*) brush
 ✓ ga a postposition used like wa
 but emphasizing the subject
 go language
 gogo afternoon
 hai yes
 hon book
 iie no
 ikaga how
 isu chair
 ✓ ja a contraction of *de wa*; used
 after nouns and pronouns
 before arimasen

✓ ka an interrogative particle
 placed after the verb to make
 the sentence a question
 kakimasen do not write, does
 not write
 kakimasū write, writes
 kami paper
 konnichi this day
 kore this, these
 mai every
 manabimasen do not study,
 does not study
 manabimasū verb study,
 studies
 nani what
 nichi day; —gogo afternoon
 Nippon Japan; —go Japanese
 language
 sayōnara goodbye

shimasū do, does
 shimbun newspaper
 sō thus, so
 tegami letter
 to and; a postposition connect-
 ing nouns and pronouns
 ✓ tsukue desk, table
 wa a postposition indicating
 that the preceding word is
 the logical subject of the sen-
 tence; may be translated by
 as for
 ✓ (w)o a postposition usually
 indicating the preceding
 word as the object of the
 verb; has no English equiv-
 alent
 yasūmi rest
 yomimasū read, reads
 zasshi magazine

Konnichi wa.
 Ikaga desū ka?
 ✓ Hai, arigatō.
 Nan(i) desū ka?¹
 5 Empitsū² desū.
 ✓ Nani desū ka?
 Pen desū.
 Nani desū ka?
 Hon desū.
 10 Nani desū ka?
 Tegami desū.

 Nan(i) desū ka?
 Isu to tsukue desū.
 Nani desū ka?
 15 Zasshi to shimbun⁴ desū.
 Nan(i) desū ka?
 Kami to fude desū.

 Kore wa³ fude desū ka?
 Hai, fude desū.
 20 Kore⁴ wa hon desū ka?

Good day.
 How are you?
 Fine, thanks.
 What is it?
 It is a pencil.
 What is it?
 It is a pen.
 What is it?
 It is a book.
 What is it?
 It is a letter.

What is it?
 It is a chair and a desk.
 What are they?
 They are magazines and newspapers.
 What are they?
 They are paper and a writing brush.

Is this a writing brush?
 Yes, it is a brush.
 Is this a book?



- Hai, hon⁴ desū.
 Kore wa empitsu desū ka?
 Hai, sō desū.
 Kore wa tegami desū ka?
 25 Hai, sō desū.
- ✓ Kore ga⁵ hon desū ka?
 ✓ Iie, hon ja⁶ arimasen.⁸ shimbun desū.
 Kore ga empitsu desū ka?
 Iie, sō ja arimasen; pen desū.
 30 Kore ga tsukue desū ka?
 Iie, sō ja⁶ arimasen; isu desū.
- ✓ Mai asa nani (w)o³ shimasū⁷ ka?
 Mai asa shimbun (w)o³ yomimasū.
 ✓ Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka?
 35 Mai nichigogo tegami (w)o kakimasū.
 Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka?
 Mai ban Nippon go (w)o manabimasū.
 Mai asa hon (w)o yomimasū ka?
 Iie, mai asa wa hon (w)o yomimasen.⁸
 40 Mai nichigogo Nippon go (w)o manabimasū ka?
 Iie, mai nichigogo wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasen.
 Mai ban tegami (w)o kakimasū ka?
 45 Iie, mai ban wa tegami (w)o kakimasen.
 Mai ban wa zasshi (w)o yomimasen;
 Nippon go (w)o manabimasū.
 Sayōnara.
 ✓ O-yasūmi nasai.

- Yes, it is a book.
 Is this a pencil?
 Yes, it is.
 Are these letters?
 Yes, they are.
- Is *this* a book?
 No, it is not a book; it is a newspaper.
 Is *this* a pencil?
 No, it is not, it is a pen.
 Is *this* a desk?
 No, it isn't; it is a chair.
- What do you do every morning?
 Every morning I read the newspaper
 What do you do every afternoon?
 Every afternoon I write letters.
 What do you do every evening?
 I study Japanese every evening.
 Do you read books every morning?
 No, I don't read books every morning.
 Do you study Japanese every afternoon?
 No, I don't study Japanese every afternoon.
- Do you write letters every evening?
 No, I don't write letters every evening.
 I don't read magazines every evening; I study Japanese.
 Goodbye.
 Goodnight.

Exercises

Words followed by an asterisk appear in the Dictionary page 219.

Nani desū ka? Empitsu desū.

What is it? It is a pencil.

Nani desū ka? Pen desū.

Nani desū ka? Hon desū.

Nani desū ka? Isu desū.

Nani desū ka? Shimbun desū.

Nani desū ka? Empitsu to pen to kami desū.

What are they? They are pencils, pens, and paper.

Nani desū ka? Hon to shimbun to zasshi desū.

Nani desū ka? Tsukue to isu to tegami desū.

Nani desū ka? Empitsu to pen desū.

What are they? They are a pencil and a pen.

Nani desū ka? Hon to tegami desū.

Nani desū ka? Isu to tsukue desū.

Nani desū ka? Zasshi to shimbun desū.

Nani desū ka? Fude to kami desū.

Nani desū ka? Fude to empitsu to kami desū.

Nani desū ka? Isu to zasshi to pen desū.



Kore wa nani desū ka? Hon desū.

What is this? It is a book.

Kore wa nani desū ka? Empitsu desū.

Kore wa nani desū ka? Tegami desū.

Kore wa nani desū ka? Kami desū.

Kore wa nani desū ka? Shimbun desū.

Kore wa hon desū ka? Hai, hon desū.

Is this a book? Yes, this is a book.

Kore wa zasshi desū ka? Hai, zasshi desū.

Kore wa pen desū ka? Hai, pen desū.

Kore wa fude desū ka? Hai, fude desū.

Kore wa tsukue desū ka? Hai, tsukue desū.

Kore wa tsukue to isu desū ka? Hai kore wa tsukue to isu desū.

Are these desks and chairs? Yes, they are desks and chairs.

Kore wa kami to tegami desū ka? Hai, kami to tegami desū.

Kore wa shimbun to zasshi desū ka? Hai, shimbun to zasshi desū.

Kore wa empitsu to fude desū ka? Hai, empitsu to fude desū.

Kore wa pen to fude desū ka? Hai, pen to fude desū.

Kore wa tsukue to isu to hon desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Are these desks, chairs, and books? Yes, they are.

Kore wa kami to tegami to pen desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Kore wa shimbun to zasshi to tegami desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Kore wa empitsu to pen to hon desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Kore wa fude to pen to kami desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Kore wa shimbun desū ka? Iie, shimbun ja arimasen.

Is this a newspaper? No, it is not a newspaper.

Kore wa tegami desū ka? Iie, tegami ja arimasen.

Kore wa zasshi desū ka? Iie, zasshi ja arimasen.

Kore wa isu desū ka? Iie, isu ja arimasen.

Kore wa tsukue desū ka? Iie, tsukue ja arimasen.

Kore wa pen to empitsu to kami desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Are these pens, pencils and paper? No, they are not.

Kore wa tegami to zasshi to shimbun desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Kore wa tsukue to isu to hon desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Kore wa kami to empitsu to pen desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Kore wa fude to kami to hon desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Kore wa hon desū; sō desū ka? Iie, shimbun desū.

This is a book, isn't it? No, it is a newspaper.

Kore wa empitsu desū; sō desū ka? Iie, pen desū.

Kore wa tegami desū, sō desū ka? Iie, kami desū.

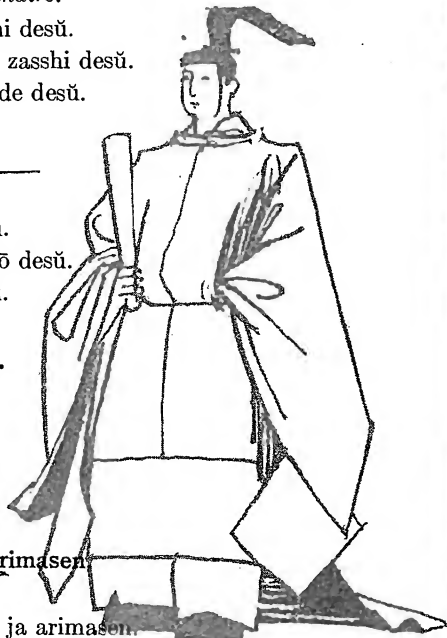
Kore wa zasshi desū; sō desū ka? Iie, hon desū.

Kore wa pen desū, sō desū ka? Iie, fude desū.

Kore wa pen desū ka? Iie, pen ja arimasen; fude desū.

Is this a pen? No, it is not a pen; it is a brush.

Kore wa isu desū ka? Iie, isu ja arimasen; tsukue desū.



desu ne (NE)

Kore wa empitsu desū ka? Iie empitsu ja arimasen; pen desū.
 Kore wa shimbun desū ka? Iie, shimbun ja arimasen; zasshi desū.
 Kore wa hon desū ka? Iie, hon ja arimasen; shimbun desū.

Mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai asa, shimbun (w)o yomimasū.

What do you do every morning? Every morning, I read the newspaper.

Mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai asa, hon (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai asa, tegami (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai asa, tegami (w)o kakimasū.
 Mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai asa, Nippon go (w)o manabimasū.
Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Nippon go (w)o manabimasū.

What do you do every afternoon? I study Japanese.

Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Tegami (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Hon (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Zasshi (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Tegami (w)o kakimasū.

Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai ban tegami (w)o yomimasū.

What do you do every evening? Every evening I read letters.

Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai ban hon (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai ban shimbun (w)o yomimasū.
 Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai ban Nippon go (w)o manabimasū.
 Mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Mai ban tegami (w)o kakimasū.

Mai nichishimbun (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichishimbun wa yomimasen.

Do you read the newspaper every day? No, not every day.

Mai nichishimbun (w)o kakimasū ka? Iie, mai nichishimbun wa kakimasen.
 Mai nichishimbun hon (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichishimbun wa yomimasen.
 Mai nichishimbun Nippon go (w)o manabimasū ka? Iie, mai nichishimbun wa manabimasen.
 Mai nichishimbun zasshi (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichishimbun wa yomimasen.

Mai nichigogo tegami (w)o kakimasū ka? Iie, mai nichigogo wa kakimasen.

Do you write letters every afternoon? No, not every afternoon.

Mai nichigogo shimbun (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichigogo wa yomimasen.
 Mai nichigogo hon (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichigogo wa yomimasen.
 Mai nichigogo Nippon go (w)o manabimasū ka? Iie, mai nichigogo wa manabimasen.
 Mai nichigogo zasshi (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichigogo wa yomimasen.

Mai ban Nippon go (w)o manabimasū ka? Iie, mai ban wa manabimasen.

Do you study Japanese every evening? No, not every evening.

Mai ban shimbun (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai ban wa yomimasen.
 Mai ban zasshi (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai ban wa yomimasen.
 Mai ban tegami (w)o kakimasū ka? Iie, mai ban wa kakimasen.
 Mai ban hon (w)o yomimasū ka? Iie, mai ban wa yomimasen.



2

Dai Ni K(w)a (Lesson II)

aikawarazu same as usual
 Amerika-jin American (person)
 anata *sg.* you
 anatagata *pl.* you
 ano *adj.* that, those (distant from the person spoken to)
 are *pron.* that, those (distant from the person spoken to)
 dare who
 genki health
 hito person; kono —; sono —;
 ano — he, she
 hitotachi people; kono —;
 sono —; ano — they
 Jirō *man's given name*

komban this evening
 kono this, these
 Matsumoto *a family name*
 mina all, everybody, everything
 mo also
 no *particle indicating possession*
 Nippon-jin Japanese (person)
 onna woman
 onna no hito woman; kono —;
 sono —; ano — she
 onna no hitotachi women;
 kono —; sono —; ano —
 they (women)
 otoko male, man

otoko no hito man; kono —;
 sono —; ano — he
 otoko no hitotachi men; kono
 —; sono —; ano — they
 (men)
 San Mr., Miss, Mrs.
 Shina-jin Chinese (person)
 sono, *adj.* that, those (near the person spoken to)
 sore *pron.* that, that one,
 those (near the person spoken to)
 Takahashi *a family name*
 watakushi I; —no my, mine
 watakushidomo we; —no our,
 ours

Komban wa.

Ikaga desū ka?

Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu.⁹⁸ Genki desū.

5 Anata wa Takahashi Jirō San desū ka?

Iie, watakushi wa Takahashi Jirō ja⁶ arimasen.

Good evening.

How are you?

Thank you. Same as usual. I am in good health.

Are you Mr. Jiro Takahashi?

No, I am not Jiro Takahashi.

Anata wa dare desū ka?

Watakushi wa Matsumoto⁹ desū.

10 Anata wa Nippon-jin desū ka?

Iie, Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

Ano¹⁰ onna no hito¹¹ wa Shina-jin desū ka?

Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Ano otoko no hito¹¹ wa dare desū ka?

15 Takahashi Jirō San⁹ desū.

Anatagata¹¹ wa Amerika-jin desū ka?

Hai, watakushidomo wa Amerika-jin desū.

Anata mo¹² Amerika-jin desū.

Ano hitotachi¹¹ wa mina Nippon-jin desū ka?

20 Iie, ano otoko no hitotachi¹¹ wa Nippon-jin desū; ano onna no hitotachi¹¹ wa Shina-jin desū.

Kore¹⁰ wa dare no empitsū desū ka?

Sore¹⁰ wa watakushi no¹³ empitsū desū.

Who are you?

I am (Mr.) Matsumoto.

Are you Japanese?

No, I am not Japanese.

Is she Chinese?

No, she is not.

Who is he?

He is Mr. Jiro Takahashi.

Are you Americans?

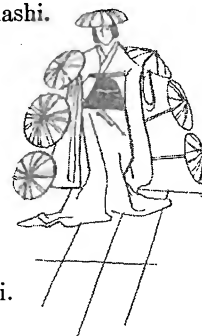
Yes, we are Americans. You also are an American.

Are they all Japanese?

No, those men are Japanese; those women are Chinese.

Whose pencil is this?

That is my pencil.



- 25 Sore wa dare no hon desū ka? Whose book is that?
 Kore wa sono¹⁰ otoko no hito no hon desū. This is his book.
 Are¹⁰ wa anata no shimbun desū ka? Is that your newspaper?
 Iie, watakūshi no¹³ ja arimasen; kono¹⁰ onna No, it is not mine; it is her newspaper.
 no hito no shimbun desū.
- 30 Kore wa anatagata no zasshi desū ka? Are these your magazines?
 Iie, watakūshidomo no zasshi ja arimasen; No, they are not our magazines; they are
 ano otoko no hitotachi no zasshi desū. their (those men's) magazines.
 Kore wa dare no desū ka? Whose is this?
 Sore wa ano onna no hitotachi no desū. That is theirs. (those women's)
- 35 Sore wa ano hitotachi no fude desū ka? Are those their brushes?
 Iie, ano hitotachi no ja arimasen; watakūshi- No, they are not their brushes; they are ours.
 domo no desū.
- Sore wa Takahashi San no¹³ desū ka? Are those Mr. Takahashi's?
 Iie, Takahashi San no ja arimasen. No, they are not Mr. Takahashi's.

Exercises

Anata wa ikaga desū ka? Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu. Genki desū.

How are you? Thanks. Same as usual. Fine.

Ano otoko no hito wa ikaga desū ka? Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu. Genki desū.

Ano onna no hito wa ikaga desū ka? Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu. Genki desū.

Anatagata wa ikaga desū ka? Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu. Genki desū.

Ano hitotachi wa ikaga desū ka? Arigatō gozaimasū. Aikawarazu. Genki desū.

Ano hito wa Takahashi San desū ka? Iie, Takahashi San ja arimasen.

Is he Mr. Takahashi? No, he is not Mr. Takahashi.

Ano hito wa Brown (Buraun) San desū ka? Iie, ano hito wa Brown San ja arimasen.

Ano hito wa Jones (Jonzu) San desū ka? Iie, ano hito wa Jones San ja arimasen.

Ano hitotachi wa Brown San to Jones San desū ka? Iie, ano hitotachi wa Brown San to
 Jones San ja arimasen.

Ano onna no hitotachi wa Takahashi San to Brown San desū ka? Iie, ano onna no hitotachi
 wa Takahashi San to Brown San ja arimasen.

Anata wa Takahashi San desū ka? Iie, watakūshi wa Takahashi ja arimasen.

Are you Mr. Takahashi. No, I am not (Mr.) Takahashi.

Anata wa Brown San desū ka? Iie, watakūshi wa Brown ja arimasen.

Anata wa Jones San desū ka? Iie, watakūshi wa Jones ja arimasen.

Anata wa Harris (Harisu) San desū ka? Iie, watakūshi wa Harris ja arimasen.

Anata wa Matsumoto San desū ka? Iie, watakūshi wa Matsumoto ja arimasen.



Anata wa dare desū ka? Watakūshi wa Matsumoto Jirō desū.

Who are you? I am Jiro Matsumoto.

Anata wa dare desū ka? Watakūshi wa John (Jan) Brown desū.

Anata wa dare desū ka? Watakūshi wa Tom (Tamu) Jones desū.

Anata wa dare desū ka? Watakūshi wa Dick (Dikku) Harris desū.

Anata wa dare desū ka? Watakūshi wa Harry Stone (Hari Sutōn) desū.

Ano hito wa dare desū ka? Ano hito wa Takahashi Jirō San desū.

Who is that person (he or she)? That person is Mr. Jiro Takahashi.

Ano hito wa dare desū ka? Ano hito wa John Brown San desū.

Ano hito wa dare desū ka? Ano hito wa Mary (Mēri) Jones San desū.

Ano hito wa dare desū ka? Ano hito wa Tom Harris San desū.

Ano hito wa dare desū ka? Ano hito wa Jane (Jein) Stone San desū.



Ano otoko no hito wa Amerika-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū.

He is an American. She is Japanese.

Ano otoko no hito wa Amerika-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Shina-jin desū.

Ano otoko no hito wa Shina-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Amerika-jin desū.

Ano otoko no hito wa Nippon-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū.

Ano otoko no hito wa Matsumoto San desū. Ano onna no hito wa Takahashi San desū.

Kono otoko no hito wa Takahashi San desū. Sono otoko no hito wa Matsumoto San desū.

He (near me) is Mr. Takahashi. He (near you) is Mr. Matsumoto.

Kono otoko no hito wa Matsumoto San desū. Sono otoko no hito wa Takahashi San desū.

Kono otoko no hito wa Brown San desū. Sono otoko no hito wa Jones San desū.

Kono otoko no hito wa Harris San desū. Sono otoko no hito wa Stone San desū.

Kono otoko no hito wa White (Waito) San desū. Sono otoko no hito wa Brown San desū.

Sono onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Shina-jin desū.

She (near you) is Japanese. She (over there) is Chinese.

Sono onna no hito wa Amerika-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Shina-jin desū.

Sono onna no hito wa Shina-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Amerika-jin desū.

Sono onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū. Ano onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū.

Sono onna no hito wa Matsumoto San desū. Ano onna no hito wa Takahashi San desū.

Watakūshi wa Shina-jin desū; Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

I am a Chinese; I am not a Japanese.

Watakūshi wa Shina-jin desū; Amerika-jin ja arimasen.

Watakūshi wa Amerika-jin desū; Shina-jin ja arimasen.

Watakūshi wa Nippon-jin desū; Shina-jin ja arimasen.
Watakūshi wa Nippon-jin desū; Amerika-jin ja arimasen.
Watakūshi wa Amerika-jin desū; Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

Watakūshi wa Amerika-jin desū; kono hitotachi wa Shina-jin desū.

I am an American; they (near me) are Chinese.

Watakūshi wa Amerika-jin desū; kono hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū.
Watakūshi wa Nippon-jin desū; kono hitotachi wa Amerika-jin desū.
Watakūshi wa Shina-jin desū; kono hitotachi wa Amerika-jin desū.
Watakūshi wa Nippon-jin desū; kono hitotachi wa Shina-jin desū.

Kono hitotachi wa mina Nippon-jin desū ka? Iie, mina wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

Are they (these people) all Japanese? No, not all are Japanese.

Sono hitotachi wa mina Nippon-jin desū ka? Iie, mina wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen.
Ano hitotachi wa mina Shina-jin desū ka? Iie, mina wa Shina-jin ja arimasen.
Kono hitotachi wa mina Amerika-jin desū ka? Iie, mina wa Amerika-jin ja arimasen.
Sono hitotachi wa mina Shina-jin desū ka? Iie, mina wa Shina-jin ja arimasen.

Kono onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū ka? Iie, sono onna no hito wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

Is she Japanese? No, she is not Japanese.

Kono otoko no hito wa Shina-jin desū ka? Iie, sono hito wa Shina-jin ja arimasen.
Kono hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū ka? Iie, sono hitotachi wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen.
Kono onna no hitotachi wa Amerika-jin desū ka? Iie, sono hitotachi wa Amerika-jin ja arimasen.
Kono otoko no hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū ka? Iie, sono hitotachi wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen.

Kono hitotachi wa mina Nippon-jin ja arimasen; kono otoko no hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū; kono onna no hitotachi wa Shina-jin desū.

They (near me) are not all Japanese; these men are Japanese; these women are Chinese.

Sono hitotachi wa mina Amerika-jin ja arimasen; sono otoko no hitotachi wa Amerika-jin desū; sono onna no hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū.
Ano hitotachi wa mina Shina-jin ja arimasen; ano otoko no hito wa Shina-jin desū; ano onna no hito wa Nippon-jin desū.
Kono hitotachi wa mina Nippon-jin ja arimasen; kono otoko no hito wa Shina-jin desū; kono onna no hito wa Amerika-jin desū.

Watakūshidomo wa Takahashi to Matsumoto desū.

We are (Mr.) Takahashi and (Mr.) Matsumoto.

Watakūshidomo wa Brown to Takahashi desū.
Watakūshidomo wa Jones to Brown desū.



Watakūshidomo wa Harris to Matsumoto desū.

Watakūshidomo wa Jones to Harris desū.

Watakūshidomo wa White to Stone desū.

Anata wa Amerika-jin desū. Watakūshi mo Amerika-jin desū.

You are an American. I am also an American.

Anatagata wa Nippon-jin desū; watakūshidomo mo Nippon-jin desū.

Ano otoko no hito wa Shina-jin desū. Ano onna no hito mo Shina-jin desū.

Ano onna no hitotachi wa Amerika-jin desū. Anata mo Amerika-jin desū.

Ano otoko no hitotachi wa Nippon-jin desū. Ano onna no hitotachi mo Nippon-jin desū.

Kore wa dare no fude desū ka? Watakūshi no fude desū.

Whose brush is this? It is my brush.

Kore wa dare no empitsu desū ka? Watakūshi no empitsu desū.

Kore wa dare no shimbun desū ka? Watakūshi no shimbun desū.

Kore wa dare no tsukue desū ka? Watakūshi no tsukue desū.

Kore wa dare no isu desū ka? Watakūshi no isu desū.

Kore wa dare no tegami desū ka? Watakūshi no tegami desū.

Kore wa anata no zasshi desū ka? Iie, watakūshi no ja arimasen.

Is this your magazine? No, it isn't mine.

Kore wa anata no shimbun desū ka? Iie, watakūshi no ja arimasen.

Kore wa anata no hon desū ka? Iie, watakūshi no ja arimasen.

Kore wa anata no isu desū ka? Iie, watakūshi no ja arimasen.

Kore wa ano hito no desū ka? Iie, sore wa anata no desū.

Is this his? No, that is yours.

Kore wa anata no desū ka? Iie, sore wa ano otoko no hito no desū.

Kore wa ano otoko no hito no desū ka? Iie, sore wa ano onna no hito no desū.

Kore wa ano hito no desū ka? Iie, sore wa watakūshi no desū.

Kore wa kono otoko no hito no desū ka? Iie, sore wa ano otoko no hito no desū.

Sono hon wa Takahashi San no desū ka? Iie, Takahashi San no ja arimasen.

Are those books Mr. Takahashi's? No, they are not Mr. Takahashi's.

Sono empitsu wa anatagata no desū ka? Iie, watakūshidomo no ja arimasen.

Ano shimbun wa ano otoko no hito no desū ka? Iie, ano otoko no hito no ja arimasen.

Sono zasshi wa sono onna no hito no desū ka? Iie, sono onna no hito no ja arimasen.

Sono tsukue wa Matsumoto San no desū ka? Iie, ano hito no ja arimasen.



Sono hon wa Takahashi San no desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

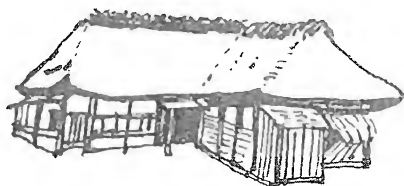
Are those books Mr. Takahashi's? No, they are not.

Sono tegami wa anata no desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Sono tsukue wa ano onna no hito no desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Sono isu wa Matsumoto San no desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.

Sono kami wa watakūshi no desū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen.



3

Dai San K(w)a (Lesson III)

asahan breakfast	mimasū see	soshite and (connecting clauses)
deshita was, were (used to help form the negative past tense)	nani mo nothing (with negative verb)	tabemasū eat
gohan rice, meal	niku meat	tamago egg
gyūnyū milk	nomimasū drink	tomodachi friend
hamū ham	o-cha tea	watashimasū give, hand over
hiruhan lunch	okurimasū send	yasai vegetable
kōhī coffee	sakana fish	yūhan supper, dinner

- Anata wa mai asa asahan ni¹⁴ nani (w)o tabemasū ka? What do you eat for breakfast every morning?
Watakūshi wa hamū to¹⁵ tamago (w)o tabemasū. Soshite kōhī (w)o nomimasū. I eat ham and eggs. And I drink coffee.
- 5 Hiruhan ni nani (w)o tabemasū ka? What do you eat for lunch?
Hiruhan ni wa¹⁶ sakana to gohan¹⁷ (w)o tabemasū.¹¹ Soshite gyūnyū (w)o nomimasū. For lunch I eat fish and rice. And I drink milk.
Soshite yūhan ni wa nani (w)o tabemasū ka? And what do you eat for dinner?
Niku to yasai (w)o tabemasū. Soshite o-cha I eat meat and vegetables. And I drink tea.
10 (w)o nomimasū.
- Anata wa yūhan ni nani (w)o tabemasū ka? What did you eat for supper?
Watakūshi wa niku to yasai (w)o tabemasū. I ate meat and vegetables.
- 15 Hiruhan ni wa nani mo¹⁹ tabemasen deshita.¹⁸ I didn't eat anything for lunch.
Watakūshi no shimbun (w)o mimashita ka? Did you see my newspaper?
Hai, mimashita.¹⁸ Yes, I did.
Watakūshi no zasshi (w)o mimashita ka? Did you see my magazine?
20 Iie, anata no zasshi wa²⁰ mimasen deshita. No, I didn't see your magazine.
Ano otoko no hitotachi no hon (w)o yomimashita ka? Did you read their books?
Iie, yomimasen deshita. No, I didn't.
Anata no tomodachi mo¹² yomimasen deshita ka? Didn't your friend read (them) either?
25 Iie, watakūshi no tomodachi mo yomimasen deshita. No, my friend didn't read (them) either.
- Anata wa dare ni¹⁴ ano tegami (w)o watashimashita ka? To whom did you hand that letter?
- 30 Watakūshi wa tomodachi ni¹⁴ ano tegami (w)o watashimashita. I gave that letter to (your) friend.

- Takahashi San ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Did you write the letter to Mr. Takahashi?
 Iie, Matsumoto San ni kakimashita. No, I wrote (it) to Mr. Matsumoto.
 35 Ano hito wa anata ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Did he (she) write a letter to you?
 Iie, watakushi ni wa¹⁶ kakimasen deshita. No, he (she) did not write to me.
 Watakushi no tomodachi ni kakimashita. He (she) wrote to my friend.
 Watakushi wa ano otoko no hito ni tegami I wrote a letter to him.
 40 (w)o kakimashita.
 Ano onna no hito ni mo¹⁶ tegami (w)o I wrote a letter to her also.
 kakimashita.
 Anatagata ni mo hon (w)o okurimashita. I sent books to you also.
 Ano hitotachi ni mo hon (w)o okurimashita Did you send the books to them also?
 45 ka?
 Iie, ano otoko no hitotachi ni wa okurimasen No, I didn't send (them) to those men; I
 deshita; ano onna no hitotachi ni wa sent (them) to those women.
 okurimashita.

Exercises

Mai nichi nani (w)o tabemasu ka? Mai nichi tamago (w)o tabemasu.

What do you eat every day? Every day I eat eggs.

Mai asa nani (w)o tabemasu ka? Mai asa hamu (w)o tabemasu.

Mai nichigogo nani (w)o tabemasu ka? Mai nichi gogo sakana (w)o tabemasu.

Mai ban nani (w)o tabemasu ka? Mai ban niku (w)o tabemasu.

Mai nichi nani (w)o nomimasu ka? Mai nichi kohi (w)o nomimasu.

What do you drink every day? I drink coffee every day.

Mai asa nani (w)o nomimasu ka? Mai asa gyunyū (w)o nomimasu.

Mai nichigogo nani (w)o nomimasu ka? Mai nichi gogo o-cha (w)o nomimasu.

Mai ban nani (w)o nomimasu ka? Mai ban kohi (w)o nomimasu.

Asahan ni sakana (w)o tabemasu ka? Iie, asahan ni sakana wa tabemasen. Hamu to tamago (w)o tabemasu.

Do you eat fish for breakfast? No, I don't eat fish for breakfast. I eat ham and eggs.

Hiruhan ni niku (w)o tabemasu ka? Iie, hiruhan ni niku wa tabemasen. Sakana (w)o tabemasu.

Yuhan ni tamago (w)o tabemasu ka? Iie, tamago wa tabemasen. Niku to yasai (w)o tabemasu.

Asahan ni sakana (w)o tabemasu ka? Iie, asahan ni wa sakana (w)o tabemasen. Hiruhan ni tabemasu.

Do you eat fish for breakfast? No, I don't eat fish for breakfast. I eat (it) for lunch.

Hiruhan ni niku (w)o tabemasu ka? Iie, hiruhan ni wa niku (w)o tabemasen. Yuhan ni tabemasu.



Yūhan ni tamago (w)o tabemasū ka? Iie, yūhan ni wa tamago (w)o tabemasen. Asahan ni tabemasū.

Asahan ni o-cha (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, asahan ni o-cha wa nomimasen. Kōhī (w)o nomimasū.

Do you drink tea for breakfast? No, I don't drink tea for breakfast. I drink coffee.

Hiruhan ni o-cha (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, hiruhan ni o-cha wa nomimasen. Gyūnyū (w)o nomimasū.

Yūhan ni kōhī (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, yūhan ni kōhī wa nomimasen. O-cha (w)o nomimasū.

Mai nichī o-cha (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, mai nichī wa o-cha (w)o nomimasen. Gyūnyū (w)o nomimasū.

Asahan (w)o tabemashita ka? Hai, tabemashita.

Did you eat breakfast? Yes, I did.

Hiruhan (w)o tabemashita ka? Hai, tabemashita.

Yūhan (w)o tabemashita ka? Hai, tabemashita.



Anata wa mai nichī nani (w)o shimasū ka? Nani mo shimasen.

What do you do every day? I don't do anything.

Takahashi San wa mai asa nani (w)o shimasū ka? Ano hito mo nani mo shimasen.

Ano otoko no hito wa mai nichigogo nani (w)o shimasū ka? Nani mo shimasen.

Ano onna no hito wa mai ban nani (w)o shimasū ka? Ano onna no hito mo nani mo shimasen.

Anata wa mai nichī nani (w)o manabimasū ka? Nani mo manabimasen.

What do you study every day? I don't study anything.

Takahashi San wa mai asa nani (w)o nomimasū ka? Ano hito wa nani mo nomimasen.

Matsumoto San wa mai nichigogo nani (w)o yomimasū ka? Nani mo yomimasen.

Anata no tomodachi wa mai ban nani (w)o kakimasū ka? Nani mo kakimasen.

Anata wa asahan ni nani (w)o tabemashita ka? Watakūshi wa hamū to tamago (w)o tabemashita.

What did you eat for breakfast? I ate ham and eggs.

Anata wa hiruhan ni nani (w)o tabemashita ka? Watakūshi wa sakana to gohan (w)o tabemashita.

Anata wa yūhan ni nani (w)o tabemashita ka? Watakūshi wa niku to yasai (w)o tabemashita.

Anata wa asahan ni niku to yasai (w)o tabemashita ka? Iie, niku to yasai wa tabemasen deshita.

Did you eat meat and vegetables for breakfast? No, I didn't eat meat and vegetables.

Anata wa hiruhan ni hamū to tamago (w)o tabemashita ka? Iie, hamū to tamago wa tabemasen deshita.

Anata wa yūhan ni sakana to gohan (w)o tabemashita ka? Iie, sakana to gohan wa tabemasen deshita.

Watakūshi no shimbun (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Did you see my newspaper? Yes, I saw it.

Watakūshi no zasshi (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Watakūshi no empitsu (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Watakūshi no hon (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Watakūshi no tomodachi (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Watakūshi no fude (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Watakūshi no zasshi (w)o yomimashīta ka? Hai, yomimashīta.

Did you read my magazine? Yes, I did.

Ano onna no hito no shimbun (w)o mimashīta ka? Hai, mimashīta.

Ano otoko no hito no hamū (w)o tabemashīta ka? Hai, tabemashīta.

Anata wa anata no hon (w)o okurimashīta ka? Hai, okurimashīta.

Watakūshi no zasshi (w)o mimashīta ka? Iie, anata no wa mimasen deshīta. Ano hito no (w)o mimashīta.

Did you see my magazine? No, I didn't see yours. I saw his.

Ano otoko no hito no shimbun (w)o yomimashīta ka? Iie, ano otoko no hito no wa yomimashen deshīta. Ano onna no hito no (w)o yomimashīta.

Kono onna no hitotachi no hon (w)o mimashīta ka? Iie, sono onna no hitotachi no wa mimasen deshīta. Ano otoko no hito no (w)o mimashīta.

Watakūshidomo no hon (w)o okurimashīta ka? Iie, anatagata no wa okurimashen deshīta.

Watakūshidomo no (w)o okurimashīta.

Watakūshi wa kono hon (w)o yomimashīta. Watakūshi no tomodachi mo yomimashīta.

I read this book. My friend also read (it).

Ano otoko no hito wa kono tegami (w)o kakimashīta. Ano onna no hito mo kakimashīta.

Anata no zasshi (w)o mimashīta. Watakūshi no mo mimashīta.

Takahashi San no shimbun (w)o okurimashīta. Matsumoto San no mo okurimashīta.

Watakūshi wa zasshi (w)o okurimashen deshīta. Ano hito mo okurimashen deshīta.

I didn't send the magazine. He didn't send (it) either.

Watakūshi wa hon (w)o yomimashen deshīta. Anata mo yomimashen deshīta.

Anatagata wa asaban (w)o tabemashen deshīta. Watakūshidomo mo tabemashen deshīta.

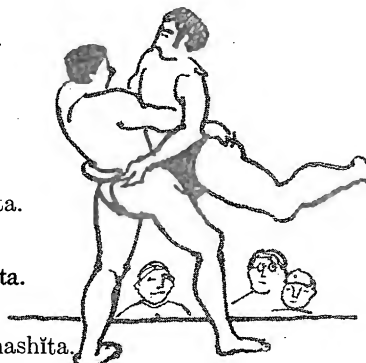
Ano otoko no hitotachi wa o-cha (w)o nomimashen deshīta. Ano onna no hitotachi mo nomimashen deshīta.

Kono otoko no hito wa kono hon (w)o kakimashen deshīta. Ano otoko no hito mo kakimashen deshīta.

Ano hitotachi wa anata no zasshi (w)o mimasen deshīta. Watakūshi mo mimasen deshīta.

Anata wa dare ni ano tegami (w)o watashimashīta ka? Watakūshi wa anata ni ano tegami (w)o watashimashīta.

To whom did you give that letter? I gave that letter to you.



Anata wa dare ni ano zasshi (w)o watashimashita ka? Watakushi wa ano otoko no hito ni watashimashita.

Anata wa dare ni ano shimbun (w)o watashimashita ka? Takahashi San ni watashimashita.

Anata wa dare ni ano fude (w)o watashimashita ka? Watakushi no tomodachi ni watashimashita.

Anata wa dare ni ano hon (w)o watashimashita ka? Anata ni ano hon (w)o watashimashita.

Anata wa dare ni ano empitsu (w)o watashimashita ka? Ano onna no hito ni ano empitsu (w)o watashimashita.

Watakushi ni ano hon (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, anata ni watashimasen deshita.

Did you give that book to me? No, I did not give it to you.

Takahashi San ni ano empitsu (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, Takahashi San ni watashimasen deshita.

Ano otoko no hito ni ano fude (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, ano otoko no hito ni watashimasen deshita.

Ano onna no hito ni ano tegami (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, ano onna no hito ni watashimasen deshita.

Watakushi ni wa ano shimbun (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, anata ni wa watashimasen deshita. Matsumoto San ni watashimashita.

Did you give that newspaper to me? No, I didn't give (it) to you. I gave (it) to Mr. Matsumoto.

Ano otoko no hito ni ano zasshi (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, ano otoko no hito ni wa watashimasen deshita. Ano onna no hito ni watashimashita.

Ano hitotachi ni ano hon wo watashimashita ka? Iie, ano hitotachi ni wa watashimasen deshita. Anata ni watashimashita.

Watakushidomo ni ano tegami (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, anata ni wa watashimasen deshita. Anata no tomodachi ni watashimashita.

Ano hitotachi ni ano kami (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, ano hitotachi ni wa watashimasen deshita. Kono hito ni watashimashita.

Ano hon (w)o ano otoko no hito ni watashimashita ka? Hai, watashimashita.

Did you give that book to him? Yes, I did.

Ano shimbun (w)o ano onna no hito ni okurimashita ka? Hai, okurimashita.

Anata wa kono tegami (w)o watakushi ni kakimashita ka? Hai, kakimashita.

Watakushidomo ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, kakimasen deshita.

Did you write the letter to us? No, I didn't.

Ano otoko no hitotachi ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, kakimasen deshita.

Ano onna no hitotachi ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, kakimasen deshita.

Ano otoko no hito ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, kakimasen deshita.

Ano onna no hito ni tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, kakimasen deshita.

Watakushi ni ano tegami (w)o kakimashita ka? Iie, anata ni wa kakimasen deshita.

Did you write that letter to me? No, I didn't write (it) to you.

Ano otoko no hito ni ano zasshi (w)o okurimashita ka? Iie, ano otoko no hito ni wa okurimasen deshita.

Ano onna no hito ni ano hon (w)o okurimashita ka? Iie, ano onna no hito ni wa okurimasen deshita.

Matsumoto San ni ano empitsu (w)o watashimashita ka? Iie, ano hito ni wa watashimasen deshita.

Ano hitotachi ni zasshi (w)o okurimashita. Anatagata ni mo okurimashita.

We sent the magazines to them. We sent (them) to you also.

Ano otoko no hitotachi ni shimbun (w)o watashimashita. Ano onna no hitotachi ni mo watashimashita.

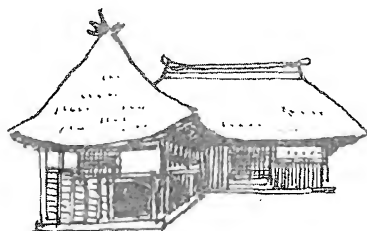
Ano otoko no hito ni tegami (w)o kakimashita. Ano onna no hito mo kakimashita.

Ano hito ni wa hon (w)o okurimasen deshita. Anata ni mo okurimasen deshita.

I didn't send the book to him. I didn't send (it) to you either.

Ano otoko no hitotachi ni wa zasshi (w)o watashimasen deshita. Ano onna no hitotachi ni mo watashimasen deshita.

Ano otoko no hito ni wa tegami (w)o kakimasen deshita. Ano onna no hito ni mo kakimasen deshita.



4

Dai Shi K(w)a (Lesson IV)

dekimasū can; is, are able	kaitai want to buy	sūmitai want to live
de mo even; . . . de mo . . . de	kakeru sit	suru do
mo either . . . or	kara because	sūwaritai want to sit (<i>Japa-</i>
doko where	keredomo but	<i>nese fashion; i.e. squat</i>)
Eigo English (<i>language</i>)	kinō yesterday	tachitai want to stand
hanashitai want to speak, say	koto thing, matter (<i>abstract</i>)	tatsu stand
hikōki airplane	mawasu drive	tobitai want to fly
ima now	nani ka something, anything	to issho ni together, with
isogimasū hurry, hasten	naze why	yoroshii good, all right
jidōsha automobile	sūkoshi little, few, somewhat	

- Nihon go (w)o hanashitai²¹ desū ka? Do you want to speak Japanese?
 Hai, Nihon go (w)o hanashitai desū. Yes, I want to speak Japanese.
 Anata wa watakūshi ni Nihon go de²² hanashitai desū ka? Do you want to speak to me in Japanese?
- 5 Iie, hanashitakū²¹ arimasen. No, I don't.
 Anata wa watakūshidomo to issho ni sūmitai desū ka? Do you want to live with us
 Hai, sūmitai desū. Yes, I do.
 Doko ni sūmitai desū ka? Where do you want to live?
- 10 Tōkiō ni¹⁴ sūmitai desū; Nyū Yōkū ni wa sūmitakū arimasen. I want to live in Tokio; I don't want to live in New York.
 Nani (w)o shitai desū ka? What do you want to do?
 Nani mo shitakū arimasen. I don't want to do anything.
 Nani ka²³ tabetai desū ka? Do you want anything to eat?
- 15 Hai, arigatō. Niku to yasai ga tabetai desū, keredomo sakana wa tabetakū arimasen. Yes, thanks. I want to eat meat and vegetables, but I don't want to eat fish.
 Soshite nani ka nomitai desū ka? And do you want something to drink?
 Kōhi de mo²⁴ o-cha de mo²⁴ yoroshii, keredomo gyūnyū wa nomitakū arimasen. Either coffee or tea, but I don't want to drink milk.
- 20 Ima tegami (w)o kakitai desū ka? Do you want to write a letter now?
 Iie, isogimasū kara. No, because I am in a hurry.
 Anata wa sūwaritai desū ka? Tachitai desū ka?²⁴ Do you want to sit down or do you want to stand?
 Sūwaritakū arimasen. I don't want to squat.
- 25 Hikōki (w)o kaitai desū ka? Do you want to buy an airplane?
 Iie, hikōki wa kaitakū arimasen, keredomo hikōki de²² tobitai desū. No, I don't want to buy a plane, but I want to fly in a plane.

- Hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasū²⁵ ka? Can you fly a plane?
 Hai, dekimasū, keredomo hikōki (w)o kau Yes, I can, but I can't buy a plane.
 30 koto ga dekimasen.²⁵

Jidōsha (w)o mawasu²⁶ koto ga dekimasū ka? Can you drive an automobile?

Hai, dekimasū.

Yes, I can.

Kinō niku (w)o taberu²⁶ koto ga dekima-shita¹⁸ ka? Could you eat meat yesterday?

Iie, dekimasen deshita.²⁵

No, I couldn't.

Eigo (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimasū ka?

Can you speak English?

Hai, sūkoshi²⁸ wa dekimasū.

Yes, I can a little.

Naze kono shimbun (w)o yomitakū arimasen ka? Why don't you want to read this newspaper?

Nippon go (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasen kara.²⁹ Because I can't read Japanese.

Ima wa nani mo suru²⁶ koto ga dekimasen, I can't do anything now, because I can't stand up.

Sūkoshi isogu koto ga dekimasū ka? Can you hurry a little?

Hai, dekimasū.

Yes, I can.

Sūwaru koto ga dekimasū²⁷ ka?

Can you sit (Japanese fashion)?

Iie, dekimasen. Watakūshidomo Amerika-jin wa isu ni kakemasū. No, I can't. We Americans sit on chairs.

Exercises

Nippon go (w)o hanashitai desū ka? Hai, Nippon go (w)o hanashitai desū.

Do you want to speak Japanese? Yes, I want to speak Japanese.

Nippon go (w)o yomitai desū ka? Hai, Nippon go (w)o yomitai desū.

Nippon go (w)o manabitai desū ka? Hai, Nippon go (w)o manabitai desū.

Nippon go (w)o kakitai desū ka? Hai, Nippon go (w)o kakitai desū.

Anata wa watakūshi ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.

Do you want to speak to me in Japanese? No, I don't.

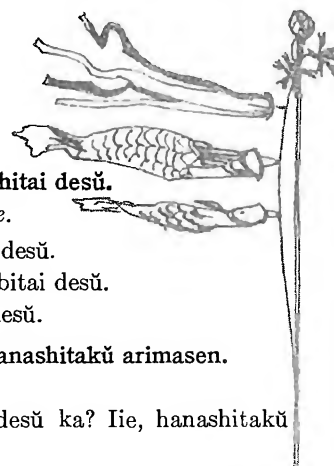
Anata wa ano otoko no hito ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.

Anata wa ano onna no hito ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.

Anata wa watakūshidomo ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.

Anata wa ano otoko no hitotachi ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.

Anata wa Takahashi San ni Nippon go de hanashitai desū ka? Iie, hanashitakū arimasen.



Anata wa watakūshidomo to issho ni sumitai desū ka? Hai, sumitai desū.

Do you want to live with us? Yes, I do.

Anata wa kono hito to issho ni sumitai desū ka? Hai, sumitai desū.

Anata wa kono hitotachi to issho ni sumitai desū ka? Hai, sumitai desū.

Anata wa watakūshi to issho ni sumitai desū ka? Hai, sumitai desū.

Anata wa Matsumoto Jirō San to issho ni sumitai desū ka? Hai, sumitai desū.

Doko ni sumitai desū ka? Tōkiō ni sumitai desū.

Where do you want to live? I want to live in Tokio.

Doko ni sumitai desū ka? Nyū Yōkū ni sumitai desū.

Doko ni sumitai desū ka? Nippon ni sumitai desū.

Doko ni sumitai desū ka? Shina ni sumitai desū.

Doko ni sumitai desū ka? Amerika ni sumitai desū.

Tōkiō ni sumitai desū. Nyū Yōkū ni wa sumitakū arimasen.

I want to live in Tokio. I don't want to live in New York.

Nyū Yōkū ni sumitai desū. Tōkiō ni wa sumitakū arimasen.

Nippon ni sumitai desū. Amerika ni wa sumitakū arimasen.

Amerika ni sumitai desū. Nippon ni wa sumitakū arimasen.

Shina ni sumitai desū. Nippon ni wa sumitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o shitai desū ka? Nani mo shitakū arimasen.

What do you want to do? I don't want to do anything.

Nani (w)o kaitai desū ka? Nani mo kaitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o yomitai desū ka? Nani mo yomitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o kakitai desū ka? Nani mo kakitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o manabitai desū ka? Nani mo manabitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o tabetai desū ka? Nani mo tabetakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o nomitai desū ka? Nani mo nomitakū arimasen.

Nani (w)o mitai desū ka? Nani mo mitakū arimasen.

Nani ka tabetai desū ka? Hai, nani ka tabetai desū.

Do you want to eat something? Yes, I want to eat something.

Nani ka nomitai desū ka? Hai, nani ka nomitai desū.

Nani ka hanashitai desū ka? Hai, nani ka hanashitai desū.

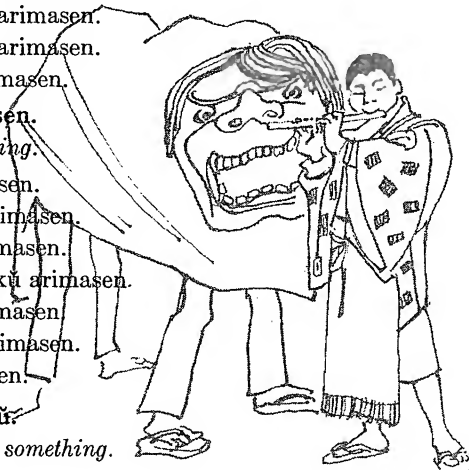
Nani ka kakitai desū ka? Hai, nani ka kakitai desū.

Nani ka shitai desū ka? Hai, nani ka shitai desū.

Nani ka tabetai desū ka? Hai, arigatō. Niku to yasai (w)o tabetai desū, keredomo sakana wa tabetakū arimasen.

Do you want something to eat? Yes, thanks. I want to eat meat and vegetables, but I don't want to eat fish.

Nani ka nomitai desū ka? Hai, arigatō. Kōhī to o-cha (w)o nomitai desū, keredomo gyūnyū wa nomitakū arimasen.



Nani ka kaitai desū ka? Hai, kami to empitsu (w)o kaitai desū, keredomo fude wa kaitakū arimasen.

Nani ka yomitai desū ka? Hai, arigatō. Shimbun to zasshi (w)o yomitai desū, keredomo tegami wa yomitakū arimasen.

Nani ka nomitai desū ka? Hai, kōhī de mo o-cha de mo yoroshii, keredomo gyūnyū wa nomitakū arimasen.

Do you want something to drink? Yes, either coffee or tea, but I don't want to drink milk.

Nani ka tabetai desū ka? Hai, niku de mo tamago de mo yoroshii, keredomo sakana wa tabetakū arimasen.

Nani ka yomitai desū ka? Hai, zasshi de mo shimbun de mo yoroshii, keredomo hon wa yomitakū arimasen.

Nani ka kaitai desū ka? Hai, fude de mo pen de mo yoroshii, keredomo empitsu wa kaitakū arimasen.

Ima tegami (w)o kakitai desū ka? Iie, isogimasū kara.

Do you want to write a letter now? No, because I'm in a hurry.

Ima nani ka nomitai desū ka? Iie, isogimasū kara.

Ima zasshi (w)o yomitai desū ka? Iie, isogimasū kara.

Ima gohan (w)o tabetai desū ka? Iie, isogimasū kara.

Ima isu ni kaketai desū ka? Iie, isogimasū kara.



Anata wa sūwaritai desū ka? Tachitai desū ka? Sūwaritakū arimasen.

Do you want to squat or do you want to stand? I don't want to squat.

Anata wa tabetai desū ka? Nomitai desū ka? Tabetakū arimasen.

Anata wa sūwaritai desū ka? Isu ni kaketai desū ka? Sūwaritakū arimasen.

Anata wa yomitai desū ka? Kakitai desū ka? Kakitakū arimasen.

Anata wa manabitai desū ka? Hon (w)o okuritai desū ka? Manabitakū arimasen.

Hikōki (w)o kaitai desū ka? Iie, hikōki wa kaitakū arimasen, keredomo hikōki de tobitai desū.

Do you want to buy an airplane? No, I don't want to buy a plane, but I want to fly in a plane.

Pen (w)o kaitai desū ka? Iie, pen wa kaitaku arimasen, keredomo fude (w)o kaitai desū.

Zasshi (w)o kaitai desū ka? Iie, zasshi wa kaitakū arimasen, keredomo shimbun (w)o kaitai desū.

Kōhī (w)o nomitai desū ka? Iie, kōhī wa nomitakū arimasen, keredomo o-cha (w)o nomitai desū.

Tamago (w)o tabetai desū ka? Iie, tamago wa tabetakū arimasen, keredomo yasai (w)o tabetai desū.

Hikōki (w)o kau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Can you buy an airplane? Yes, I can.

Jidōsha (w)o kau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Shimbun (w)o kau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Gyūnyū (w)o kau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Kami (w)o kau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Tegami (w)o kaku koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Can you write a letter? No, I can't.

Kono jidōsha (w)o mawasu koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Ano hito (w)o miru koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Kono niku (w)o taberu koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Kono shimbun (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Kono hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasū ka? Iie, dekimasen.

Ano hikōki (w)o miru koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Could you see that airplane? Yes, I could.

Ano hon (w)o yomu koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Ano jidōsha (w)o mawasu koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Ano tegami (w)o kaku koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Ano o-cha (w)o nomu koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Sūwaru koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Eigo (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimashita ka? Hai, dekimashita.

Niku (w)o taberu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Couldn't you eat meat? No, I could not.

Nippon go (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Tatsu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Jidōsha (w)o mawasu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Kōhi (w)o nomu koto ga dekimasen deshita ka? Iie, dekimasen deshita.

Eigo (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.

Can you speak English? Yes, I can (speak) a little.

Nippon go (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.

Shina go (w)o hanasu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.

Nippon go (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.

Can you read Japanese? Yes, I can (read) a little.

Eigo (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.

Shina go (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa dekimasū.



Shina go (w)o kaku koto ga dekimasen ka? Iie, Nippon go mo Shina go mo kaku koto ga dekimasen.

Can't you write Chinese? No, I can't write either Japanese or Chinese.

Eigo (w)o kaku koto ga dekimasen ka? Iie, Eigo mo Nippon go mo kaku koto ga dekimasen.

Naze kono shimbun (w)o yomitakū arimasen ka? Nippon go (w)o yomu koto ga dekimasen kara.

Why don't you want to read this newspaper? Because I can't read Japanese.

Naze kono tegami (w)o kakitakū arimasen ka? Tegami (w)o kaku koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze sūwaritakū arimasen ka? Sūwaru koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze kono jidōsha (w)o mawashitakū arimasen ka? Jidōsha (w)o mawasu koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze kono hikōki de tobitakū arimasen ka? Hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze Nippon go (w)o manabitai desū ka? Watakūshi wa Nippon go de hanashitai desū kara.

Why do you want to study Japanese? Because I want to speak Japanese.

Naze ano isu ni kaketai desū ka? Watakūshi wa sūwaru koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze sakana (w)o tabetai desū ka? Watakūshi wa niku (w)o taberu koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze gyūnyū (w)o nomitai desū ka? Watakūshi wa kōhī (w)o nomu koto ga dekimasen kara.

Naze Nippon go (w)o manabitai deshita ka? Watakūshi wa Nippon go de hanashitai deshita kara.

Why did you want to study Japanese? Because I wanted to speak Japanese.

Naze gyūnyū (w)o nomitai deshita ka? Watakūshi wa kōhī (w)o nomu koto ga dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze sakana (w)o tabetai deshita ka? Watakūshi wa niku (w)o taberu koto ga dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze ano isu ni kaketai deshita ka? Watakūshi wa suwaru koto ga dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze ano jidōsha (w)o mawashitakū arimasen deshita ka? Watakūshi no jidōsha ja arimasen deshita kara.

Why didn't you want to drive that auto? Because it wasn't my automobile.

Naze Nippon go de hanashitakū arimasen deshita ka? Watakūshi wa Nippon go wa dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze sono hikōki de tobitakū arimasen deshita ka? Watakūshi wa hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze sūwaritakū arimasen deshita ka? Watakūshi wa sūwaru koto ga dekimasen deshita kara.

Naze kōhi (w)o nomitakū arimasen deshīta ka? Watakūshi wa kōhi (w)o nomu koto ga dekimasen deshīta kara.

Naze niku (w)o tabetakū arimasen deshīta ka? Watakūshi wa niku (w)o taberu koto ga dekimasen deshīta kara.

Ima wa nani mo suru koto ga dekimasen.

I can't do anything now.

Ima wa nani mo taberu koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo yomu koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo kaku koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo miru koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo kau koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo hanasu koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo okuru koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo watasu koto ga dekimasen.

Ima wa nani mo manabu koto ga dekimasen.

Sūkoshi isogu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Can you hurry a little? Yes, I can.

Sūkoshi yomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Sūkoshi manabu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Sūkoshi taberu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Sūkoshi nomu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Sūkoshi kaku koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Sūkoshi hanasu koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū.

Watakūshidomo Amerika-jin wa Eigo (w)o hanashimasū.

We Americans speak English.

Anatagata Nippon-jin wa Nippon go (w)o hanashimasū.

Anatagata Shina-jin wa Shina go (w)o hanashimasū.

Watakūshidomo Amerika-jin wa Shina go wa hanashimasen.

Anatagata Nippon jin wa Shina go wa hanashimasen.

Anatagata Shina jin wa Nippon go wa hanashimasen.

Anatagata Amerika-jin wa Eigo (w)o hanashimasū. Watakūshidomo Nippon-jin mo hanashimasū.

You Americans speak English. We Japanese also speak (it).

Anatagata Shina-jin wa Shina go (w)o hanashimasū. Watakūshidomo Nippon-jin mo hanashimasū.

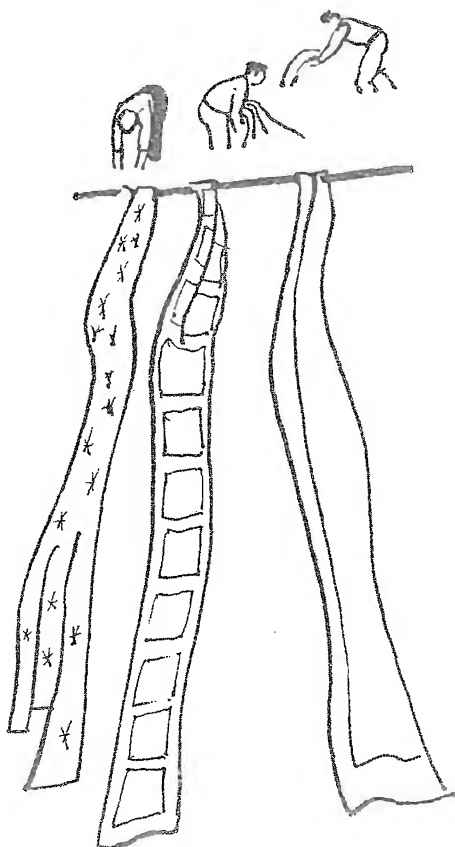
Anatagata Nippon-jin wa Nippon go (w)o hanashimasū. Watakūshidomo Amerika-jin mo hanashimasū.

Anatagata Nippon-jin wa Shina go wa hanashimasen. Watakūshidomo Amerika-jin mo hanashimasen.

You Japanese do not speak Chinese. We Americans do not speak (it) either.

Anatagata Shina-jin wa Eigo wa hanashimasen. Watakūshidomo Nippon-jin mo hanashimasen.

Anatagata Amerika-jin wa Nippon go wa hanashimasen. Watakūshidomo Shina-jin mo hanashimasen.



5

Dai Go K(w)a (Lesson V)

akeru open	katakana <i>one of the Japanese syllabaries</i>	shimeru shut, close
arau wash		shitsūrei impoliteness
benjo toilet, latrine, W. C.	koko here	sumu live
dōzo please	kudasai please, please give	takusan much, many
e to	(me)	te hand
hairu enter	kuru come	to door
ichi-do once, one time	mado window	tsugi next
ii good	matawa or	tsuite following; —iku follow
iu <i>verb</i> say	matsu wait	(there); —kuru follow (here)
ikemasen <i>pot.</i> of iku	mō once more	tsurete accompanying; —iku
imasū <i>pres.</i> of iru	motsu have, hold	take (conduct), —kuru
kashikomarimashita all right,	motte kuru bring (come, hav-	bring (a person)
willingly (acceding to a re-	ing)	yukkuri slowly, deliberately
quest)	motte iku take (go, having)	wakaru understand
	renshū exercise	

Nani (w)o tabete³⁰ imasū ka?

What are you eating?

Niku to yasai (w)o tabete imasū.³¹

I am eating meat and vegetables.

Watakūshi no hon (w)o mite³⁰ imasū ka?

Do you see my book?

Iie, nani mo mite imasen.³¹

No, I don't see anything.

- 5 Takahashi Jirō San, dōzo tatte kudasai,³²
soshite Nihon go de hanashite kudasai.
Kashikomarimashita.

Mr. Jiro Takahashi, please stand up and speak in Japanese.

Nani (w)o shite imasū ka?

Certainly. With pleasure.

Nani mo shite imasen.

What are you doing?

- 10 Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka?

I am not doing anything.

Empitsū (w)o motte imasū.

What do you have in your hand?

Koko e motte kite³⁷ kudasai.

I have a pencil.

Anata wa hon ni nani ka kaite imashita³¹ ka?

Bring (it) here.

Nani mo kaite imasen deshita.³¹

Were you writing something in the book?

- 15 Anata no tomodachi e³³ kono hon (w)o motte itte³⁷ kudasai.

I wasn't writing anything.

Please take this book to your friend.

Sūkoshi Nihon go (w)o yonde³⁰ kudasai. Mō sore de takusan desū. Watakūshi ni wa wakarimasen deshita.³⁴ Nani go (w)o yonde

Please read a little Japanese. That's enough.

- 20 imashita ka? Eigo wo yonde imashita ka?

I didn't understand (you). What language

Matawa nihon go wo yonde imashita ka?

were you reading? Were you reading English or were you reading Japanese?

Shitsūrei shimashita.

I am sorry.

Mō ichi-do yukkuri yonde kudasai.

Please read once more slowly.

Nani (w)o itte³⁰ imashita ka?

What were you saying?

- 25 Nani mo itte imasen deshita.

I didn't say anything.

Anata wa tomodachi ni nani (w)o itte imashita ka?

What were you saying to your friend?

- Mado (w)o akete mo³⁵ ii n' desū ka?
 Hai, akete mo ii n' desū, keredomo to (w)o shimete wa ikemasen.³⁶
 30 Sūwatte kudasai.
 Katakana de tsugi no renshū (w)o kaite kudasai.
 Te (w)o aratte mo ii n' desū ka?
 Hai, aratte mo ii n' desū.
 35 Watakūshi (w)o benjo e tsurete itte³⁷ kudasai.
 Dōzo tomodachi (w)o tsurete³⁷ kite kudasai.
 Ano hito ni tsuite itte³⁷ kudasai.
 Watakūshi ni tsuite³⁷ kite kudasai.
 40 Haitte³⁰ mo ii n' desū ka?
 Iie, ima haitte wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte³⁰ kudasai.
- May I open the window?
 Yes, you may open (it), but you must not close the door.
 Please sit down.
 Please write the next exercise in *katakana*.
 May I wash (my) hands?
 Yes, you may wash (them).
 Please take me to the lavatory.
 Please bring a friend.
 Please follow him.
 Please follow me.
 May I come in?
 No, you mustn't enter now. Please wait a little.
- Anata wa doko ni sunde³⁰ imasū ka?
 Tokio ni sunde imasū soshite anata wa?
 Watakūshi wa Nyū Yōkū ni¹⁴ sunde imashita, keredomo ima wa Chicago ni sunde imasū.
 Anata wa isoide³⁰ imasū ka?
 Iie, isoide wa imasen.
- Where do you live?
 I am living in Tokio, and you?
 I used to live in New York, but now I am living in Chicago.
 Are you in a hurry?
 No, I am not in a hurry.

Exercises

Nani (w)o tabete imasū ka? Niku to yasai (w)o tabete imasū.

What are you eating? I am eating meat and vegetables.

Nani (w)o yonde imasū ka? Shimbun to zasshi (w)o yonde imasū.

Nani (w)o nonde imasū ka? O-cha to kōhī (w)o nonde imasū.

Nani (w)o kaite imasū ka? Tegami to renshū (w)o kaite imasū.

Nani (w)o shimete imasū ka? Mado to to (w)o shimete imasū.

Nani (w)o akete imasū ka? Hon to zasshi (w)o akete imasū.

Watakūshi no hon (w)o mite imasū ka? Iie, nani mo mite imasen.

Do you see my book? No, I don't see anything.

Watakūshi no niku (w)o tabete imasū ka? Iie, nani mo tabete imasen.

Watakūshi no renshū (w)o manande imasū ka? Iie, nani mo manande imasen.

Watakūshi no shimbun (w)o yonde imasū ka? Iie, nani mo yonde imasen.

To (w)o shimete imasū ka? Iie, nani mo shimete imasen.

Mado (w)o akete imasū ka? Iie, nani mo akete imasen.

Takahashi Jirō San! Dōzo tatte kudasai sōshite Nippon go de hanashite kudasai.

Mr. Jiro Takahashi! Please stand up and speak in Japanese.



Matsumoto Jirō San! Dōzo tatte kudasai sōshite Eigo de hanashite kudasai.

Jones San! Dōzo isu ni kakete kudasai sōshite Nippon go no tegami (w)o yonde kudasai.

Harris San! Dōzo suwatte kudasai sōshite Shina go (w)o kaite kudasai.

Nani (w)o shite imasū ka? Nani mo shite imasen.

What are you doing? I am not doing anything.

Nani (w)o aratte imasū ka? Nani mo aratte imasen.

Nani (w)o akete imasū ka? Nani mo akete imasen.

Nani (w)o shimete imasū ka? Nani mo shimete imasen.

Nani (w)o tabete imasū ka? Nani mo tabete imasen.

Nani (w)o itte imasū ka? Nani mo itte imasen.

Nani (w)o yonde imasū ka? Nani mo yonde imasen.

Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka? Empitsū (w)o motte imasū.

What do you have in your hand? I have a pencil.

Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka? Fude (w)o motte imasū.

Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka? Pen (w)o motte imasū.

Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka? Kami (w)o motte imasū.

Anata wa te ni nani (w)o motte imasū ka? Shimbun (w)o motte imasū.

Anata wa nani ka kaite imashita ka? Nani mo kaite wa imasen deshita.

Were you writing something? I wasn't writing anything.

Anata wa nani ka yonde imashita ka? Nani mo yonde wa imasen deshita.

Anata wa nani ka tabete imashita ka? Nani mo tabete wa imasen deshita.

Anata wa nani ka itte imashita ka? Nani mo itte wa imasen deshita.

Anata wa nani ka nonde imashita ka? Nani mo nonde wa imasen deshita.

Anata no tomodachi e kono hon (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Please take this book to your friend.

Matsumoto San e kono zasshi (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Takahashi San e kono fude (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Watakushi no tomodachi e kono tegami (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Ano otoko no hito e kono gyūnyū (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Ano hon (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Please bring that book.

Ano tamago (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Ano empitsu (w)o motte kite kudasai.

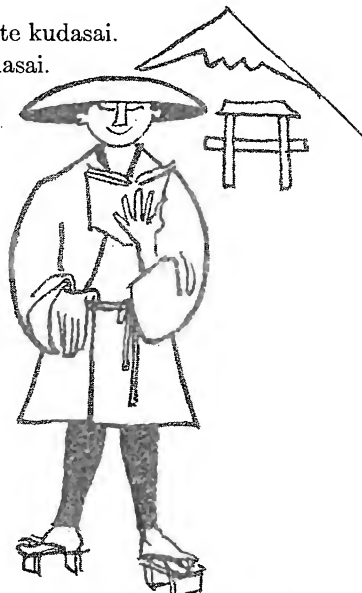
Ano pen (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Ano kami (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Sūkoshi Nippon go (w)o yonde kudasai.

Please read a little Japanese.

Sūkoshi Eigo (w)o yonde kudasai.



Sūkoshi Shina go (w)o yonde kudasai.

Sūkoshi Nippon go (w)o hanashite kudasai.

Sūkoshi Nippon go (w)o kaite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa wakarimasen deshita. Nippon go wa wakarimasen.

I didn't understand. I don't understand Japanese.

Watakūshi wa wakarimasen deshita. Eigo wa wakarimasen.

Watakūshi wa wakarimasen deshita. Shina go wa wakarimasen.

Watakūshi wa wakarimasen deshita. Katakana de kaite kudasai.

Eigo (w)o yonde imashita ka matawa Nippon go (w)o yonde imashita ka?

Were you reading Japanese or were you reading English?

Shina go (w)o hanashite imashita ka matawa Nippon go (w)o hanashite imashita ka?

Shina go (w)o kaite imashita ka matawa Nippon go (w)o kaite imashita ka?

Nippon go (w)o manande imashita ka matawa Shina go (w)o manande imashita ka?

Watakūshi ni wa wakarimasen deshita. Mō ichido yukkuri yonde kudasai.

I did not understand. Please read once more slowly.

Watakūshi ni wa wakarimasen deshita. Mō ichido yukkuri hanashite kudasai.

Watakūshi ni wa wakarimasen deshita. Mō ichido kaite kudasai.

Mō ichido tatte kudasai.

Please stand up again.

Mō ichido watakūshi ni tsuite kite kudasai.

Mō ichido suwatte kudasai.

Mō ichido koko e kite kudasai.

Nani (w)o itte imashita ka? Nani mo itte imasen deshita.

What were you saying? I wasn't saying anything.

Nani (w)o shite imashita ka? Nani mo shite imasen deshita.

Nani (w)o mite imashita ka? Nani mo mite imasen deshita.

Nani (w)o aratte imashita ka? Nani mo aratte imasen deshita.

Nani (w)o motte kite imashita ka? Nani mo motte kite imasen deshita.

Nani (w)o motte itte imashita ka? Nani mo motte itte imasen deshita.

Anata wa tomodachi ni nani (w)o itte imashita ka?

What were you saying to your friend?

Anata wa tomodachi ni nani (w)o kaite imashita ka?

Anata wa Matsumoto San ni nani (w)o okutte imashita ka?

Anata wa Takahashi San ni nani (w)o watashite imashita ka?

Mado (w)o akete mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, akete mo, ii n' desū.

May I open the window? Yes, you may open (it).

To (w)o shimete mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, shimete mo, ii n' desū.

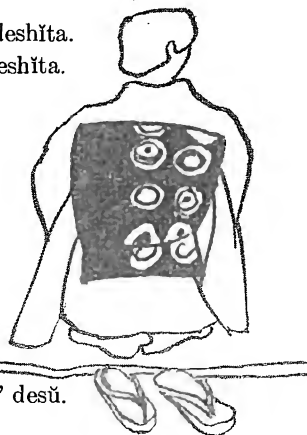
Tegami (w)o kaite mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, kaite mo, ii n' desū.

Renshū (w)o manande mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, manande mo, ii n' desū.

Sūwatte mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, sūwatte mo, ii n' desū.

Haitte mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, haitte mo, ii n' desū.

Ima hiruhan (w)o tabete mo, ii n' desū ka? Hai, tabete mo, ii n' desū.



To (w)o shimete wa ikemasen.

You must not close the door.

Mado (w)o akete wa ikemasen.

Isu ni kakete wa ikemasen.

Ima aratte wa ikemasen.

Ano hon (w)o yonde wa ikemasen.

Ano o-cha (w)o nonde wa ikemasen.

Isoide wa ikemasen.

Eigo (w)o hanashite wa ikemasen.

Haite wa ikemasen.

Sūwatte kudasai.

Please sit down (Japanese fashion).

Isu ni kakete kudasai.

Tatte kudasai.

Haitte kudasai.

Isoide kudasai.

Aratte kudasai.

Tsuite kite kudasai.

Kono jidōsha (w)o mawashite kudasai.

Ano hikōki de tonde kudasai.

Watakūshi (w)o benjo e tsurete itte kudasai.

Please take me to the washroom.

Watakūshi (w)o jidōsha e tsurete itte kudasai.

Watakūshi (w)o hikōki e tsurete itte kudasai.

Ano hito (w)o otoko no benjo e tsurete itte kudasai.

Ano onna no hito (w)o onna no benjo e tsurete itte kudasai.

Nani (w)o shite imashita ka? Tomodachi (w)o jidōsha e tsurete itte imashita.

What were you doing? I was taking my friend to the automobile.

Nani (w)o shite imashita ka? Ano otoko no hito (w)o benjo e tsurete itte imashita.

Nani (w)o shite imashita ka? Matsumoto San (w)o hikōki e tsurete itte imashita.

Nani (w)o shite imashita ka? Ano onna no hito (w)o jidōsha e tsurete itte imashita.

Anata wa tomodachi (w)o tsurete kite kudasai.

Please bring your friend.

Takahashi San (w)o tsurete kite kudasai.

Kono Nippon-jin (w)o tsurete kite kudasai.

Ano Shina-jin (w)o tsurete kite kudasai.

Ano onna no hito (w)o tsurete kite kudasai.

Dare (w)o tsurete kimashita ka? Matsumoto San (w)o tsurete kimashita.

Whom did you bring? I brought Mr. Matsumoto.

Dare (w)o tsurete kimashita ka? Takahashi San (w)o tsurete kimashita.

Dare (w)o tsurete kimashita ka? Tomodachi (w)o tsurete kimashita.

Dare (w)o tsurete kimashita ka? Nippon-jin (w)o tsurete kimashita.

Watakūshi ni tsuite kite kudasai.

Please follow me.

Ano otoko no hito ni tsuite itte kudasai.

Ano onna no hito ni tsuite itte kudasai.

Ano Nippon-jin ni tsuite itte kudasai.

Takahashi San ni tsuite itte kudasai.



Doko e ikimashita ka? Ano Amerika-jin ni tsuite ikimashita.

Where did you go? I followed that American.

Doko e ikimashita ka? Ano otoko no hito ni tsuite ikimashita.

Doko e ikimashita ka? Takahashi Jirō ni tsuite ikimashita.

Doko e ikimashita ka? Tomodachi ni tsuite ikimashita.

Haitte mo, ii n' desu ka? Iie, ima haitte wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte kudasai.

May I come in? No, you must not come in now. Please wait a little.

Itte mo, ii n' desu ka? Iie, ima itte wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte kudasai.

Kite mo, ii n' desu ka? Iie, ima kite wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte kudasai.

Tomodachi (w)o tsurete itte mo, ii n' desu ka? Iie, ima tsurete itte wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte kudasai.

Takahashi San ni tsuite itte mo, ii n' desu ka? Iie, ima tsuite itte wa ikemasen. Sūkoshi matte kudasai.

Anata wa doko ni sunde imasu ka? Tōkiō ni sunde imasu.

Where do you live? I live in Tokio.

Anata no tomodachi wa doko ni sunde imasu ka? Ōsaka ni sunde imasu.

Takahashi San wa doko ni sunde imasu ka? Nagasaki ni sunde imasu.

Ano otoko no hitotachi wa doko ni sunde imasu ka? Yokohama ni sunde imasu.

Ano onna no hitotachi wa doko ni sunde imasu ka? Nyū Yōkū ni sunde imasu.

Watakushi wa Nyū Yōkū ni sunde imashita keredomo ima wa Shikago ni sunde imasu.

I used to live in New York, but now I am living in Chicago.

Ano otoko no hito wa Yokohama ni sunde imashita keredomo ima wa Tōkiō ni sunde imasu.

Ano onna no hito wa Ōsaka ni sunde imashita keredomo ima wa Nagasaki ni sunde imasu.

Watakushidomo wa Amerika ni sunde imashita keredomo ima wa Nippon ni sunde imasu.

Anata wa isoide imasu ka? Iie, isoide wa imasen.

Are you in a hurry? No, I am not in a hurry.

Anata wa kaite imasu ka? Iie, kaite wa imasen.

Ano hitotachi wa yonde imasu ka? Iie, yonde wa imasen.

Matsumoto San wa tabete imasu ka? Iie, tabete wa imasen.

Ano hito wa manande imasu ka? Iie, manande wa imasen.

Anata wa tegami (w)o kaite imashita ka? Iie, tegami wa kaite imasen deshita.

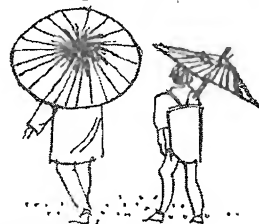
Were you writing a letter? No, I wasn't writing a letter.

Anata wa shimbun (w)o yonde imashita ka? Iie, shimbun wa yonde imasen deshita.

Anata wa shimbun (w)o yonde imasu ka? Iie, shimbun wa yonde imasen.

Are you reading the newspaper? No, I'm not reading the paper.

Anata wa tegami (w)o kaite imasu ka? Iie, tegami wa kaite imasen.



6

Dai Rokk(w)a (Lesson VI)

hikui short, low	okāsan mother	shīkakū square
kanai (my) wife	ōkii big, large	shikan officer (military)
kirei (na) beautiful	okusan, okūsama (your) wife,	shujin master of the house,
marui round	madam	husband
nagai long	otōsan father	tōi far, distant
oishii tasty	sei stature	yori than, from

Gomen kudasai. Go-shujin ³⁸ wa o-taku ³⁸ desū ka?	Excuse me. Is the master of the house in?
Hai, irasshaimasū. ³⁸ Anata wa donata de ³⁹ gozaimasū ³⁸ ka?	Yes, he is. Who are you?
5 Watakūshi wa Buraun to ¹⁵ mōshimasū.	My name is Brown.
Sūkoshi o-machi ³⁸ kudasai. Sugu o-yobi ⁴⁰ itashimasū ³⁸ kara.	Please wait a moment for I'll call him at once.
Komban wa. O-matase ³⁹ itashimashita.	Good evening. (I'm sorry) I made you wait.
Dōzo o-agari ⁴¹ kudasai.	Please come in.
10 Buraun Sama, watakūshi no kanai ³⁸ ni shōkai itashimashō. ⁵⁰	Mr. Brown, (may) I present my wife?
Hajimete o-me ni kakarimasū. ⁴²	I am pleased to meet you.
Dōzo yoroshikū o-negai itashimasū. ⁴⁰	I am very glad to know you.
Dōzo yoroshikū o-negai itashimasū. Ikaga de	Likewise. How are you?
15 gozaimasū ka?	
Arigatō gozaimasū.	Fine, thank you.
Buraun San wa Amerika no ⁴³ rikugun no shikan de, ⁴⁴ Nyū Yōkū kara ⁴⁵ o-ide ni narimashita. ³⁸	Mr. Brown is an American army officer and comes from New York.
20 Sō de gozaimasū ka? Anata no okūsama ³⁸ wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka?	Is that so? Where is your wife now?
Tōkiō ni watakūshi to issho ni ⁴⁶ sunde imasū.	She is living with me in Tokio.
Takahashi San, ano shashin wa anata no	Mrs. Takahashi, is that your father's
25 otōsan desū ka?	picture?
Hai, sō desū. Otōsan to okāsan wa ima Ōsaka e kembutsū ni itte imasū.	Yes, it is. My father and mother have now gone to Osaka to (go) sightseeing.
Ōsaka wa koko kara tōi ⁴³ desū ka?	Is Osaka far from here?
Iie, amari tōkū ⁴³ arimasen.	No, it isn't very far.
30 Koko kara Ōsaka e wa Kōbe e iku yori ⁴⁷ tōi desū ka?	Is Osaka farther from here than Kobe?
Iie, Kōbe e yuku hodo ⁴⁷ tōkū arimasen.	No, it's not as far as Kobe.
Anata wa kirei na ⁴³ o-taku ni sunde imasū ne. ⁴³	You certainly live in a beautiful house.
35 Iie, sō de mo ²⁴ gozaimasen. Kono uchi wa sūkoshi chiisai desū kara, motto ōkii ⁴⁷ uchi ga hoshii ²¹ desū ga . . . ⁵	No, not at all. As this house is a little small, I want a bigger house.

- O-taku wa kono atari de ichiban⁴⁷ ōkii desū ne. Your home is the largest in this neighborhood, isn't it?
- ⁴⁰ Iie, sō de mo arimasen. No, not at all.
- Kono uchi wa amari ōkikū mo chiisakū mo²⁴ gozaimasen. Anata ni wa⁴⁹ okosan ga This house is neither too big nor too small.
- arimasū ka? Do you have any children?
- Hai, musūko to musūme ga gozaimasū. Yes, I have a son and a daughter. My son is
- ⁴⁵ Musūko wa kekkon shīte,⁵⁰ watashidomo¹¹ married and he lives with us.
- to issho ni sunde imasū.
- Musūko wa sūkoshi sei ga hikui desū ga My son is somewhat short, but he is not so
- musūme hodo⁴⁷ hikukū arimasen. short as my daughter.
-
- Hanako San, sono shīkakū no o-kashi no Miss Hanako, please bring me that square
- ⁵⁰ hako (w)o motte kite kudasai. candy box.
- Okāsan, kono hako wa shīkakū ja³⁹ arima- Mother, this box is not square. As the square
- sen. Shīkakū no hako wa kara deshīta kara, box was empty, I brought this round box.
- kono marui hako (w)o motte mairimashīta.³⁸
- Amari oishikū arimasen ga, dōzo o-agari⁴¹
- ⁵⁵ kudasai. They are not very tasty, but please have
- Arigatō gozaimasū. some.
- Takahashi San, taihen nagai (w)o shīte, Thank you very much.
- shītsūrei shimashīta. Mrs. Takahashi, I (stayed) very long and
- Mata dōzo chikai uchi ni o-ide kudasai. was impolite.
- ⁶⁰ Sayōnara.³⁹ Please come again soon.
- Goodbye.

Exercises

Gomen kudasai. Go-shujin wa o-taku desū ka?

Excuse me. Is the master of the house in?

Gomen kudasai. Brown San wa o-taku desū ka?

Gomen kudasai. Anata no okūsan wa o-taku desū ka?

Gomen kudasai. Anata no musūko San wa o-taku desū ka?

Gomen kudasai. Anata no musūme San wa o-taku desū ka?

Anata wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi wa Brown to mōshimasū.

Who are you? My name is (Mr.) Brown.

Anata wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi wa Takahashi to mōshimasū.

Ano otoko no hito wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Ano hito wa Matsumoto San to mōshimasū.

Ano onna no hitotachi wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Ano hitotachi wa Jane Jones to Mary

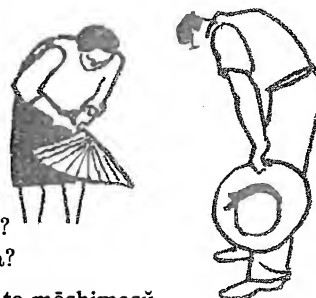
Harris to mōshimasū.

Ano rikugun no shikan wa donata de gozaimashīta ka? Ano shikan wa White San to Stone

San de gozaimashīta.

Sūkoshi o-machi kudasai.

Please wait a little.



Sūkoshi o-hanashi kudasai.

Sūkoshi o-yomi kudasai.

Sūkoshi o-kaki kudasai.

Sūkoshi o-agari kudasai.

Dōzo o-agari kudasai.

Please come in. (come up)

Dōzo o-hanashi kudasai.

Dōzo o-hairi kudasai.

Dōzo o-ide kudasai.

Dōzo o-kake kudasai.

Dōzo o-tachi kudasai.



Brown San, watakūshi no kanai ni shōkai itashimasū.

Mr. Brown, I (want to) present you to my wife.

Takahashi San, watakūshi no shujin ni shōkai itashimasū.

Matsumoto San, watakūshi no musūko (w)o anata ni shōkai itashimasū.

White San, watakūshi no musūme (w)o anata ni shōkai itashimasū.

Jones San, watakūshi no otōsan ni shōkai itashimasū.

Harris San, watakūshi no tomodachi no Yamamoto San ni shōkai itashimasū.

Anata no shujin ni Tōkiō de hajimete o-me ni kakarimashita.

I met your husband in Tokio.

Anata no musūko San ni Nyū Yōkū de hajimete o-me ni kakarimashita.

Ano otoko no hito no otōsan ni Ōsaka de hajimete o-me ni kakarimashita.

Ano onna no hito no okāsan ni Yokohama de hajimete o-me ni kakarimashita.

Takahashi San ni Amerika de hajimete o-me ni kakarimashita.

Dōzo okūsan ni yoroshikū itte kudasai.

Please remember me to your wife.

Dōzo otōsan ni yoroshikū kudasai.

Dōzo shujin ni yoroshikū kudasai.

Dōzo okāsan ni yoroshikū kudasai.

Dōzo Matsumoto San ni yoroshikū kudasai.

Brown San wa Amerika no rikugun no shikan de, Nyū Yōkū kara o-ide ni narimashita.

Mr. Brown is an American army officer and he comes from New York.

Takahashi San wa Nippon-jin de, Kōbe kara o-ide ni narimashita.

White San wa Amerika no shikan de, Nippon go (w)o manande irasshaimasū.

Harris San wa Nippon go (w)o manande, hon (w)o kaite irasshaimasū.

Matsumoto San wa to (w)o akete, Shina go de hanashite imasū.

Ano hito wa hiruhan (w)o tabete, o-cha (w)o nonde irasshaimasū.

Watakūshi wa Ōsaka e itte, anata no okāsan ni o-me ni kakarimashita.

Anata no okūsan wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka? Tōkiō ni watakūshi to isshe ni sunde imasū.

Where is your wife now? She is living with me in Tokio.

Anata no shujin wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka? Nyū Yōkū ni tomodachi to isshe ni sunde imasū.

Anata no musūme San wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka? Kōbe ni watakūshi no okāsan to isshe ni sunde imasū.

Ano hito no otōsan wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka? Kyōto ni musūko to isshe ni sunde imasū.

Ano onna no hito no musūme San wa ima dochira ni irasshaimasū ka? Ano hito to isshe ni sunde imasū.

Takahashi San, ano shashin wa anata no otōsan desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Mr. Takahashi, is that your father's picture? Yes, it is.

Matsumoto San, kono shashin wa anata no okāsan desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Brown San, sono shashin wa Stone San no musūko San desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Yamamoto San, ano shashin wa anata no okūsan desū ka? Hai, sō desū.

Otōsan to okāsan wa ima Ōsaka e kembutsu ni itte imasū.

My father and mother have now gone to Osaka in order to go sightseeing.

Musūko to musūme wa Kyōto e kembutsu ni itte imashita.

Kanai wa Nihon e nihon go (w)o manabi ni itte imasū.

Watakūshi wa Tōkiō e kembutsu ni kimashita.

Watakūshi wa Tōkiō e Nippon go (w)o manabi ni kimashita.

Ano hito wa uchi e tegami (w)o kaki ni kaerimashita.

Kōbe e jidōsha (w)o kai ni ikimashita.

Kinō koko e shimbun (w)o yomi ni kimashita.

Watakūshi wa hiruhan (w)o tabe ni koko e kimashita.

Tomodachi no uchi e shashin (w)o mi ni ikimashita.

Ōsaka wa koko kara tōi desū ka? Iie, amari tōkū arimasen.

Is Osaka far from here? No, it's not very far.

Kono empitsū wa nagai desū ka? Iie, amari nagakū arimasen.

Anata no musūme San wa sei ga hikui desū ka? Iie, amari hikukū arimasen.

Kono o-kashi wa oishii desū ka? Iie, amari oishikū arimasen.

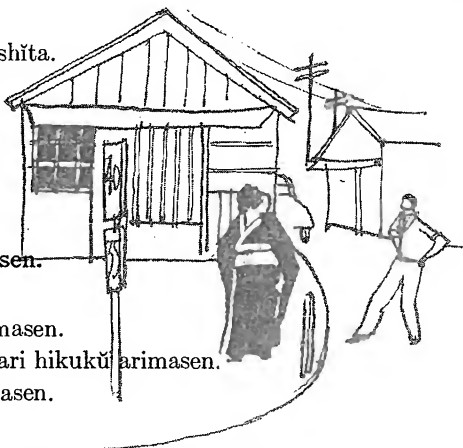
Ano hako wa kara desū ka? Iie, kara ja arimasen.

Koko kara Ōsaka e wa Kōbe e yuku yori tōi desū ka? Iie, Kōbe e iku hodo tōkū arimasen.

Is Osaka farther from here than Kobe? No, it is not so far as Kobe.

Koko kara anata no o-taku e wa ano otoko no hito no uchi e iku hodo chikakū arimasen.

Anata no fude wa Matsumoto San no yori nagai desū ka? Iie, ano hito no fude hodo nagakū arimasen.



Takahashi San no okusan wa Brown San no musume San yori sei ga hikui desu ka? Iie, ano hito no musume San hodo sei wa hikuku arimasen.

Kono hako wa sono hako yori okii desu ka? Iie, sono hako hodo okiku arimasen.

Anata wa kirei na o-taku ni sunde imasu ne. Iie, so de mo gozaimasen.

You live in a beautiful house, I must say. No, not at all.

Anata wa chiisai o-taku ni sunde imasu ne. Hai, so de gozaimasu.

Anata wa okii o-taku ni sunde imasu ne. Iie, so de mo gozaimasen.

Anata ni wa okii musuko San ga arimasu ne. Hai, so de gozaimasu.

Kono uchi wa sukoshi chiisai desu kara, motto okii uchi ga hoshii desu ga . . .

As this house is a bit small, I want a bigger home and . . .

Kono shashin wa sukoshi okii desu kara, motto chiisai shashin ga hoshii desu ga . . .

Kono o-kashi wa amari oshiku arimasen kara, motto oishii o-kashi ga hoshii desu ga . . .

Yokohama wa sukoshi toi desu kara, motto chikai machi e ikitai desu.

Kono hako wa amari kirei ja arimasen kara, motto kirei na hako ga hoshii desu ga . . .

O-taku wa kono atari de ichiban okii desu ne.

Your home is the largest in this neighborhood, isn't it?

Kono empitsu wa ichiban nagai desu ne?

Kono otoko no hito wa sei ga ichiban hikui desu ne.

Kono hako wa ichiban chiisai desu ne.

Kono uchi wa amari okiku mo chiisaku mo gozaimasen.

This house is neither too big nor too small.

Ano hito no uchi wa amari toku mo chikaku mo gozaimasen.

Kono hako wa amari okiku mo chiisaku mo gozaimasen.

Anata ni wa okosan ga arimasu ka? Hai, musuko to musume ga gozaimasu.

Do you have any children? Yes, I have a son and daughter.

Anata ni wa okusan ga arimasu ka? Hai, kanai ga arimasu.

Anata ni wa ane* san ga arimasu ka? Hai, ane san ga arimasu.

Watakushidomo wa issho ni sunde imasu.

We live together.

Watakushidomo wa issho ni sunde imashita.

Ano hitotachi wa issho ni sunde imasu.

Ano hitotachi wa issho ni sunde imashita.

Takahashi San to Matsumoto San wa issho ni sunde imasu.

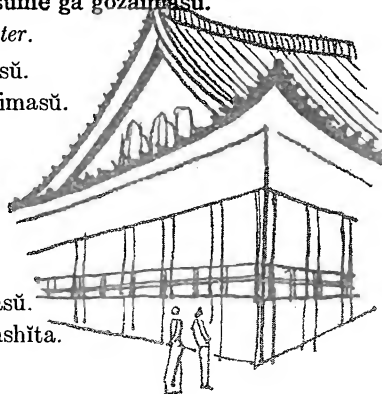
Takahashi San to Matsumoto San wa issho ni sunde imashita.

Musuko wa kekkon shimashita.

My son was married.

Anata wa kekkon shite imasu ka? Hai, kekkon shite imasu.

Ano otoko no hito wa kekkon shimashita ka? Iie, kekkon shimasen deshita.



Ano onna no hito wa kekkon shite imasu ka? Iie, kekkon shite imasen.

Ano hito wa donata to kekkon shimashita ka? Ano hito wa Matsumoto San to kekkon shimashita.

Musuko wa sukoshi sei ga hikui desu ga musume hodo hikuku arimasen.

My son is a little short, but he is not so short as my daughter.

Koko kara Kobe e wa sukoshi toi desu ga Nagasaki e iku hodo toku arimasen.

Kono o-kashi wa sukoshi oishii desu ga sono o-kashi hodo oishiku arimasen.

Anata no empitsu wa nagai desu ga watakushi no hodo nagaku arimasen.

Takahashi San no uchi wa okii desu ga Matsumoto San no hodo okiku arimasen.

Kono hon wa chiisai desu ga are hodo chiisaku arimasen.

Hanako San, sono shikaku no hako (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Hanako, please bring me that square box.

Jiro* San, sono marui hako (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Hanako San, sono kirei na kami (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Jiro San, sono nagai fude (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Okasan, kono hako wa shikaku ja arimasen.

Mother, this box is not square.

Otosan, sono hako wa maruku arimasen.

Takahashi San, ano mado wa shikaku ja arimasen.

Hanako San, ano mado wa maruku arimasen.

Okusan, ano uchi wa kirei ja arimasen.

Okasan, ano hako wa kara ja arimasen.

Amari oishiku gozaimasen ga . . .

They aren't very good . . .

Amari okiku gozaimasen ga . . .

Amari chiisaku gozaimasen ga . . .

Amari nagaku gozaimasen ga . . .

Amari hikuku gozaimasen ga . . .

Chikai uchi ni o-ide kudasai.

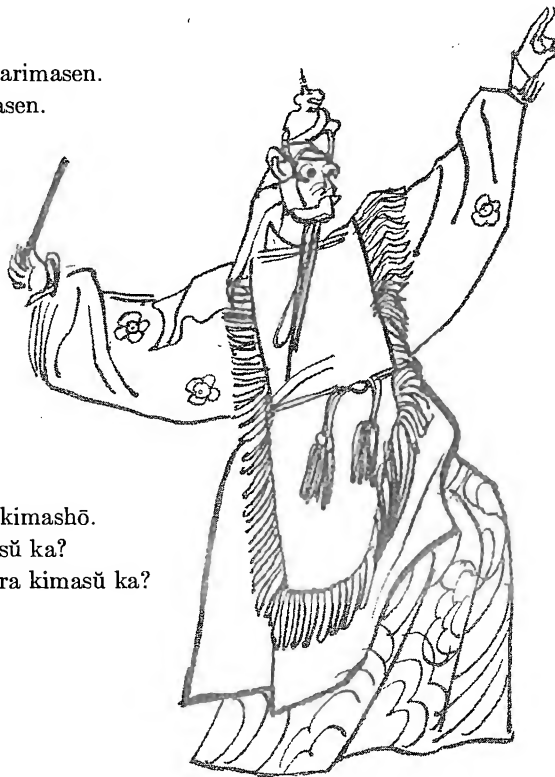
Please come in a little while.

Chikai uchi ni kaite kudasai.

Tomodachi wa chikai uchi ni Amerika e ikimasho.

Anata wa Amerika e chikai uchi ni ikimasu ka?

Ano hito wa chikai uchi ni Yokohama kara kimasu ka?





Dai Hichi K(w)a (Lesson VII)

- Anata wa Nippon go de kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Can you count in Japanese?
 Hai, dekimasū: ichi, ni, san, shi, go, rokū, Yes, I can: one, two, three, four, five, six, (s)hichi, hachi, k(y)u, jū. seven, eight, nine, ten.
 5 Shikashi Nippon-jin wa ichi kara jū made⁵¹ But the Japanese count from one to ten (w)o hitotsū, fütatsū, mittsū, yottsū, itsutsū, muttsū, nanatsū, yattsū, kokonotsū, tō⁵² with *hitotsū, fütatsū, mittsū*, etc. (using to¹⁵ kazoemasū. Anata wa jū kara hyakū another set of numerals) Can you count by made tō zutsu⁵³ tonde kazoeru koto ga tens to one hundred?
 10 dekimasū ka? Yes, I can.
 Hai, dekimasū. Miss Smith, let's go shopping now.
 Sūmisū San, ima kara,⁴⁵ kaimono ni ikimashō.⁵⁴ No, as I have to wait for my younger sister to return from school, please wait a little.
 15 Iie, watakūshi wa imōto ga gakkō kara kaeru no⁵⁵ (w)o mata⁵⁶-nakereba narimasen⁵⁷ kara, sūkoshi o-machi kudasai. Is it all right if I take my younger sister? Ano ko wa iku sai⁵⁸ desū ka? How old is the child? Jū issai desū. She is eleven years old.
 20 Amari chiisai desū kara, tsurete ika-nai hō ga ii deshō.⁵⁹ It would be better not to take her because she is too little. Sate, ima wa nan ji desū ka? By the way, what time is it now? Gozen⁶³ jū ichi ji desū. It is eleven A. M. Watakūshi wa gogo yo⁵² ji han made ni uchi I must be back by four-thirty P. M.
 25 e kaera⁵⁷-nakereba narimasen. I must buy some meat so is there a butcher shop in this neighborhood? Watakūshi wa niku (w)o kawa⁵⁷-nakereba narimasen ga kono kinjo ni niku-ya⁶⁰ ga arimasū ka? No, there is not. There is a good butcher shop on the thirtieth block from here.
 30 Iie, arimasen. Koko kara san jitchōme⁶¹ no⁵² tokoro ni ii niku-ya ga gozaimasū. What time shall we leave? Nan ji ni dekakemashō ka? As it is quite far, we must leave at one o'clock. Kanari tō⁴³ gozaimasū kara, ichi ji ni dekake-nakereba narimasen. How long does it take to (go) to the butcher store?
 35 Niku-ya made wa dono kurai kakarimashō⁴² ka? It takes about a half hour.
 Han jikan⁶² gurai kakarimashō.

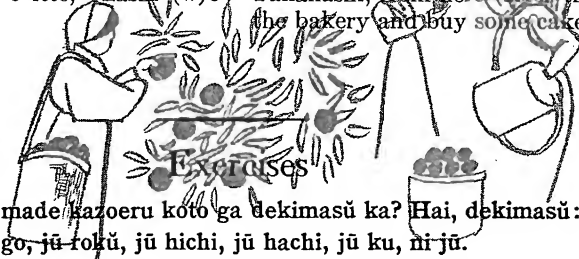
At the Butcher Shop

- Niku-ya San, kono gyūniki wa ikūra desū ka? Butcher, how much is this beef?
 Ikkin⁶¹ ichi yen rokū jissen⁶¹ de gozaimasū. It's one yen, sixty sen a *kin* (1.32 lb.).
 40 Sore de wa kono gyūniku (w)o san gin⁶¹ kudasai. Very well then, please give me three *kin* of this beef.

- Kono tamago wa ikūra desū ka? How much are these eggs?
 Sochira¹⁰ wa hītotsū san sen desū, shikashi Those are three sen each, but those big ones
 achira¹⁰ no ōkii no⁵⁵ wa fūtatsū hichi sen de are seven sen for two.
 45 gozaimasū.
 Dōzo, ichiban ii tamago (w)o ichi dāsū Please give me a dozen of the best eggs.
 kudasai.

At the Grocery

- Takahashi San, hayakū yao-ya e yukimashō, Mr. Takahashi, let's go to the grocery
 mō ni ji jippun⁶¹ mae⁶³ ni narimashita kara. store right away because already it's ten of
 two.
 50 Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? How much are these carrots?
 Sore wa hīto⁵² taba shi sen desū. Those are four sen a bunch.
 Kono jagaimo wa ikūra desū ka? How much are these potatoes?
 Sore wa rokkin⁶¹ san jū go sen desū. Those are thirty-five sen for six kin.
 Motto o-yasui jagaimo wa arimasen ka? Don't you have any cheaper potatoes?
 55 Hai, kochira de gozaimasū. Yes, here they are.
 Sochira wa amari takō⁴³ gozaimasū kara, As those are too expensive, I'll take these.
 kochira¹⁰ (w)o moraimashō.
 Kono suika wa oishii desū ka? Are these watermelons sweet? (tasty)
 Hai, taihen oishiū⁴³ gozaimasū. Yes, they are very good.
 60 Hambun morau⁵⁴ koto ga dekimasū ka? May I take a half?
 Hai, hambun de mo, sambun no ichi⁵² de Yes, either a half or a third is all right.
 mo, yoroshiū gozaimasū.
 Hambun de takūsan desū. De wa, Takahashi A half will be enough. Well now, Mr.
 San, kore kara pan-ya e itte,⁴⁴ kashi (w)o Takahashi, from here (after this) let's go to
 65 kaimashō. the bakery and buy some cake.



Exercises

Anata wa jū kara ni jū made kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, dekimasū: jū, jū ichi, jū ni, jū san, jū shi, jū go, jū rokū, jū hichi, jū hachi, jū ku, ni jū.

Can you count from ten to twenty? Yes, I can: ten, eleven, twelve, thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen, twenty.

Anata wa tō zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, jū, ni jū, san jū, shi jū, go jū, rokū jū, hichi jū, hachi jū, ku jū, hyakū.

Can you count by tens? Yes, ten, twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety, one hundred.

Anata wa itsutsu zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, go, jū, jū go, ni jū, ni jū go, san jū, san jū go, shi jū, shi jū go, go jū, go jū go, rokū jū, rokū jū go, hichi jū, hichi jū go, hachi jū, hachi jū go, ku jū, ku jū go, hyakū.

Anata wa hyakū zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, hyakū, ni hyakū, sambyakū, shi hyakū, go hyakū, roppyakū, hichi hyakū, happyakū, ku hyakū, issen.

Anata wa sen zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, issen, ni sen, san zen, shi sen, go sen, rokū sen, hichi sen, hassen, ku sen, ichi man.

Anata wa ichi man zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, ichi man, ni man, samman, shi man, go man, rokū man, hichi man, hachi man, ku man, jū man.

Anata wa jū man zutsu tonde kazoeru koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, jū man, ni jū man, san jū man, shi jū man, go jū man, rokū jū man, hichi jū man, hachi jū man, ku jū man, hyakū man.

Ima kara, kaimono ni ikimashō.

Then let's go shopping now.

Ima kara, gakkō e ikimashō.

Ima kara, kembutsu ni ikimashō.

Ima kara, sakana-ya e ikimashō.

Ima kara, yao-ya e ikimashō.

Ima kara, niku-ya e ikimashō.

Ima kara, pan-ya e ikimashō.

Ima kara, shimbun (w)o kai ni ikimashō.

Ima kara, issho ni uchi e kaerimashō.

Now let's go home together.

Ima kara, issho ni koko de machimashō.

Ima kara, issho ni Nippon go (w)o sūkoshi manabimashō.

Mata-nakereba narimasen.

I have to wait.

Gakkō e ika-nakereba narimasen.

Tegami (w)o kaka-nakereba narimasen.

Ano hikōki de toba-nakereba narimasen.

Nippon go de hanasa-nakereba narimasen.

Ima kara, hiruhan (w)o tabe-nakereba narimasen.

Uchi ni i-nakereba narimasen.

Uchi e kaera-nakereba narimasen.

Kore (w)o shi-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi wa niku (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi wa imōto ga gakkō kara kaeru no (w)o mata-nakereba narimasen.

I have to wait until my younger sister returns from school.

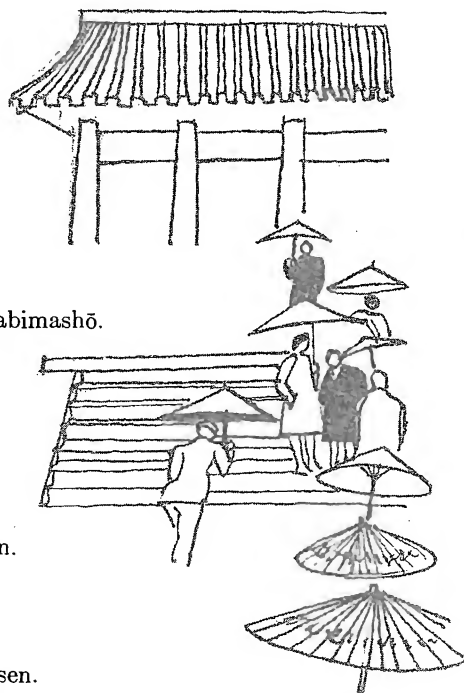
Watakūshi wa okāsan ga niku-ya kara kaeru no (w)o mata-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi no kanai ga pan-ya kara kaeru no (w)o mata-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi no otōsan ga yao-ya kara kaeru no (w)o mata-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi no tomodachi no Takahashi San ga kaeru no (w)o mata-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi ga mise kara kaeru no (w)o matte kudasai.



Sakana-ya e ikimashō ka? Yao-ya e ikimashō ka?

Shall we go to the fish store or shall we go to the grocery?

Pan ya e ikimashō ka? Niku-ya e ikimashō ka?

Gakkō e ikimashō ka? Uchi e kaerimashō ka?

Tegami (w)o kakimashō ka? Nippon go (w)o manabimashō ka?

Yūhan (w)o tabemashō ka? Kembutsu ni ikimashō ka?

Ano ko wa iku sai desū ka? Jū issai desū.

How old is the child? She is eleven years old.

Anata wa iku sai desū ka? San jū shi sai desū.

Ano otoko no hito wa iku sai desū ka? Rokū jissai desū.

Ano onna no hito wa iku sai desū ka? Ni jū go sai desū.

Takahashi San no musūko San wa iku sai desū ka? Jū hichi sai desū.

Ano ko wa ikutusu desū ka? Nanatsū desū.

How old is she? She is seven.

Ano ko wa ikutsu desū ka? Mittsu desū.

Anata no imōto San wa ikutsu desū ka? Itsutsu desū.

Matsumoto San no musūko San wa ikutsu desū ka? Tō desū.

Tsurete ika-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Let's not take her with us.

Ima kara, ika-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Uchi e kaera-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Tsugi no renshū wa manaba-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Mata-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Eigo wa hanasa-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Amari niku wa tabe-nai hō ga ii deshō.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Jū ichi ji desū.

What time is it now? It is eleven o'clock.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Ichi ji desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Ni ji desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? San ji han desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? San ji go fun desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Ku ji jippun mae desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? San ji go fun desū.

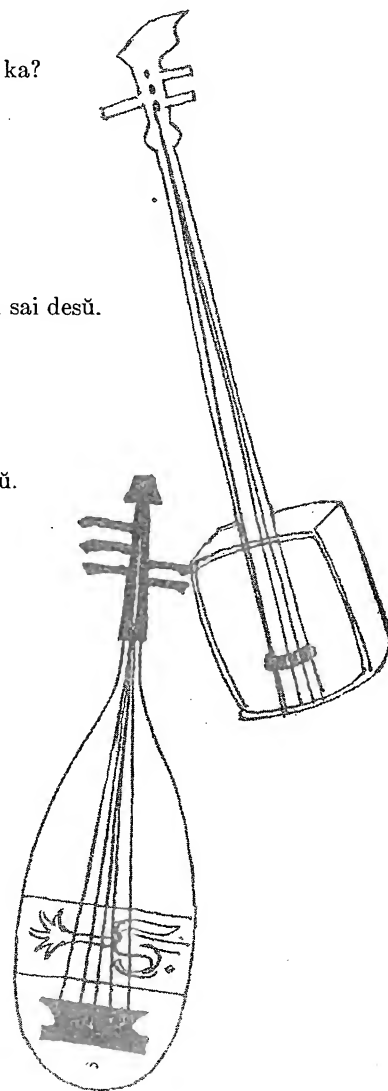
Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Jū ni ji roppun mae desū.

Ima wa nan ji desū ka? Yo ji sampun mae desū.

Watakūshi wa gogo no yo ji han made ni uchi e kaera-nakereba narimasen.

I must be back home by four-thirty P. M.

Watakūshi wa gozen no hachi ji han made ni kaimono ni ika-nakereba narimasen.



Anata wa gogo no rokū ji made ni kaera-nakereba narimasen.

Anata wa gozen no ku ji made ni koko e ko-nakereba narimasen.

Gogo no jū ni ji made ni ano hon (w)o motte ika-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi wa kinō gogo no hichi ji made ni sore (w)o shi-nakereba narimasen deshita.

I had to do it by seven P. M. yesterday.

Ano hito wa gogo no jū ji made ni kaera-nakereba narimasen deshita.

Ano hitotachi wa gozen no hachi ji han made ni Tōkiō kara dekae-nakereba narimasen deshita.

Watakūshi wa pan (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen ga, kono kinjo ni pan-ya ga arimasu ka?

As I have to buy bread, is there a bakery in this neighborhood?

Watakūshi wa yasai (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen ga, kono kinjo ni yao-ya ga arimasu ka?

Watakūshi wa sakana (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen ga, kono kinjo ni sakana-ya ga arimasu ka?

Watakūshi wa gyūniku (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen, kono kinjo ni niku-ya ga arimasu ka?

Koko kara san jitchōme no tokoro ni yoi niku-ya ga gozaimasu.

There is a good butcher shop thirty blocks from here.

Koko kara go chōme no tokoro ni yoi pan-ya ga gozaimasu.

Koko kara rokū chōme no tokoro ni yoi sakana-ya ga gozaimasu.

Koko kara hichi-hachi chōme no tokoro ni yoi yao-ya ga gozaimashō.

Takahashi San no tokoro e ikitai desu.

I want to go to Mr. Takahashi's (house).

Matsumoto San no tokoro wa koko kara tōi desu ka?

Nan ji ni Takahashi San no tokoro e iku tsumori desu ka?

Kinō anata no tomodachi no tokoro e ikimashita ka?

Kanari tō gozaimasu ne?

It's quite far, isn't it?

Kanari chisō gozaimasu ne?

Kanari hikū gozaimasu ne?

Kanari ōkiū gozaimasu ne?

Kanari kirei de gozaimasu ne?

Kara de gozaimasu ne?

Shikakū de gozaimasu ne?



Nan ji ni dekakemashō ka? Ichi ji ni dekae-nakereba narimasen.

What time shall we leave? We must leave at one o'clock.

Nan ji ni kaimono ni ikimashō ka? Go ji ni ika-nakereba narimasen.

Nan ji ni yūhan (w)o tabemashō ka? Hichi ji han ni tabe-nakereba narimasen.

Anata wa nan ji ni dekakemasu ka? Rokū ji ni dekae-nakereba narimasen.

Nan ji ni uchi e kaerimashō ka? Jū ichi ji ni kaera-nakereba narimasen.

Niku-ya made wa dono gurai kakarimashō ka? Ni jū go fun gurai kakarimashō.

About how long does it take to the butcher shop? It takes about twenty-five minutes.

Anata no gakkō made wa dono gurai kakarimasū ka? Jippun gurai kakarimasū.

Koko kara Kōbe made hikōki de nan jikan kakarimashō ka? San jikan gurai kakarimashō.

Otōsan no o-taku made wa dono gurai kakarimashō ka? San jippun gurai kakarimasū.

Jidōsha de Tōkiō kara Kōbe made wa nan jikan kakarimashō ka? Ku jikan gurai kakarimashō.

Koko kara Tōkiō made dono gurai arimasū ka?

How far is it from here to Tokyo?

Tōkiō kara Ōsaka made dono gurai arimasū ka?

Koko kara yoi pan-ya made dono gurai arimasū ka?

Koko kara Nagasaki made dono gurai arimasū ka?

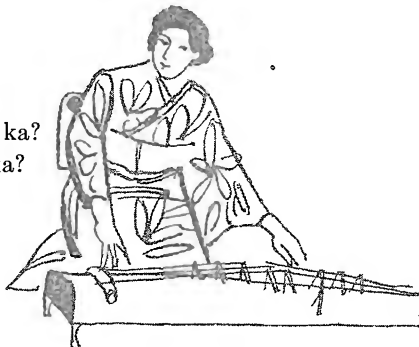
Niku-ya San, kono gyūniku wa ikūra desū ka?

Butcher, how much is this beef?

Pan-ya San, sono pan wa ikūra desū ka?

Yao-ya San, kono jagaimo wa ikūra desū ka?

Niku-ya San, sono buta-niku wa ikūra desū ka?



Sono gyūniku wa ikkin ichi yen rokū jissen de gozaimasū ga kono buta-niku wa hachi jissen desū.

That beef is one yen, sixty sen a pound and this pork is eighty sen.

Sono jagaimo wa ni kin hichi sen de gozaimasū ga kono ninjin wa hīto-taba go sen desū.

Kono kōhī wa san gin ichi yen de gozaimasū ga sono o-cha wa ikkin ni jū go sen kara jū yen made gozaimasū.

Sore de wa, kono gyūniku (w)o san gin kudasai.

Very well then, please give me three pounds of this beef.

Sore de wa, sono buta-niku (w)o rokkin kudasai.

Sore de wa, kono kōhī (w)o hakkin kudasai.

Sore de wa, sono o-kashi (w)o futa-hako kudasai.

Sore de wa, kono jagaimo (w)o jikkin kudasai.

Sore wa yo yen hachi jissen ni narimasū ne. Hai, sō de gozaimasū.

That comes to four yen, eighty sen, doesn't it? Yes, that's right.

Sore wa ni yen san jissen ni narimasū ne. Hai, sō de gozaimasū.

Sore wa ichi yen rokū jissen ni narimasū ne. Hai, sō de gozaimasū.

Sore wa hachi jū go sen ni narimasū ne. Hai, sō de gozaimasū.

Sōshite buta-niku wa iku kin sashiagemashō ka? Buta-niku wa irimasen.

And how many pounds of pork can I give you? I don't want (need) any pork.

Sōshite ninjin wa iku taba sashiagemashō ka? Ninjin wa irimasen.

Sōshite kōhī wa iku kin sashiagemashō ka? Kōhī wa irimasen.

Sōshīte o-kashi wa iku hako sashiagemashō ka? O-kashi wa irimasen.

Sōshīte gyūniku wa iku kin sashiagemashō ka? Gyūniku wa irimasen.

Tamago wa ikutsū irimasū ka? Tamago (w)o kokonotsū kudasai.

How many eggs do you need? Please give me nine eggs.

Suika wa ikutsū irimasū ka? Suika (w)o yottsū kudasai.

Isu wa ikutsū irimasū ka? Isu (w)o muttsū kudasai.

Tsukue wa ikutsū irimasū ka? Tsukue wo futatsu kudasai.

Anata no mise ni tamago wa arimasen ka? Iie, gozaimasū.

Don't you have eggs in your store? Yes, we do.

Anata no mise ni jagaimo wa arimasen ka? Iie, gozaimasū.

Anata no mise ni kōhī wa arimasen ka? Hai, gozaimasen.

Anata no mise ni buta-niku wa arimasen ka? Hai, gozaimasen.

Anata no mise ni ninjin wa arimasen ka? Iie, gozaimasū.

Kono tamago wa hītotsū san sen desū, shīkashi kochira no ōkii no wa fūtatsū hichi sen de gozaimasū.

These eggs are three sen a piece, but these big ones are seven sen for two.

Kono ninjin wa hīto taba go sen desū, shīkashi sochira no chiisai no wa yo taba jū go sen de gozaimasū.

Sochira no o-kashi wa hīto hako wa go jissen desū, shīkashi achira no shikakū no wa rokū jū go sen desū.

Dōzo, ichiban ii tamago (w)o ichi dāsū kudasai.

Please give me one dozen of the best eggs.

Dōzo ichiban ii tamago (w)o muttsū kudasai.

Dōzo ichiban ii jagaimo (w)o jū go kin kudasai.

Dōzo ichiban ii kōhī (w)o go kin kudasai.

Dōzo ichiban ii gyūniku (w)o ni kin kudasai.

Dōzo ichiban chiisai o-kashi (w)o mi hako kudasai.

Dōzo motto ōkii tamago (w)o kudasai.



Mina de ikūra ni narimasū ka? Mina de yo yen, ku jū ni sen ni narimasū.

How much does everything come to? Everything comes to four yen, ninety-two sen.

Mina de ikūra ni narimasū ka? Mina de shi jū hichi sen ni narimasū.

Mina de ikūra ni narimasū ka? Mina de hichi jū yen, hassen ni narimasū.

Mina de ikūra ni narimasū ka? Mina de hachi jū ichi yen ni narimasū.

Hayakū yao-ya e ikimashō, mō ni ji jippun mae ni narimashita kara.

Let's go to the grocery store quickly, because it's already ten minutes of two.

Hayakū ikimashō, mō yo ji ni jippun mae ni narimashita kara.

Hayakū kaerimashō, mō jū ni ji jū go fun ni narimashita kara.

Hayakū araimashō, mō ku ji jū go fun mae ni narimashita kara.

Hayakū tabemashō, mō hachi ji ni jū rokū fun ni narimashita kara.

Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Sore wa mi taba shi sen desū.

How much are these carrots? Those are four sen for three bunches.

Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Sore wa hito taba jissen desū.

Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Sono ninjin wa mi taba yon sen desū.

Kono suika wa ikūra desū ka? Sore wa hitotsu shi jū go sen desū.

Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Sore wa itsu taba ni jissen desū.

Kono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Sore wa to taba shi jū go sen desū.

Sono ninjin wa ikūra desū ka? Kono ninjin wa jū ni taba shi jissen desū.

Motto yasui jagaimo wa arimasen ka? Hai, kochira ni gozaimasū.

Don't you have any cheaper potatoes? Yes, here they are.

Motto ii o-kashi wa arimasen ka? Hai, sochira ni gozaimasū.

Motto ōkii tamago wa arimasen ka? Iie, achira ni gozaimasū.

Motto ii gyūniku wa arimasen ka? Iie, kochira ni gozaimasū.

Motto oishii suika wa arimasen ka? Hai, kochira ni gozaimasū.

Ōkii jagaimo ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Chiisai no ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Dochira (w)o o-tori ni narimasū ka?

Do you prefer big potatoes or do you prefer little ones? Which will you take?

Tamago ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Niku ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Dochira (w)o o-agari ni narimasū ka?

Marui hako ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Shikaku no ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Dochira (w)o motte o-ide ni narimasū ka?

Nippon go de tegami (w)o o-kaki ni narimasū ka? Eigo de tegami (w)o o-kaki ni narimasū ka? Dochira de o-kaki ni narimasū ka?

Gyūnyū ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? O-cha ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Dochira (w)o o-agari ni narimasū ka?

O-cha (w)o o-agari ni narimashita ka?

Did you drink (partake of) the tea?

Niku (w)o o-agari ni narimashita ka?

Shikaku no hako (w)o motte o-ide ni narimashita ka?

Eigo de tegami (w)o o-kaki ni narimashita ka?

Ashita o-kaki ni narimasū ka?

Ōkii no ga sūki desū ga amari takō gozaimasū kara, kochira (w)o moraimashō.

I like large ones, but since they are too expensive, I'll take these.

Chiisai no ga sūki desū ga amari takō gozaimasū kara, sochira (w)o moraimashō.

Kochira no ga sūki desū ga amari takō gozaimasū kara, achira (w)o moraimashō.

Gyūniku ga sūki desū ga amari takō gozaimasū kara, buta-niku (w)o rokkin moraimashō.

O-kashi ga sūki desū ga amari oishikū gozaimasen kara, suika (w)o moraimashō.

Kochira (w)o moraimashō.

I'll take this one.



Tamago (w)o muttsū moraimashō.

Tamago (w)o jū ni moraimashō.

Gyūniku (w)o go kin moraimashō.

Suika (w)o fūtatsū moraimashō.

O-kashi (w)o to hako moraimashō.

Jagaimo (w)o go kin moraimashō.

Ninjin (w)o ya taba moraimashō.

Kono suika wa oishii desū ka? Hai, taihen oishiū gozaimasū.

Is this watermelon tasty? Yes, it's very good.

Kono niku wa oishii desū ka? Hai, taihen oishiū gozaimasū.

Sono o-kashi wa oishiū gozaimasū ka? Hai, taihen oishiū gozaimasū.

Ano buta-niku wa oishii desū ka? Hai, taihen oishii desū.

Sono sakana wa oishii desū ka? Iie, amari oishikū gozaimasen.

Hambun morau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, hambun de mo sambun no ichi de mo yoroshiū gozaimasū.

May I take a half? Yes, you may (take) either a half or a third.

Hambun no suika (w)o morau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, hambun no de mo shibun no san de mo yoroshiū gozaimasū.

Han gin morau koto ga dekimasū ka? Hai, ikkin de mo han gin de mo yoroshiū gozaimasū.

Hambun de takūsan desū.

Half is enough.

Sore de takūsan desū.

Go bun no san de takūsan desū.

Hachi bun no go de takūsan desū.

Fūtatsū de takūsan desū.

Rokkin de takūsan desū.

Nana taba de takūsan desū.

Pan-ya e itte, o-kashi (w)o kaimashō.

I shall go to the baker and buy some cake.

Niku-ya e itte, gyūniku (w)o kaimashō.

Uchi e kaette, tegami (w)o kakimashō.

Shashin-ya e itte, shashin (w)o totte moraimashō.

Hiruhan (w)o tabete, Nippon go no renshū (w)o shimashō.

Shimbun (w)o motte kite kara, anata wa dekakete mo ii n' desū.

After bringing (me) the newspaper, you may go out.

Pan-ya e itte kara, niku-ya e o-ide kudasai.

Uchi e kaette kara, tegami (w)o kaite kudasai.

Shashin-ya kara kaette kara, hiruhan (w)o o-agari ni natte mo ii n' desū.

Ano hon (w)o katte kara, uchi e kaette kudasai.



Pan-ya e itte iru aida ni,⁸⁰ Takahashi San to Nippon go de hanashite imashita.

While you went to the bakery, I was speaking in Japanese to Mr. Takahashi.

Anata ga gakkō ni iru aida ni, watakushi wa niku-ya e ikimashō.

Watakushi ga uchi ni iru aida ni, niku (w)o katte kite kudasai.

Ginza e o-ide ni natte iru aida ni, shashin-ya e mo o-ide kudasai.

Koko ni kakete iru aida ni, tegami (w)o kaite kudasai.

Pan-ya e iku mae ni, renshū (w)o shimashita.

Before I went to the bakery, I did the exercise.

Gakkō e iku mae ni, tegami (w)o kaite kudasai.

Uchi e kaeru mae ni, niku-ya e o-ide kudasai.

Shashin-ya e iku mae ni, te (w)o aratte kudasai.

Hiruhan (w)o o-agari ni naru mae ni, sūkoshi Nippon go (w)o manande kudasai.

Shimbun (w)o motte kuru mae ni, dōzo kaimono ni o-ide kudasai.

Pan-ya e itte, o-kashi (w)o kaimashita.

I went to the bakery and bought some cake.

Niku-ya e itte, gyūniku (w)o kaimashita.

Uchi e kaette, tegami (w)o kakimashita.

Shashin-ya e itte, shashin (w)o totte moraimashita.

Hiruhan (w)o tabete, Nippon go no renshū (w)o shimashita.

Pan-ya e itte kara, niku-ya e ikimasū.

After going to the bakery, I'll go to the butcher shop.

Niku-ya e itte kara, yasai (w)o kaimasū.

Uchi e kaette kara, tegami (w)o kakimasū.

Shashin-ya e itte kara, kaimono ni ikimasū.

Hiruhan (w)o tabete kara, Nippon go no renshū (w)o shimasū.

Anata ga pan-ya e itte ita aida ni, Takahashi San to Nippon go de hanashimashita.

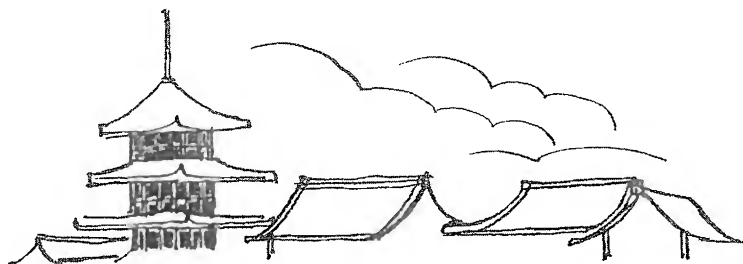
While you were at the bakery, I was speaking with Mr. Takahashi in Japanese.

Anata ga gakkō e itte ita aida ni, Nihon go no renshū (w)o shimashita.

Anata ga uchi ni ita aida ni, watakushi wa o-kashi (w)o kaimashita.

Ginza e o-ide ni natte ita aida ni, imōto San ga koko e o-ide ni narimashita.

Ano hito ga shimbun (w)o yonde ita aida ni, anata wa nani (w)o shimashita ka?





Dai Hachi K(w)a (Lesson VIII)

- Pan-ya San, kono pan wa aikawarazu shichi sen desū ka?
 Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara hachi sen ni narimashita.⁶⁴
- 5 De wa, ni hon⁶⁴ kudasai.
 Anata no tonari no sakana-ya wa donna⁷³ mise desū ka?
 Asoko ni wa taisō ii sakana ga gozaimashō.
 Kyō wa Kinyōbi desū kara, atarashii sakana
- 10 ga takusan aru sō desū.⁶⁵
 Tsuide ni, pan-ya San, watakūshi wa Beikoku-jin de gozaimasū kara, isshūkan no hi no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite⁶⁶ kudasai.
- 15 Hai, kashikomarimashita. Nichiyōbi, Getsuyōbi, K(w)ayōbi, Suiyōbi, Mokuyōbi, Kinyōbi, Doyōbi⁶⁷ de gozaimasū.
 Arigatō⁶⁸ gozaimashita. Mata asu mairimashō.
- Baker, is this bread still seven sen?
 No, from the beginning of this month it became eight sen.
 Very well, please give me two loaves.
 What kind of shop is the fish store next door?
 I think they have very good fish over there.
 As to-day is Friday, I understand they have plenty of fresh fish.
 By the way, baker, as I am an American, please say the names of the days of the week for me slowly.
 Yes, with pleasure. They are Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday.
 Thanks very much. I'll come again tomorrow.

At the Fish Store

- 20 Sakana-ya San, tonari no pan-ya San ga anata (w)o taihen homete imashita kara, koko e kimashita ga dōzo atarashii o-sakana (w)o go hiki⁶⁴ kudasai.
 Sō de gozaimasū ka? Sore mo sono hazu de
- 25 gozaimashō.⁶⁸ Pan-ya wa watakūshi no itoko de, Kōbe de⁶⁴ umarete, jū hachi ni naru made ano machi de ōkikū narimashita⁶⁹ ga ku nen hodo mae ni koko e mairimashita.
 De wa, Shōwa⁷⁰ jū nen ni Tōkiō e kimashita
- 30 ka?
 Hai, Shōwa jū nen no Nigatsū jū go nichī ni Tōkiō e kimashita.
 Sore wa Seireki issen k(y)u hyakū san jū roku nen desū ne. Sate, kyō wa nan nichī desū ka?
- 35 Shōgatsū yōka desū. Okusan, soko²⁸ ni atarashii shake ga gozaimasū.
 Sore de wa, kono shake (w)o roppiki⁶¹ moraimashō.
- 40 Kesa ichi man no ebi ga tsukimashita ga mō rokū sembiki⁶¹ urimashita.
- Fish man, as your next door baker was praising you so much, I came here, so please give me five fresh fish.
 Is that so? That is quite natural. The baker is my cousin; he was born in Kobe and he was raised in that town until he became eighteen and he came here nine years ago.
 Then, he came to Tokio the tenth year of *Showa*?
 Yes, he came the 15th of February, the tenth year of *Showa*.
 That's 1936 A. D., isn't it?⁷⁰ By the way, what is the date to-day?
 January 8th. Madam, there are some fresh salmon over there.
 Well then, I'll take six of these salmon.
 This morning ten thousand shrimp came in (arrived) and we already sold six thousand.

- Sō desū ka? Sono ebi wa ikūra desū ka?
 Hyappiki⁶¹ hachi jū go sen de gozaimasū.
 Anata no go-kazokū wa nan⁷³ nin⁶⁴ de
 45 gozaimasū ka?
 Kazokū wa otoko ga hitori⁶⁴ de, onna ga
 fūtarī desū. Desū kara, san jū go roppiki
 moraimashō.
 Anata wa sashimi ga o-sūki ja gozaimasen
 50 ka?
 Iie, amari sūkimasen.
 Koko ni ikita sakana ga gozaimasū. Ikkin
 ni jū go sen desū ga makete jū go sen ni
 shīte okimasū.⁶¹
 55 Jissen ni makete kudasai.
 De wa, sō itashimashō.
- Matsumoto Sama, nan ji made ni uchi e
 kaera-nakereba narimasen ka?
 Mō kaeru²⁶ jikan ga kimashita.
 60 Kaeri⁴⁰ wa densha de nakūte mo⁵⁷ ii deshō
 ne.
 Asoko ni²⁸ jinrikisha ga san dai⁶⁴ imasū.⁷¹
 Kuruma-ya San, Motomachi sambyakū ni
 jū go ban e tsurete itte kudasai.
 65 Hai, kashikomarimashita.
- Watakūshi no uchi wa koko kara go
 kemme⁵² desū.
 Kuruma-ya San, kuruma-chin wa ikūra
 desū ka?
 70 Ichi yen ni jū go sen desū.
- Is that right? How much are those shrimp?
 Eighty-five sen per hundred.
 How many people are there in your family?
 My family consists of one man and two
 women. Therefore, I'll take thirty-five or
 thirty-six.
 Don't you like *sashimi*? (slices of raw fish)
 No, not very much.
 Here are some live fish. They are twenty-
 five sen a *kin*, but I'll reduce it to fifteen sen.
 Please come down to ten sen.
 Very well, I shall (do so).
- Mrs. Matsumoto, by what time do you
 have to be home?
 It's already time to go home.
 We don't have to go back by trolley car, do
 we?
 There are three rickshaws over there.
 Rickshaw man, please take us to number
 325 Motomachi St.
 Yes, surely.
- My house is the fifth from here.
 Rickshaw man, how much is the rickshaw
 fare?
 One yen, twenty-five sen.

Exercises

Pan-ya San, kono pan wa aikawarazu hichi sen desū ka? Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara, hassen ni narimashita.

Baker, is this bread still seven sen? Since the first of this month it has become eight sen.

Niku-ya San, kono niku wa aikawarazu ikkin, ichi yen desū ka? Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara, ichi yen go jissen ni narimashita.

Yao-ya San, kono tamago wa aikawarazu shi sen desū ka? Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara, go sen ni narimashita.

Sakana-ya San, sono sakana wa aikawarazu ikkin jū go sen desū ka? Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara, jū hichi sen ni narimashita.



Pan-ya San, kono pan wa aikawarazu hitotsu ni jissen desu ka? Iie, kono tsuki no hajime kara, ni ju go sen ni narimashita.

Pan (w)o ni hon kudasai.

Please give me two loaves of bread.

Pan (w)o ippon kudasai.

Fude (w)o sambon kudasai.

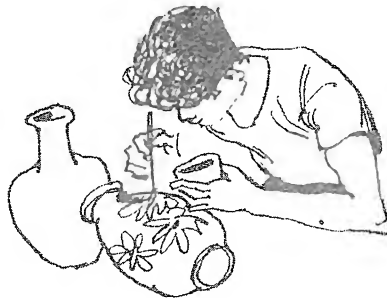
Empitsu (w)o shi hon kudasai.

Pen (w)o go hon kudasai.

Pan (w)o roppon kudasai.

Pan (w)o hachi hon kudasai.

Empitsu (w)o jippon kudasai.



Anata wa empitsu (w)o iku hon motte imasu ka? Empitsu (w)o jippon motte imasu.

How many pencils do you have? I have ten pencils.

Pen (w)o iku hon motte imasu ka? Pen (w)o go hon motte imasu.

Fude (w)o iku hon motte imasu ka? Sambon motte imasu.

Empitsu (w)o nambon motte imasu ka? Jippon motte imasu.

Kyo no remon pai wa oishii desu ga o-suki ja arimasen ka?

The lemon pie to-day is fine, so wouldn't you like some?

Kyo no shimbun wa koko ni arimasu ga mitaku arimasen ka?

Kino no sakana wa oishiku arimasen deshita ga ano hito wa tabemasen deshita.

Ashita no shimbun (w)o matte imasu ga nan ji ni kimasho ka?

Kyo no o-kashi wa atarashii desu ga o-suki ja arimasen ka?

Kyo watakushi wa sakana-ya e ikimasu.

I am going to the fish store today.

Kino watakushi wa niku-ya e ikimashita.

Ashita watakushi wa pan-ya e ikimasho.

Kyo watakushi wa sakana-ya e ikimasen.

Kino watakushi wa niku-ya e ikimasen deshita.

Ashita watakushi wa pan-ya e ikimasen deshō.

Kino watakushi wa Nihon go (w)o manabimashita.

I studied Japanese yesterday.

Kyo watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasu.

Ashita watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasho.

Kyo watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasen.

Kino watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasen deshita.

Ashita watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o manabimasen deshō.

Konnichi no gogo watakushi wa kaera-nakereba narimasen.

I have to return this afternoon.



Kinō no asa jū ji ni wa watakūshi wa kaera-nakereba narimasen deshita.
Ashita no ban hachi ji ni anata wa watakūshi no uchi e ko-nakereba narimasen.

Kyō no gogo wa kaera-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

I don't have to be back this afternoon.

Kinō no asa wa watakūshi wa ika-nakūte mo ii n' deshita.
Ashita no ban wa ano hito wa koko e ko-nakūte mo ii deshō.

Anata no tonari no sakana-ya wa donna mise desū ka? Asoko ni wa taihen ii sakana ga gozaimashō.

What kind of store is the fish store next door? I think they have very good fish there.

Anata no tonari no hito wa donna hito desū ka? Taihen ii hito de gozaimashō.
Ano hito no tonari no niku-ya wa donna mise desū ka? Asoko ni wa taihen ii niku ga gozaimashō.

Watakūshi no tonari no pan-ya wa donna mise desū ka? Asoko ni wa amari ii pan wa gozaimasen deshō.

Sono hon wa donna hon de gozaimasū ka? Kore wa taihen ii hon de gozaimasū.
Ano rikugun no skikan wa donna hito desū ka? Ano hito wa amari ii hito ja arimasen.

Atarashii sakana ga takusan aru sō desū.

They say they have a lot of fresh fish.

Pan wa hassen ni narimashita sō desū.
Koko de niku (w)o kau koto ga dekiru sō desū.
Ano mise ni tamago ga aru sō desū.
Ano hito wa Kyōto kara o-ide ni narimashita sō desū.

Kyō wa nan yōbi desū ka? Kyō wa Kinyōbi desū.

What day is to-day? To-day is Friday.

Kyō wa nan yōbi desū ka? Kyō wa Mokuyōbi desū.
Kyō wa nan yōbi desū ka? Kyō wa Getsuyōbi desū.
Ashita wa nan yōbi desū ka? Ashita wa Kayōbi desū.
Kinō wa nan yōbi deshita ka? Kinō wa Nichiyō⁶⁷ deshita.

Nichiyōbi wa issūkan no hajime no hi desū.

Sunday is the first (beginning) day of the week.

Getsuyōbi wa issūkan no ni bamme no hi desū.
Kore wa go hon me no empitsū desū.
Kore kara sam bamme no sakana ga hoshii.
Yo bamme no jinrikusha ni norimashō.
Koko kara jū nin me no hito ni hanashitai.
Kochira kara rokū dai me no hikōki (w)o miru koto ga dekimasū ka?



Tsugi no doyōbi ni dōzo mata o-ide kudasai. Doyōbi ni wa kuru koto ga dekimasen kara, tsugi no Getsuyōbi ni kimashō.

Please come again next Saturday. As I can't come on Saturday, I'll come next Monday.

Dōzo Nichiyōbi made ni watakūshi ni kaite kudasai. Nichiyōbi made ni wa kaku koto ga dekimasen deshō kara, tsugi no Kayōbi made ni kakimashō.

Watakūshi wa Beikokūjin de gozaimasū kara, issūkkan no hi no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.

As I am an American, please say the names of the days of the week for me slowly.

Watakūshi wa Beikokūjin desū kara, anata no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Beikokūjin desū kara, yukkuri hanashite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa wakarimasen deshita kara, dōzo sore (w)o mō ichido yukkuri itte kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Beikokūjin desū kara, ano pan-ya San no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Nippon-jin ja arimasen, kono yasai no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Beikokūjin desū kara, ano mise-ya no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.

Tonari no pan-ya San ga anata (w)o taihen homete imashita kara, koko e kimashita.

As the baker next door praised you, I came here.

Tonari no hito ga anata (w)o taihen homete imashita kara, koko e kimashita.

Anata no tomodachi ga anata no koto (w)o hanashite imashita kara, koko e kimashita.

Matsumoto San ga anata (w)o taihen homete imashita kara, koko e kimashita.

Watakūshi no Amerika-jin no tomodachi ga ano hito (w)o taihen homete imashita kara, asoko e mairimashita.

Dōzo atarashii sakana (w)o go hiki kudasai.

Please give me five fresh fish.

Dōzo atarashii shake (w)o ippiki kudasai.

Dōzo atarashii sakana (w)o sambiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o shi hiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o ni hiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o roppiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o hichi hiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o happiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o ku hiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o jippiki kudasai.

Dōzo sakana (w)o san jū roppiki kudasai.



Pan-ya wa watakūshi no itoko de, ku nen hodo mae ni koko e mairimashita.

The baker is my cousin and came here nine years ago.

Are wa watakūshi no musūko de, rokū nen hodo mae ni Nippon kara koko e mairimashita.

Are wa watakūshi no mustūme de, hachi nen hodo mae ni Kōbe kara koko e mairimashita. Ano sei no takai hito wa watakūshi no otōsan de, yo nen hodo mae ni Beikokū kara, Nippon e mairimashita.

Ano onna no hito wa ano rikugun no shikan no okusan de, ni jū nen hodo mae ni Shina kara koko e o-ide ni narimashita.

Itsū Nippon e o-ide ni narimashita ka? Ichi nen hodo mae ni Amerika kara koko e mairimashita.

When did you come to Japan? I came here from America one year ago.

Itsū ano hito wa Amerika e o-ide ni narimashita ka? Ni nen hodo mae ni Amerika e ikimashita.

Itsū koko e o-ide ni narimashita ka? Mokuyōbi no gozen jū ji ni koko e kimashita.

Itsū ano hikōki wa koko e tsukimashita ka? Kinō gogo ku ji han ni tsukimashita.

Anata wa doko de umare mashita ka? Watakūshi wa Amerika de umare mashita.

Where were you born? I was born in America.

Anata wa doko de umare mashita ka? Watakūshi wa Nyū Yōkū de umare mashita.

Anata wa doko de umare mashita ka? Watakūshi wa Nippon de umare mashita.

Ano hito wa doko de umare mashita ka? Ano hito wa Tōkiō de umare mashita.

Ano hitotachi wa doko de umare mashita ka? Takahashi San wa Kōbe de umarete, Matsumoto San wa Nagasaki de umare mashita.

Anata wa doko de ōkikū narimashita ka? Watakūshi wa Nippon de ōkikū narimashita.

Where did you grow up? I was raised in Japan.

Anata wa doko de ōkikū narimashita ka? Watakūshi wa Amerika de ōkikū narimashita.

Anata wa doko de ōkikū narimashita ka? Watakūshi wa Shina de ōkikū narimashita.

Ano rikugun no shikan wa kono atari de ōkikū narimashita ka? Iie, ano shikan wa Kyōto de ōkikū narimashita.

Anata wa dono atari de ōkikū narimashita ka? Watakūshi wa Tōkiō de ōkikū narimashita.

Itoko wa Shōwa gannen¹¹³ no Nigatsū jū go nichi ni Tōkiō e kimashita.

My cousin came to Tokio February 15th, the first year of Showa.

Anata wa Shōwa ni jū ichi nen no Shōgatsū¹¹⁴ muika¹¹³ ni Nippon e kimashita ka?

Watakūshi wa Shōwa ni nen no Shōgatsū ō-misoka¹¹³ ni koko e tsukimashita.

Ano rikugun no shikan wa Shina kara Taishō¹¹⁵ jū nen no Shigatsū yokka ni koko e kimashita.

Otōsan wa Ōsaka kara Meiji san jū nen Kugatsū¹¹⁴ tsuitachi¹¹³ ni koko e kimashita sō desū.

Kyō wa nan nichi desū ka? Shōgatsū yokka desū.

What is the date to-day? It's January 4th.

Kyō wa nan nichi desū ka? Jūgatsū tōka desū.

Kyō wa nan nichi desū ka? Hachigatsū hatsūka¹¹³ desū.

Ashita wa nan nichi desū ka? Hichigatsū itsūka desū.

Kinō wa nan nichi deshita ka? Kinō wa Gogatsu tsuitachi deshita.

Kinō wa nan nichi deshita ka? Kinō wa Jūnigatsu ni jū ku nichi deshita.

Anata wa itsū koko e o-ide ni narimashita ka? Futsūka hodo mae ni koko e kimashita.

When did you come here? I came here about two days ago.

Anata wa itsū asoko e o-ide ni narimashita ka? Nanuka hodo mae ni asoko e mairimashita.

Itsū ano hikōki wa koko e tsukimashō ka? Ima kara tōka gurai de tsuku sō desū.

Sore wa Seireki issen ku hyakū san jū rokū nen desū ne.

That's 1936 A. D., isn't it?

Kore wa Seireki issen ku hyakū shi jū rokū nen desū ne.

Anata wa Nippon e issen ku hyakū ni jū yo nen ni o-ide ni narimashita ka?

Soko ni atarashii shake ga gozaimasū. Sore de wa, kono shake (w)o roppiki moraimashō.

There are some fresh salmon. Very well, I'll take six of these salmon.

Koko ni atarashii ebi ga gozaimasū. Sore de wa, sono ebi (w)o ni jippiki moraimashō.

Asoko ni atarashii sakana ga gozaimasū. Sore de wa, ano sakana (w)o sambiki moraimashō.

Soko ni atarashii tamago ga gozaimasū. Sore de wa, kono tamago (w)o ichi dāsū moraimashō.

Asoko ni atarashii sakana ga gozaimasū. Sore de wa, ano sakana (w)o ni hiki moraimashō.

Kesa ichi man biki no ebi ga tsukimashita.

This morning ten thousand shrimp arrived.

Kesa ebi ga ichi man biki tsukimashita.

Kono gogo samman biki no ebi ga tsukimashita.

Kesa go man biki no ebi ga tsukimashita.

Komban ebi ga ku man biki tsukimashita.

Mō rokū sen biki urimashita.

I already sold six thousand.

Mō hachi sen biki urimashita.

Mō issen biki urimashita.

Tamago (w)o ni dāsū kaimashita.

Sono ebi wa ikūra desū ka? Hyappiki ga hachi jū go sen de gozaimasū.

How much are those shrimp? Eighty five sen per hundred.

Kono ebi wa ikūra desū ka? Sambyappiki ga ku jissen de gozaimasū.

Sono shake wa ikūra desū ka? Ippiki ga ichi yen go jissen de gozaimasū.

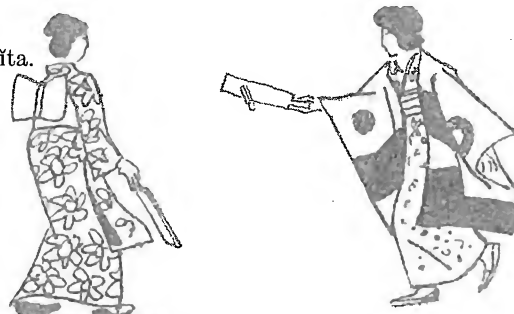
Sono sakana wa ikūra desū ka? Ni hiki ga ichi yen hichi jū go sen de gozaimasū.

Ano ebi wa ikūra desū ka? Go hyappiki ga san yen de gozaimasū.

Anata no o-kazokū wa nan nin de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi no kazokū wa otoko ga hitori de, onna ga fūtari desū.

How many people are there in your family? In my family there are two women and one man.

Anata no o-kazokū wa iku nin de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi no kazokū wa otoko ga go nin de, onna ga hichi nin desū.



Anata no o-kazokū wa iku nin de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi no kazokū ni wa jū nin no otoko ga gozaimasū.

Anata no o-kazokū wa iku nin de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi no kazokū wa onna san nin desū.

Ano shikan no kazokū wa nan nin de gozaimashō ka? Ano hito no kazokū wa otoko ga yo nin de, onna ga san nin de sō desū.

San jū go-roppiki moraimashō.

I'll take thirty-five or thirty-six.

Kashi (w)o hito hako moraimashō.

Kashi (w)o hito hako ka futa hako moraimashō.

Kashi (w)o futa hako moraimashō.

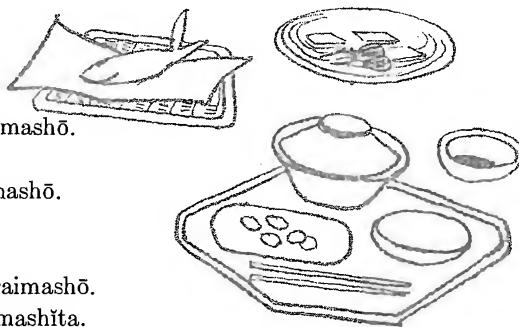
Kashi (w)o futa hako ka mi hako moraimashō.

Hito (w)o shi-go nin mimashita.

Mi hako no o-kashi (w)o moraimashō.

Mi hako ka yo hako no o-kashi (w)o moraimashō.

Shi-go nin no rikugun no shikan (w)o mimashita.



Anata wa sashimi ga o-sūki de gozaimasū ka? Iie, amari sūkimasen.

Do you like raw fish slices? No, I don't like (them) very much.

Sakana ga o-sūki de gozaimasū ka? Hai, taihen sūki desū.

O-kashi ga o-sūki de gozaimasū ka? Iie, amari sūkimasen.

Anata wa ebi ga o-sūki ja arimasen ka? Hai, sūki desū.

Koko ni ikita sakana ga gozaimasū.

Here are some live fish.

Ikita sakana wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka? Iie, ikita sakana wa kaitakū arimasen.

Anata wa ikita ebi ga hoshiū gozaimashita ka? Iie, ikita ebi wa hoshikū arimasen deshita.

Anata wa ikita shake ga hoshiū gozaimasū ka? Iie, ikita shake wa hoshikū gozaimasen.

Makete jū go sen ni shite okimasū.

I'll reduce it to fifteen sen.

Jissen ni shite okimasū.

Ni yen ni shite okimasū.

Go jū yen ni shite okimasū.

Go jissen ni shite okimasū.

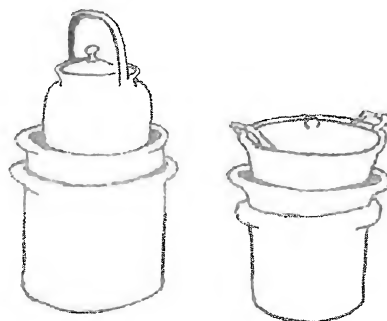
Dōzo ano hako (w)o koko ni oite kudasai.

Please put that box here.

Dōzo sono tamago (w)o koko ni oite kudasai.

Dōzo ano shimbun (w)o asoko ni oite kudasai.

Dōzo sono empitsū (w)o soko ni oite kudasai.



Doko ni watakūshi no zasshi (w)o okimashīta ka?
Watakūshi wa ano niku (w)o asoko ni okimashīta.

Jissen ni makete kudasai. De wa, sō itashimashō.

Please come down to ten sen. All right, I'll do so.

Go jissen ni makete kudasai. Sō wa dekimasen.

Yo yen ni makete kudasai. De wa, sō itashimashō.

Hichi sen ni makete kudasai. De wa, sō itashimashō.

Ano sashimi (w)o jissen ni makete kudasai. Sō wa dekimasen.

Ano sakana-ya San wa kono sakana (w)o ku sen ni makete kudasaimashīta.

Itsū kaera-nakereba narimasen ka? Ima kaera-nakereba narimasen.

When must you go back? I must go back now.

Itsū kaimono ni ika-nakereba narimasen ka? Ima ika-nakereba narimasen.

Itsū sakana (w)o kawa-nakereba narimasen ka? Ima kawa-nakereba narimasen.

Itsū ano tegami (w)o kaka-nakereba narimasen ka? Ima kaka-nakereba narimasen.

Itsū hiruhan (w)o o-agari ni nara-nakereba narimasen ka? Ima tabe-nakereba narimasen.

Kuruma ni notte, hayakū uchi e kaerimashō.

Let's ride and get back home quickly.

Jinrikisha ni notte, hayakū uchi e kaerimashō.

Jidōsha ni notte, hayakū sakana-ya e ikimashō.

Hikōki ni notte, hayakū Tōkiō e ikimashō.

Sonna ni isoga-nakūte mo ii deshō.

You don't have to hurry so much.

Go ji han mae ni wa yūhan (w)o tabe-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Ima wa manaba-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Hanasa-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Yoma-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Mise e ika-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Jū ji mae ni wa ko-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Tegami wa kaka-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Jinrikisha ni nora-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Kuruma ni notte kudasai.

Please take a rickshaw.

Jidōsha ni notte kudasai.

Hikōki ni notte kudasai.

Jinrikisha ni notte kudasai.

Asoko ni jinrikisha ga san dai arimasū.

There are three rickshaws over there.

Asoko ni jinrikisha ga ni dai arimasū.



Asoko ni yo dai no kuruma ga arimasū.
Asoko ni kuruma ga iku dai arimasū ka?
Asoko ni iku dai no hikōki ga arimasū ka?
Go dai arimasū.
Hikōki ga iku dai arimashita ka?
Ano machi ni wa ichi man dai arimashita.

Motomachi no sambyakū ni jū go ban e tsurete itte kudasai.

Please take me to 325 Motomachi St.

Ginza no shi hyakū go ban e tsurete itte kudasai.
Motomachi no ni hyakū go jū rokū ban e tsurete itte kudasai.
Hondōri no hyakū shi jū san ban e watakūshi (w)o tsurete itte kudasai.
Kono tegami (w)o Motomachi no happyakū hichi jū ni ban e motte itte kudasai.

Watakūshi no uchi wa koko kara go ken me desū.

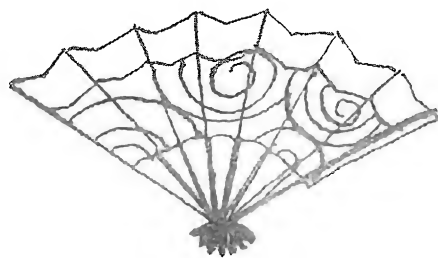
My house is the fifth (one) from here.

Watakūshi no tomadachi no o-taku wa asoko kara jikken me de gozaimasū.
Ni hon me no empitsū ga ano hito no desū.
Shi hiki me no sakana (w)o kudasai.
Rokū nin me no hito ni hanashitai desū.
Muttsū me no isu ni kakete kudasai.

Kuruma-chin wa ikūra desū ka? Ichi yen ni jū go sen desū.

How much is the rickshaw fare? It's one yen, twenty-five sen.

Kuruma-chin wa ikūra desū ka? Ni yen desū.
Koko kara Motomachi no ni hyakū ban made no kuruma-chin wa ikūra desū ka? Ichi yen hichi jū go sen desū.
Koko kara anata no o-taku made no kuruma-chin wa ikūra deshita ka? Go jissen deshita.



9

Dai K(y)u K(w)a (Lesson IX)

- Watakūshi wa depāto e kaimono ni iku
tsūmori⁷² desū ga anata mo issō ni ikimasen
ka?
- Hai, go-issō ni mairimashō. Dono⁷³ de-
5 pāto e yukimashō ka?
- Takashima-ya e ika-nakereba narimasen
shatsū ga shi-go⁵² mai⁶⁴ irimasū⁸⁵ kara.
Densha de ikimashō ka? Basū de ikimashō
ka?
- 10 Sore wa densha no hō ga ii deshō.⁵⁹
- Koko kara Takashima-ya made wa dono
gūrai arimasū ka?
- Ichi ri kūrai arimashō.⁵⁴ Ano junsu ni kiite
mimashō. Shītsūrei desū ga, watakūshidomo
15 wa Takashima-ya e yukitai n' desū ga
Kyōbashi-yuki no densha ni doko de not-
tara⁷⁴ yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?
- Kono tsugi no kado kara, minami e magatte,
ni chōme no kado de o-nori nasai.³² Soshite
20 doko de Kyōbashi-yuki e norikaetara ii ka⁷⁵
shashō ni o-kiki nasai.
- Watakūshidomo wa ima minami no hō e
muite imasū ka?
- Iie, higashi no hō e muite imasū. Desū
25 kara, migi no hō wa minami de, hidari no
hō wa kita de, ushiro no hō wa nishi desū.
Arigatō gozaimashita.
- I intend to go to a department store to go
shopping, so don't you want to go with me?
- Yes, let's go together. To which department
store will you go?
- I have to go to Takashima's because I need
four or five shirts.
- Shall we go by street-car, or shall we go by
bus?
- As for that (matter), a street-car is probably
better.
- About how far is it from here to Takashima's
store?
- About one *ri* (2.44 miles). I think I'll ask
that policeman. Pardon me, but as we want
to go to Takashima's, where can we get the
Kyobashi street-car?
- From this next corner, turn south and take
it on the second corner (from there). And
ask the conductor where you transfer to the
Kyobashi car.
- Are we facing south now?
- No, we are facing east. Therefore, south is to
the right, the left side is north, and back (of
you) is west.
- Thank you.

In the Street Car

- Shashō San, Kyōbashi-yuki no densha ni
wa doko de norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasū
30 ka?
- Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de orite, Kyōbashi-
yuki ni o-nori nasai. Soshite go-rokū chō
yuku to¹⁵ Takashima-ya ga massugu saki ni
arimasū.
- Conductor, where should I transfer to the
Kyobashi trolley?
- Get out at the next stop and take the
Kyobashi car. And if you go five or six
squares, Takashima's is straight ahead.

At the Department Store

- 35 Bantō San, shatsū wa doko ni arimasū ka?
- Shi kai ni gozaimasū kara, hidari no erebētā
(w)o o-tori kudasai.³²
- Clerk, where are the shirts?
- They are on the fourth floor, so please take
the elevator to the left.

- Nani (w)o goran ni kakemashō⁴² ka?
 Dōzo waishatsū to shima no shatsū (w)o
 40 misete kudasai.
 Dōzo kochira e o-ide kudasai. Kono wai-
 shatsū wa taihen kiji ga yō gozaimashite,
 o-nedan mo sahodo takakū arimasen; ichi
 mai san yen go jissen de gozaimasū. Ikaga
 45 de gozaimashō ka?
 Chotto sore¹¹ (w)o misete kudasai. Kono
 shatsū wa kanari ii yō⁶⁵ desū ne; karā no
 ōkisa⁴³ ga jū go de, sode no nagasa ga nishaku
 hassun no (w)o san mai morau⁵⁴ koto ga
 50 dekinasū ka?
 Hai, kashikomarimashita. Anata no uchi e
 todokemashō ka matawa motte o-kaeri ni
 narimasū ka?
 Okutte morattara,⁷⁶ itsū watakūshi no uchi
 55 e tsukimashō ka? Taku wa Kanda no
 itchōme desū ga . . .
 Tabun ni-san nichī no uchi ni wa tsukimashō.
 Sore de wa dōzo okutte kudasai.
 Dōzo anata no o-namae to banchi (w)o
 60 oshiete kudasai.
 Watakūshi no namae wa Sūmisū de, Kanda
 no itchōme no jū yo ban ni sunde imasū.
- What would you care to see?
 Please show me some white and some
 striped shirts.
 Please come this way. These white shirts are
 very good quality, and the price is not so
 high either; three yen, fifty sen apiece. What
 do you think (about them)?
 Please let me see them a moment. These
 shirts really seem quite good; may I take
 three of fifteen size collar and two *shaku*
 (one *shaku* = .994 foot) eight *sun* (one *sun*
 = 1.2 inch) sleeve length?
 Yes, certainly. Shall we deliver them to
 your home, or do you want to take them
 with you?
 If I have them sent, when will they arrive
 at my house? My home is in Kanda, First
 Street . . .
 They will probably arrive inside of two or
 three days.
 In that case, please send (them).
 Please give me your name and address.
 My name is Smith and I live in Kanda
 (section), number fourteen, First Street.

Exercises

Watakūshi wa depāto e kaimono ni iku tsumori desū.

I intend to go to a department store to go shopping.

Anata wa kyō kembutsu ni o-ide ni naru tsumori de gozaimasū ka?

Watakūshi wa uchi e kaette, tegami (w)o kaku tsumori desū.

Go ji han ni yūhan (w)o taberu tsumori desū.

Anata wa imōto San (w)o tsurete iku tsumori de gozaimasū ka?

Ano hito wa shatsu (w)o ni mai kau tsumori deshō.

Anata mo issho ni ikimasen ka?

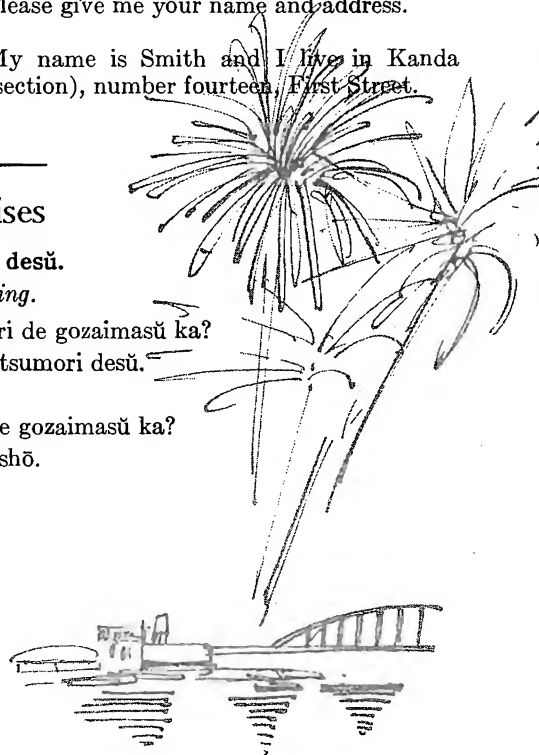
Aren't you going along too?

Ano hito mo issho ni ikitai sō desū.

Ano onna no hito mo issho ni kitai sō deshita.

Watakūshi mo issho ni ikitai desū.

Ano hitotachi mo issho ni kitai sō desū.



Issho ni mairimashō.*I'll go with you.*

Watakūshi no tomodachi wa anata to issho ni ikimashō.

Anata wa watakūshi to issho ni o-ide ni narimasū ka?

Watakūshi wa issho ni ikimashō.

Matsumoto San wa anata to issho ni ikimashō.

Watakūshidomo wa anata to issho ni mairimashō.

Dono depāto e ikimashō ka?*To which department store shall we go?*

Dono densha ni norimashō ka?

Dono mise e ikimashō ka?

Dono pan-ya e ikimashō ka?

Dono shatsu (w)o kaimashō ka?

Dono hon ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Dono shīkan ni hanashitō gozaimasū ka?

Dochira no depāto e ikimashō ka?*To which (of two) department stores shall we go?*

Dochira no densha ni norimashō ka?

Dochira no mise e ikimashō ka?

Dochira no pan-ya e ikimashō ka?

Dochira no shatsu (w)o kaimashō ka?

Dochira no hon ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Dochira no shīkan ni hanashitō gozaimasū ka?

Takashima-ya e ika-nakereba narimasen.*I must go to Takashima's.*

Anata wa Kyōbashi-yūki no densha ni nora-nakereba narimasen.

Anata wa ano hon (w)o yoma-nakereba narimasen.

Watakūshi wa ima kaera-nakereba narimasen.

Junsa ni kika-nakereba narimasen.

Shatsu ga shi-go mai irimasū.*I need (want) four or five shirts.*

Rokū mai no shatsu ga irimasū.

Kami ga san-yo mai irimasū.

Shimbun ga ni mai irimasū.

Jidōsha ga ichi-ni dai irimasū.

Hīto ga jū nin irimasū.



Densha de ikimashō ka? Basū de ikimashō ka?

Shall we go by bus or by street car?

Jinrikīsha de ikimashō ka? Densha de ikimashō ka?

Jinrikīsha de ikimashō ka? Basū de ikimashō ka?

Hikōki de ikimashō ka? Jidōsha de ikimashō ka?

Anata wa jinrikīsha de o-ide ni narimashita ka? Jidōsha de o-ide ni narimashita ka?

Densha no hō ga ii deshō.

A trolley will be better.

Densha de iku hō ga ii desū.

Ima kaeru hō ga ii deshō.

Tegami (w)o kaku hō ga ii desū.

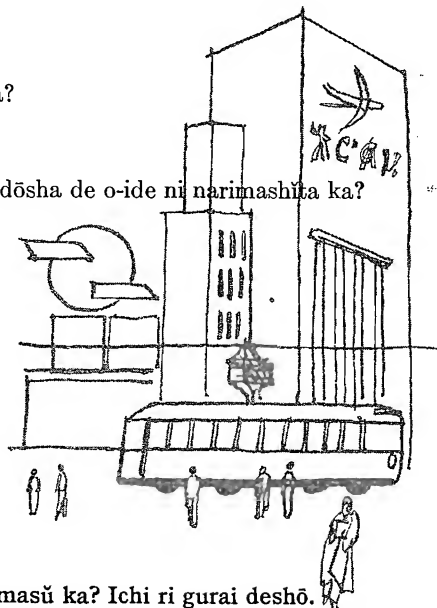
Nippon go de hanasu hō ga ii desū.

O-cha (w)o nomu hō ga ii desū.

Dekakeru hō ga ii desū.

Kono shatsu no hō ga ii desū.

Migi no hō e iku no ga ii deshō.



Koko kara Takashima-ya made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? Ichi ri gurai deshō.

How far is it from here to Takashima's? It's about one ri. (2.44 miles, i.e., 3.927 kilometers)

Koko kara pan-ya made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? Jū go rokū chō deshō.

Koko kara niku-ya made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? Hatchō gurai deshō.

Koko kara densha no teiryūjo made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? San chō hodo deshō.

Koko kara Kanda made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? San jitchō gurai deshō.

Koko kara Yokohama made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? Jū ri gurai deshō.

Nagasaki kara Kōbe made wa dono gurai arimasū ka? Hyakū go jū ri gurai deshō.

Ano jūnsa ni kiite mimashō.

I think I'll ask that policemen.

Ano rikugun no shikan ni kiite mimashō.

Pan-ya San ni kiite mimashō.

Ano hito wa watakushi ni kikimashita.

Dōzo ano bantō ni kiite mite kudasai.

Tegami (w)o kaite mimashō.

Densha ni notte mimashō.

Shitsūrei desū ga, Kyōbashi-yuki no densha ni wa doko de nottara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Pardon me, but where do I take the Kyobashi trolley car?

Shitsūrei desū ga, Kōbe-yuki no hikōki ni wa doko de nottara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Shitsūrei desū ga, Kanda-yuki no densha ni wa koko de nottara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Shitsūrei desū ga, Motomachi-yuki no basū ni wa doko de nottara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Hachi ji han made ni kaettara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

If I come back by eight thirty, is it all right?

Ashita no gogo made ni shitara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Motomachi to Sanchōme no kado de oritara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Hachi ji ni kaettara, tomodachi wa watakushi no kaeru no (w)o matte imashita.

When I returned at eight o'clock, my friend was waiting for me.

Takashima-ya e ittara, shatsu wa arimasen deshita.

Motomachi to Sanchōme no kado de oritara, tomodachi wa imasen deshita.

Kono tsugi no kado kara, migi e magatte, san chōme no kado de o-nori nasai.

At this next corner, turn to the right and take (it) on the corner of Third Street.

Kono ni chōme no kado kara, hidari e magatte, san chōme ni arimasū.

Kono tsugi no kado kara, kita e magatte, go chōme ni Takashima-ya ga arimasū.

Motomachi to, ni chōme no kado kara, higashi e magatte ku chō hodo o-ide nasai.

Massugu saki e o-ide nasai.

Go straight on.

Nichō hodo massugu saki e itte, sore kara, migi e magari nasai.

San chō hodo massugu saki e itte, sore kara, hidari e magari nasai.

Kono tsugi no kado kara, kita e magatte, shi chō hodo massugu saki e o-ide nasai.

Minami e magari nasai.

Turn to the South.

Kita e magatte kudasai.

Higashi e magari nasai.

Higashi e o-magari kudasai.

Nishi e o-magari nasai.

Ni chōme no kado de o-nori nasai.

Take (it) at the corner of Second Street.

Dōzo rokū ji ni Bentendōri* no san chōme no kado e o-ide kudasai.

Ju hatchōme no kado de ori nasai.

Ni jū go chōme no kado de jinrikisha ni nottara yoroshiū gozaimashō ka?

Kono tegami (w)o Motomachi no shi chōme no hyakū ban e motte itte kudasai.

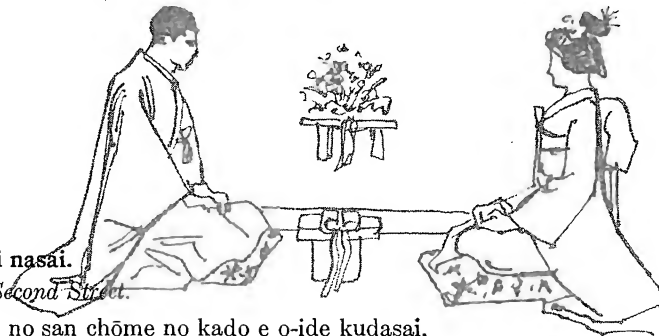
Doko de Kyōbashi-yuki e norikaetara ii ka shashō ni o-kiki nasai.

Ask the conductor where you transfer to the Kyobashi car.

Doko de Kanda-yuki e norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Koko kara Tōkiō made wa dono gurai arimasū ka ano hito ni kiite mi nasai.

Takashima-ya made wa dono gurai kakarimashō ka ano kuruma-ya ni kiite mi nasai.



Ano tegami (w)o kaki nasaimashita ka?

Did you write that letter?

Ano hon (w)o o-yomi nasaimashita ka?

Mai nichi hiruhan ni wa nani (w)o o-agari nasaimasu ka?

Takashima-ya no depato de nani ka o-kai nasaimashita ka?

Watakushidomo wa ima minami no hō e muite imasu ka?

Are we now facing South?

Hai, wakushidomo wa minami no hō e muite imasu.

Watakushi wa ima dochira no hō ni muite imasu ka?

Anata wa ima kita ni muite irasshaimasu.

Migi no hō wa minami de, hidari no hō wa kita de, ushiro no hō wa nishi desu.

South is to the right, North is to the left, and West is behind (us).

Hidari no hō wa kita de, migi no hō wa minami de, ushiro no hō wa nishi desu.

Migi no hō wa higashi de, hidari no hō wa nishi de, ushiro no hō wa minami desu.

Migi no hō wa nishi de, hidari no hō wa higashi de, ushiro no hō wa kita desu.

Tōkiō wa dochira no hō ni arimasu ka?

What direction is Tokio?

Tōkiō wa higashi no hō ni arimasu.

Kōbe wa nishi no hō ni arimasu.

Nagasaki wa nishi no hō ni arimasu.

Hokkaidō wa kita no hō ni arimasu.

Kyōbashi-yuki no densha ni wa doko de norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasu ka?

Where do I transfer to the Kyobashi car?

Kanda-yuki no basu ni wa doko de norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasu ka?

Motomachi-yuki no densha ni wa doko de norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasu ka?

Shinagawa-yuki no densha ni wa doko de norikaetara yoroshiū gozaimasu ka?

Kyōbashi e yuku ni wa densha (w)o norikae-nakereba narimasen ka?

Do I have to change trolleys to go to Kyobashi?

Hai, Kyōbashi e yuku ni wa norikae-nakereba narimasen.

Iie, Kyōbashi e yuku ni wa norikae-nakūte mo yoroshiū gozaimasu.

Shinagawa e yuku ni wa densha (w)o norikae-nakereba narimasen.

Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de orite, Kyōbashi-yuki ni o-nori nasai.

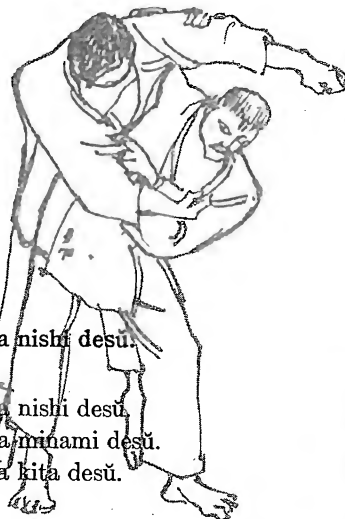
Get out at the next stop and take the Kyobashi car.

Koko kara notte, go chōme no teiryūjo de orite, Kanda-yuki ni o-nori nasai.

Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de orite, Kyōbashi-yuki ni nottara ii deshō ka?

Motomachi e iku ni wa doko no teiryūjo de oritara ii deshō ka?

Jitchōme no teiryūjo de oritara ii deshō.



Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de ori nasai.

Get out at the next stop.

Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de orite kudasai.

Kono tsugi no teiryūjo de o-kudari* kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Motomachi e ikitai n' desū ga Motomachi e kitara, dōzo shirasete* kudasai.

I want to go to Motomachi Street so when we come to Motomachi, please let me know.

Tomodachi wa Bentendōri e ikitai sō desu kara, Bentendōri e kitara dōzo shirasete agete kudasai.

Bantō San, shatsu wa doko ni arimasu ka? Shikai ni gozaimasu kara, hidari no erebētā (w)o o-tori kudasai.

Clerk, where are the shirts? Since they're on the fourth floor, take the elevator to the left.

Bantō San, waishatsu wa doko ni arimasu ka? San gai ni gozaimasu kara, migi no erebētā (w)o o-tori nasai.

Bantō San, shima no shatsu wa doko ni arimasu ka? Hakkai ni gozaimasu kara, asoko no erebētā (w)o totte kudasai.

Nani (w)o goran ni kakemashō ka? Dōzo waishatsu to shima no shatsu (w)o misete kudasai.

What do you wish to see? Please show (me) some white shirts and some striped shirts.

Nani (w)o goran ni kakemashō ka? Dōzo karā to shatsu (w)o misete kudasai.

Nani (w)o goran ni kakemashō ka? Dōzo o-kashi (w)o misete kudasai.

Nani (w)o goran ni kakemashō ka? Dōzo tsukue (w)o misete kudasai.

Dōzo kochira e o-ide kudasai.

Please come here.

Dōzo sochira e o-ide kudasai.

Dōzo achira e o-ide kudasai.

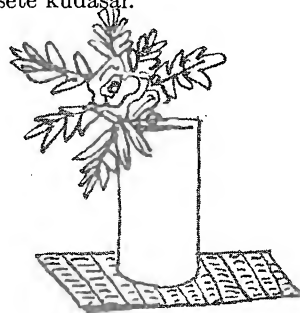
Anata wa dochira no hō e o-ide ni narimashita ka?

Watakūshi wa Ginza e itte³⁷ kimashita.

Watakūshi wa achira e itte kimashita.

Ano rikugun no shikan wa dochira e ikimashita ka?

Achira e ikimashita.



Kono waishatsu wa taihen kiji ga yō gozaimashite, nedan mo sahodo takakū arimasen.

Those white shirts seem like very good material, and the price is not so high either.

Sono shima no shatsu wa taihen kiji ga ii yō desū ga nedan wa sūkoshi takai yō desū.

Kono waishatsu wa taihen kiji ga ii desū ga nedan wa amari takakū arimasen.

Sono shatsu wa amari kiji ga yō gozaimasen kara, taihen yasui desū.

Ichi mai san yen go jissen de gozaimasu. Ikaga de gozaimashō ka?

They are three yen, fifty sen a piece. What do you think?

Karā wa ni hon ichi yen de gozaimasu. Ikaga de gozaimashō ka?

Ano kami wa hyakū mai jissen de gozaimasū. Ikaga de gozaimashō ka?
 Ano sakana wa ippiki ichi yen de gozaimasū. Ikaga de gozaimashō ka?
 Kono jidōsha wa ichi dai sen yen de gozaimasū. Ikaga de gozaimashō ka?

Chotto sore (w)o misete kudasai.

Let me see it a bit (a moment).

Chotto kochira e o-ide kudasai.

Chotto o-machi kudasai.

Chotto sore (w)o koko e motte kite kudasai.

Imōto wa chotto kaimono ni ikimashita.

Kono shatsu wa kanari ii yō desū.

These shirts seem quite good.

Ano depāto wa kanari ōkii yō desū.

Kono shatsu wa watakūshi ni wa sūkoshi chiisai yō desū.

Kono sashimi wa atarashii yō desū.

Ano hito wa taihen genki na yō desū.

Ano hitotachi wa Nippon go de hanashite iru yō desū.

Karā no ōkisa ga jū go desū.

The size of the collar is fifteen.

Sono shatsu no ōkisa wa ikutsū desū ka?

Shatsu no ōkisa wa jū rokū han desū.

Anata no sei no takasa wa dono gurai arimasū ka?

Kono waishatsu no ōkisa wa jū go desū. Sono shima no shatsu no ōkisa wa jū shi han desū.

Sode no nagasa wa ni shaku hassun desū.

The length of the sleeves is two shaku, eight sun. (1 sun = 1.2 inch) (1 shaku = .994 foot)

Sono kami no nagasa wa jissun desū.

Kono shatsu no sode no nagasa wa iku sun desū ka?

Ano tsukue no nagasa wa nan zun desū ka?

Kono empitsu no nagasa wa jissun desū.

Anata no sei no takasa wa ikura arimasū ka?

What is your height?

Watakūshi no sei no takasa wa shi shaku ku sun desū.

Ano rikugun no shikan no sei no takasa wa rokū shaku desū.

Tomodachi no sei no takasa wa go shaku san zun desū.

Sam mai morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

May I take three?

Yo mai morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Go mai utte moraitai n' desū.



Fude (w)o sambon morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Sakana (w)o sam biki utte morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Gyūniku (w)o san gin morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Anata no uchi e todokemashō ka?

Shall we deliver them to your home?

Tomodachi no uchi e todokemashō ka?

Anata no uchi e okurimashō ka?

Itsu anata no mise e todokemashō ka?

Tsugi no Mokuyōbi made ni watakūshi no uchi e todokete kudasai.

Ashita no asa made ni watakūshi no uchi e todokeru koto ga dekimasū ka?

Motte o-kaeri ni narimasū ka?

Do you want to take (it) with you?

Iie, motte kaeritakū arimasen kara, dōzo todokete kudasai.

Ano hon wa amari ōkii deshita kara, motte kaerimasen deshita.

Ano shimbun (w)o motte kaette mo yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Amari takusan no tamago (w)o kaimashita kara, motte kaeritakū arimasen.

Okutte morattara, itsu watakūshi no uchi e tsukimashō ka?

If I have (them) sent, when will they arrive?

Ku ji ni deketara, itsu asoko e tsukimashō ka?

Todokete morattara, itsu Matsumoto San no mise e tsukimashō ka?

Tomodachi wa suiyōbi ni Tōkiō e tsukimashita.

Itsu Kōbe e o-tsuki ni narimashita ka?

Taku wa Kanda no itchōme desū ga . . .

My house is in the Kanda district, First Street and . . .

Anata no o-taku wa dochira de gozaimasū ka?

Taku wa Kyōbashi no san chōme desū ga . . .

Taku wa Kanda no ni chōme no jū hichi ban desū ga . . .

Matsumoto San no o-taku wa doko desū ka?

Ano hito no taku wa Kyōbashi no Motomachi no hyaku hachi jū ku ban desū.

Tabun ni-san nichi no uchi ni wa tsukimashō.

Perhaps they will arrive inside of two or three days.

Tabun shi-go nichi no uchi ni wa dekakemashō.

Tabun ichi nichi fūtsūka no uchi ni wa todokeru koto ga dekimashō.

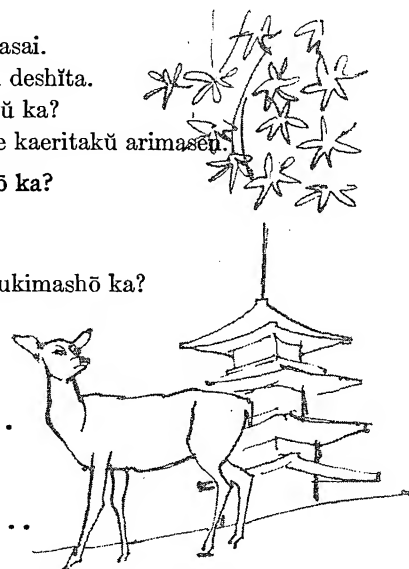
Tabun go-rokū nen no uchi ni wa Beikokū e kaeru koto ga dekimashō.

Tabun san-shi ka¹⁴ getsū no uchi ni wa anata ni okurimashō.

Dōzo anata no namae to banchi (w)o oshiete kudasai.

Please give (show) me your name and address.

Dōzo anata no shatsu no ōkisa (w)o oshiete kudasai.



Dōzo shatsu no sode no nagasa (w)o oshiete kudasai.

Dōzo anata no otōsan no namae to banchi (w)o oshiete kudasai.

Dōzo ano rikugun no shikan no namae to banchi (w)o oshiete kudasai.

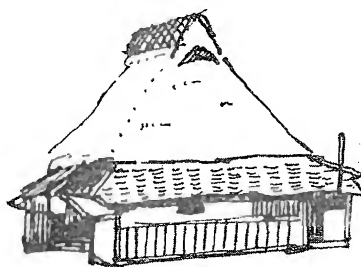
Watakūshi no namae wa Sumisū de, Kanda no itchōme no jū yo ban ni sunde imasū.

My name is Smith and I live in Kanda, number 14 First Street.

Watakūshi no okāsan no namae wa Takahashi de, Kyōbashi no ni jitchōme no jū go ban ni sunde imasū.

Ano rikugun no shikan no namae wa Matsumoto de, Kanda no jū go chōme no jū ban ni sunde imashita.

Watakūshi no musūko no namae wa Jones de, Ginza no san chōme no jū rokū ban ni sunde imasū.



10

Dai Jikk(w)a (Lesson X)

Kuroi kutsu (w)o issokū misete kudasai.

Hai, kashikomarimashita. Ōkisa wa ikutsū⁷³ de gozaimasū ka?

Tashika muttsū desū.

5 Sayō de gozaimasū ka? De wa, kore (w)o haite⁷⁷ mite kudasai.

Kore wa sūkoshi hiro-sugiru⁷⁸ kara, kono onaji ōkisa de, mō⁴⁷ sūkoshi semai no (w)o misete kudasai.

10 O-ki-no-dokū sama desū ga, ainikū kirashite orimasū ga koko ni cha-iro to tobi-iro no ii no ga gozaimasū.

De wa, shikata ga arimasen kara, sono cha-iro no (w)o moraimashō.⁷⁶ Dōzo, tsutsunde kudasai, motte kaerimasū kara.

15 Hai, arigatō gozaimasū. Soshite, kore wa anata no o-tsuri de gozaimasū.

Kono tsugi no heya de bōshi (w)o utte imasū ne.

20 Hai kakari no mono (w)o o-yobi itashimasū kara, dōzo o-hairi kudasai.

O-kyakū Sama, donna bōshi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka?

25 A, kuro⁴³ no nakaore-bōshi to shiro to kuro no goban no toriuchi-bōshi (w)o misete kudasai. Mō aki desū kara, mugiwara-bōshi wa sūteru tsūmori desū. Uriko San, tsuide ni, Nippon go de shiki no namae (w)o itte mite kudasai.

30 Hai, haru, natsu, aki, fuyu to iimasū.¹⁵

Kono nakaore-bōshi wā hakurai de gozaimasu, kara o-nedan wa ni jū yen de gozaimasu.

Soshite kono toriuchi-bōshi wa san yen de gozaimasū.

35 Sō desū ka?

Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasū ka?

Iie, nakaore-bōshi dake⁷⁹ moraimashō.

Maido arigatō gozaimasū.

40 Watakūshi wa kaeru mae⁸⁰ ni tokei (w)o naoshite moratte,⁷⁶ yōfuku (w)o itchaku chūmon shite⁸⁰ okitai⁸¹ desū ga kamaimasen ka?

Hai,⁸² yoroshiū gozaimasū tomo.

Please show me a pair of black shoes.

Yes, with pleasure. What is your size?

Six, if I remember correctly.

Is that right? Well, then, please try these on.

As these are a little too wide, please let me see some a little narrower in this same size.

I am very sorry, but they are out of stock, but here are some good tan and brown ones.

Well then, since it can't be helped, I'll take those tan ones. Please wrap (them) up because I'll take (them) with me.

Yes, thanks very much. And here is your change.

They sell hats in this next room, don't they?

Yes, I'll call the person in charge, so please go in.

Sir, (customer) what kind of hat do you wish?

Oh, please show me a black felt hat and a black and white checked cap. As it is already autumn, I intend to throw away my straw hat. Saleslady, by the way, please tell me the names of the four seasons in Japanese.

Yes, they are called spring, summer, autumn and winter.

As this hat is imported, the price is twenty yen.

And this cap is three yen.

Is that so?

Will you take both?

No, I'll take only the hat.

Thank you very much.

Before I go home, I want to have my watch repaired and order a suit made if you don't mind.

Yes, of course, it's all right.

At the Tailor's

- 45 Watakūshi wa fuku (w)o koshiraete moraitai desū ga . . . I want to have a suit made.
 Sayō de gozaimasū ka? Mīhon wa koko ni takūsan gozaimasū kara, dōzo goran kudasai. Is that so? As there are a lot of samples here, please look (them over).
- 50 Cha-iro no wa hade-sugiru to¹⁵ omoimasū kara, kono kon no kiji no hō ga hoshii desū ga ikūra kakarimasū ka? As I think that the tan one is too loud, I want this dark blue material, so how much does it cost?
 Kinu no ura (w)o tsukemasū to,¹⁵ mitsu-gumi ga rokū jū yen de gozaimasū. Hoka no yori If we put in (attach) a silk lining, the suit is sixty yen. I think it looks better than the others on you.
- 55 yokū o-niai to omoimasū. All right, please make (one) up from that.
 Ja, sore de koshiraete kudasai. Gladly. Excuse me, but I'll take the measurements of the coat, vest, and trousers. By next week the preliminary sewing will be done, so . . .
- 60 Kashikomarimashita. Shitsūrei desū ga, uwagi to chokki to zubon no sumpō (w)o o-tori itashimashō. Raishū made ni wa karinui ga dekimasū⁵⁴ kara . . .²⁹ That's splendid. Shall I put down (something) on account?
 Sore wa kekkō desū. Uchikin (w)o okimashō ka? Thank you, but it will be all right (to pay) the money when it is finished.
- 65 Ja, shita e orite, kutsushita ya⁸³ zubonshita (w)o kaimashō. All right, let's go down (to the first floor) and buy some socks and drawers.

Exercises

Uriko San, kutsu wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Saleslady, where are the shoes?

Bantō San, shatsu wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Bantō San, bōshi wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Uriko San, yōfuku wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Uriko San, karā wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Kutsu wa sangai no omote no hō ni gozaimasū.

Shoes are on the third floor front.

Shatsu wa ni kai no ura no hō ni gozaimasū.

Bōshi wa shi kai ni gozaimasū.

Yōfuku wa go kai no omote no hō ni gozaimasū.

O-kashi wa kono sangai no ura no hō ni gozaimasū.

Zubonshita wa shita* ni gozaimasū.

Kuroi kutsu (w)o issokū misete kudasai.

Please show me a pair of black shoes.

Cha-iro no kutsu (w)o ni sokū kaitai n' desū.

Tobi-iro no kutsu (w)o jissokū kaitai n' desū.



Hakurai no kutsu (w)o shi sokū kaitai n' desū.

Tobi-iro no nakaore-bōshi (w)o fūtatsū kaitai n' desū.

Shiroi kutsushita (w)o jū ni sokū kaitai n' desū.

Ōkisa wa ikutsū de gozaimasū ka? Tashika muttsū desū.

What is your size? If I remember correctly, six.

Kutsu no ōkisa wa ikutsū de gozaimasū ka? Tashika nanatsū han desū.

Nakaore-bōshi no ōkisa wa ikutsū de gozaimasū ka? Tashika muttsū han desū.

Shatsu no ōkisa wa ikutsū de gozaimasū ka? Tashika jū rokū desū.

Ano toriuchi-bōshi no ōkisa wa ikutsū desū ka? Itsutsū han de gozaimasū.

Kore (w)o haite mite kudasai.

Please try these on.

Ōkii hō (w)o haite mite kudasai.

Chiisai hō (w)o haite mitai desū.

Mō sūkoshi hiroi hō (w)o haite mite kudasai.

Iie, semai hō (w)o haite mitai desū.

Kono jidōsha (w)o mawashite mite kudasai.

Please try to drive this automobile.

Eigo (w)o hanashite mite kudasai.

Sono sakana (w)o tabete mite kudasai.

Sore (w)o shite mite kudasai.

Nippon go (w)o hanashite mitai desū.

Kinō watakushi wa tegami (w)o kaite mimashita.

Kore wa hiro-sugimasū.

These are too wide.

Sore wa sema-sugimasū.

Are wa ōki-sugimasū.

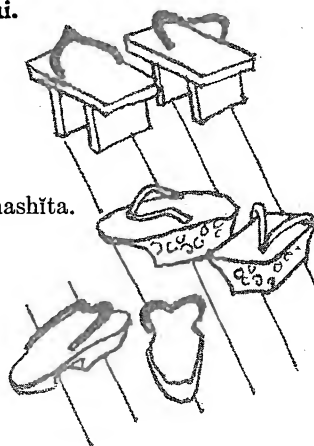
Kore wa chiisa-sugimasū.

Kore wa taka-sugimasū.

Sore wa hiku-sugimasū.

Sore wa yasu-sugimasū.

Ano riku-ya wa koko kara tō-sugimasū.



Kono onaji ōkisa de, mō sūkoshi semai no (w)o misete kudasai.

Please let me see a little narrower one in this same size.

Ano onaji ōkisa de, mō sūkoshi hiroi no (w)o misete kudasai.

Kono onaji ōkisa de, mō sūkoshi yasui no (w)o misete kudasai.

Ōkisa wa jū go de, motto ii no (w)o misete kudasai.

Kono atari de, mō sūkoshi chikai tokoro e ikitai n' desū.

Kore wa onaji nedan desū.

This is the same price.

Ano hitotachi wa onaji hi ni umaremashita.

Onaji hito ni hanashimashita.

Onaji koto desū.

Ano hito wa watakushi to onaji toki ni koko e kimashita.

Hoka no bōshi ga arimasu ka?

Do you have another hat (different one)?

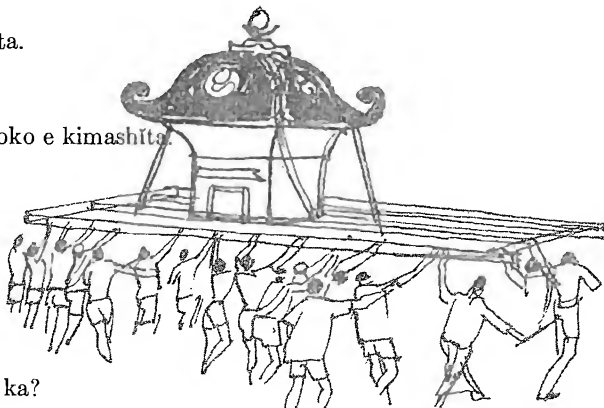
Hoka no hito ni hanashitai n' desū.

Hoka no kutsu wa irimasen.

Hoka no hon wa hoshikū arimasen.

Hoka no empitsū (w)o kudasai.

Hoka no mono (w)o goran ni kakemashō ka?



O-ki-no-doku Sama desū ga ainikū kirashite orimasu.

I'm very sorry, but unfortunately we are all sold out.

O-ki-no-doku Sama desū ga ainikū watakushi wa isoide orimasu.

O-ki-no-doku Sama desū ga ainikū watakushi wa dekae-nakereba narimasen.

O-ki-no-doku Sama desū ga ainikū ima watakushi no kanai wa kaimono ni itte orimasu.

Watakushi wa tegami (w)o haite orimasu.

I am writing a letter.

Watakushi wa asahan (w)o tabete orimasu.

Anata wa kembutsu ni itte orimashita ka?

Anata wa renshū (w)o manande orimashita ka?

Koko ni cha-iro to tobi-iro no ii no ga gozaimasu.

Here are some good tan and brown ones.

Koko ni atarashii ii sakana ga gozaimasu.

Koko ni kuroi ii kutsu ga gozaimasu.

Soko ni cha-iro no ii kiji ga gozaimasu.

Asoko ni chiisai ii o-kashi ga gozaimasu.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, sono tobi-iro no (w)o moraimashō.

Since it can't be helped, I'll take those brown ones.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, ano kuroi no (w)o moraimashō.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, ano takai no (w)o moraimashō.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, uchi e kaerimashō.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, hayakū jinrikisha ni norimashō.

Shikata ga arimasen kara, imōto (w)o tsurete ikimashō.

Dōzo tsutsunde kudasai, motte kaerimasū kara.

Please wrap (them or it), because I want to take (them or it) with me.

Dōzo uchi e todokete kudasai, motte kaerimasen kara.

Dōzo okutte kudasai, motte ikimasen kara.

Dōzo tsutsunde kudasai, motte kaera-nakereba narimasen kara.

Kore wa anata no o-tsure de gozaimasū.

Here is your change.

Watakūshi no tsuri wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Tsure (w)o kudasai.

Anata wa tsuri (w)o ikūra moraimashita ka?

Anata ni o-tsure (w)o sashiagemashita ka?

Anata ni wa go yen no o-tsure ga arimasū ka?

Kono tsugi no heya de, bōshi (w)o utte imasū ne.

In this next room they sell hats, don't they?

Kono heya de shatsu (w)o utte imasū ne.

Sono tsugi no heya de, mufiwara-bōshi (w)o utte imasū ne.

Kono tsugi no heya de, toriuchi-bōshi (w)o utte imashita ne.

Ano tsugi no heya de, nani (w)o utte imasū ka?

Ano heya de wa nani mo utte imasen.

Kono tsugi no heya de, yōfuku (w)o koshiraete imasū ne.

Kakari no mono (w)o o-yobi itashimasū.

I'll call the person in charge.

Kakari no hito (w)o yonde kudasai.

Kakari no hito ni hanashitai desū.

Kakari no bantō ni hanasu koto ga dekimasen deshita.

"Motte o-kaeri ni narimasū ka?" to kakari no hito ga kikumashita.

"Iie, dōzo todokete kudasai," to kakari no hito ni iimashita.

Dōzo o-hairi kudasai.

Please enter.

Dōzo kono tsugi no heya e haitte kudasai.

Dōzo o-tsutsunde kudasai.

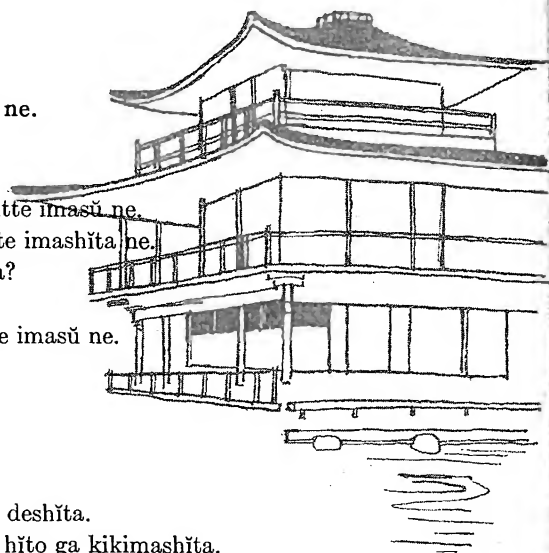
Dōzo ano kami (w)o sūtete kudasai.

Dōzo kono kutsu (w)o haite kudasai.

Donna bōshi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Kuro no nakaore-bōshi to toriuchi-bōshi (w)o misete kudasai.

What kind of hat do you desire? Please show me a black felt hat and a cap.

Donna shatsu ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Waishatsū to shima no shatsu (w)o misete kudasai.



Donna yōfuku ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Kon no zubon (w)o misete kudasai.
Donna kutsu ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Kuro no kutsu to cha-iro no (w)o misete kudasai.

Donna uwagi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Goban no uwagi (w)o misete kudasai.
Donna chokki ga o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Shima no chokki (w)o misete kudasai.

Mō aki desū kara, mugiwara-bōshi wa sūteru tsumori desū.
As it is already autumn, I intend to throw away my straw hat.

Mō natsu desū kara, nakaore-bōshi (w)o kaitakū arimasen.
Mō bōshi-ya e itte kimashita.
Mō hiruhan (w)o o-agari ni narimashita ka?
Mō fuyu desū kara, kono shiroi kutsu wa kau tsumori ja arimasen.

Ano kami (w)o sūtete kudasai.
Please throw that paper away.

Ano shimbun (w)o sūte nasai.
Ano sakana wa atarashikū arimasen kara, sūtete kudasai.

Nippon go de shiki no namae (w)o itte mite kudasai.
Please say for me the names of the seasons in Japanese.

Ano hon no namae (w)o itte mite kudasai.
Anata no namae (w)o yukkuri itte mite kudasai.
Watakūshi wa Beikoku-jin desū kara, yokū wakarimasen deshita ga anata no namae (w)o katakana de kaite mite kudasai.
Ano mise no namae (w)o itte mite kudasai.

Hai, haru, natsu, aki, fuyu to iimasū.
Yes, they are called spring, summer, autumn, winter.

Hai, kono hon no namae wa "Nippon go Renshū" to iimasū.
Anata no namae wa nan to iimasū ka?
Watakūshi no namae wa Takahashi to iimasū.
Ano hito no namae wa nan to iimasū ka?
Ano hito no namae wa Matsumoto San to iimasū.
Ano mise no namae wa Takashima-ya to iimasū.

Kono nakaore-bōshi wa hakurai de gozaimasū kara, o-nedan wa ni jū yen de gozaimasū.
As this felt hat is imported, the price is twenty yen.

Kono yōfuku wa hakurai ja arimasen kara, o-nedan wa go jū yen de gozaimasū.
Anata no nakaore-bōshi wa hakurai desū ka? Iie, hakurai ja arimasen.
Kore wa hakurai no mihon desū ka? Hai, sō de gozaimasū. Desū kara, o-nedan wa hichi jū yen de gozaimasū.
Watakūshi no nakaore-bōshi wa hakurai deshita kara, nedan wa ku yen deshita.



Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasū ka? Iie, nakaore-bōshi dake moraimashō.

Will you take both of them? No, I'll only take the felt hat.

Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasū ka? Iie, toriuchi-bōshi dake moraimashō.

Ryōhō no empitsū ga hoshii desū ka? Iie, empitsū wa ippon dake hoshii desū.

Ryōhō tomo o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka? Iie, ryōhō tomo wa hoshikū arimasen.

Ryō-nin tomo anata no o-tomodachi desū ka? Iie, hitori dake ga watakūshi no tomodachi desū.

Ryōhō tomo sūkimasen.

I don't like both of them.

Ryōhō wa irimasen.

Ryōhō tomo sūki desū.

Ryōhō wa moraimasen.

Mata ashīta dōzo o-negai itashimasū.

I'll ask you a favor again tomorrow.

Mata ashīta no asa dōzo o-negai itashimasū.

Ashīta no gogo o-negai itashimasū.

Ashīta no ban o-negai itashimasū.

Yōfuku (w)o itchaku chūmon shīte okitai.

I want to order a suit of clothes.

Yōfuku (w)o san chaku go-chūmon shīte kudasaimasū ka?

Iie, ni chaku dake chūmon shīte okitai desū.

Ano Beikokū-jin ni wa yōfuku ga jitichaku aru sō desū.

Anata wa atarashii yōfuku (w)o kaimashīta ne.

Niku (w)o ni kin chūmon shīte okimasū.

Dōzo hon-ya e itte, atarashii hon (w)o chūmon shīte oite kudasai.

Chūmon shīte okimasū ga kamaimasen ka?

I'll place an order, if you don't mind.

Ano ko (w)o tsurete itte mo kamaimasen ka? Hai,⁸² kamaimasen.

Ima tabete mo kamaimasen ka? Hai, kamaimasen.

Sūkoshi wa matte mo kamaimasen ka? Hai, kamaimasen.

O-saki e gomen kudasai.

Excuse my going first.

Gomen kudasai.

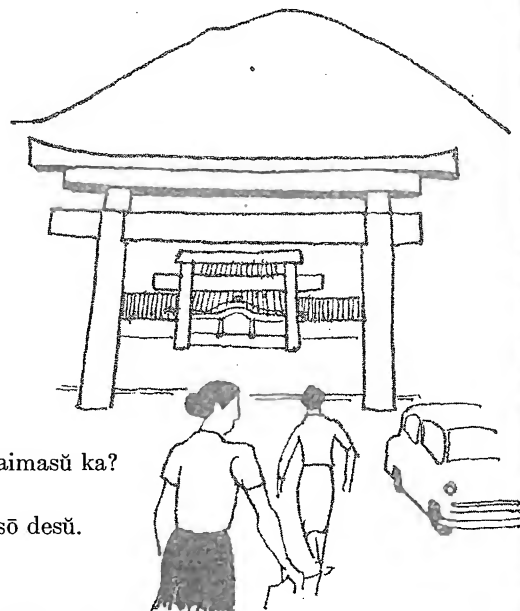
Gomen nasai.

Yokū irasshaimashīta.

You are welcome.

Watakushi wa Nippon go (w)o yokū hanasu koto ga dekimasen.

Ano hito wa Eigo (w)o yokū yomu koto ga dekimasen yō desū.



Anata wa hikōki de tobu koto ga dekimasū ka?
 Ano hitotachi wa mina Nippon go (w)o yokū kaku koto ga dekimasū ka?
 Ano onna no ko* wa renshū (w)o yokū shīte imashīta.
 Ano otoko no ko wa yokū yomimashīta.

Watakūshi wa yōfuku (w)o itchaku koshiraete moraitai desū.

I want to have a suit of clothes made.

Kutsu (w)o naoshīte moraitai desū.
 Tokei (w)o naoshīte moraitai desū.
 Kono jidōsha (w)o naoshīte kudasai.
 Watakūshi wa shatsu (w)o ichi mai koshiraete moraimashīta.
 Ano hito wa kirei na yōfuku (w)o koshiraete moraimashīta.
 Kutsu (w)o koshiraete kudasai.

Kono kami wa nani iro desū ka? Shiro desū.

What color is this paper? It is white.

Kono empitsū wa nani iro desū ka? Tobi-iro desū.
 Kono yōfuku wa nani iro desū ka? Cha-iro desū.
 Kono zubon wa nani iro desū ka? Kon desū.
 Kono chokki wa shiro to kuro no goban desū.
 Kono uwagi wa nani iro desū ka? Kuro desū.

Dōzo goran kudasai.

Please take a look.

Watakūshi wa mihon (w)o mimashīta.
 Ano hito wa mihon (w)o mimashīta.
 Watakūshidomo wa nakaore-bōshi (w)o mite imashīta.
 Anata wa mihon (w)o goran nasaimashīta ka?
 Anata wa toriuchi-bōshi (w)o goran ni narimashīta ka?
 Nani ka goran ni kakemashō ka?

Cha-iro no wa hade-sugiru to omoimasū.

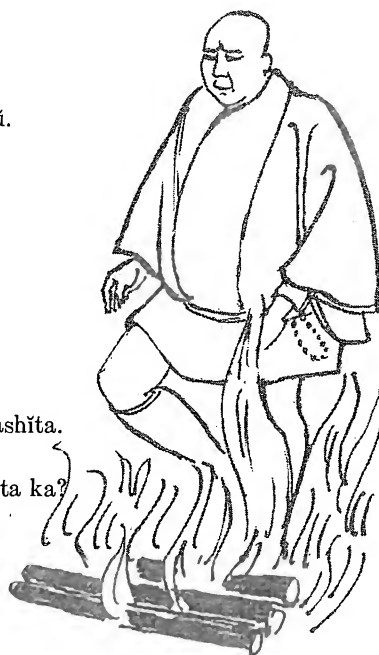
I think that the tan one is too showy.

Cha-iro no wa hade-sugiru to iimashīta.
 Cha-iro no wa hade sugiru to omoimashīta.
 Tobi-iro no wa hade-sugiru to Uriko San ga iimashīta.
 Ano hito wa Takashima-ya e ikimashīta to anata no okūsan ga iimashīta.
 Anata wa go ji han ni kaeru koto ga dekimasū ka? to ano hito ga kikimashīta.

Hade-sugiru to omoimasū.

I think it's too loud.

Sore wa taka-sugimasū.
 Sore wa hiro-sugiru to omoimasū.

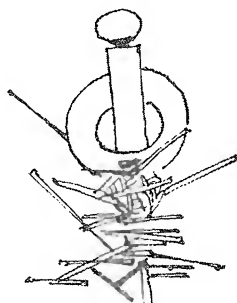


Kore wa sema-sugimasū.
Sore wa naga-sugiru to omoimasū.

Kono kon no kiji no hō ga hoshii desū.

I want this dark blue one.

Kono jōtō na kiji no hō ga hoshii desū.
Kono kuroi hō ga hoshii desū.
Ano kinu no hō ga hoshii desū.
Sono waishatsū no hō ga hoshii desū.
Ano yasui hō ga hoshii.



Kinu no ura (w) o tsukemasū to mitsu-gumi no yōfuku ga rokū jū yen de gozaimasū.

If I attach a silk lining, the three parts of the suit will be sixty yen.

Anata ga sono kutsu (w) o kaimasū to, watakūshi wa kono kutsu (w) o kaimashō.
Anata ga Nippon go no renshū (w) o yokū shimasū to, Nippon go de hanasu koto ga deki-mashō.
Watakūshi ga tegami (w) o kakimasū to, tomodachi wa Matsumoto San e motte itte kudasaimashō.

Hoka no yori jōtō na kiji de, anata ni wa yokū o-niai to omoimasū.

This is finer quality than the others and I think it becomes you very much.

Anata wa sei ga takai kara, kono shima no kiji wa anata ni wa yokū o-niai to omoimasū.
Mō natsū desū kara, shiroi kutsu no hō ga kuroi kutsu yori o-niai to omoimasū.
Cha-iro no hō ga kuro no kiji yori o-niai to omoimasū.

Sumpō (w) o o-tori itashimashō.

I'll take your measurements.

Ano bantō San wa anata no sumpō (w) o torimashita.
Ano bantō San wa watakūshi no sumpō (w) o torimashita.
Watakūshi no sumpō (w) o totte kudasai.
Watakūshi no uwagi no sumpō (w) o totte kudasai.
Watakūshi no zubon no sumpō (w) o totte kudasai.
Watakūshi no chokki no sumpō (w) o totte kudasai.
Kono zubon wa sūkoshi naga-sugiru to omoimasū.



Raishū made ni wa kari-nui ga dekiagarimasū.

By next week the preliminary sewing will be finished.

Raigetsū made ni koshiraeru koto ga dekimasū ka?
Rainen made ni Amerika e kaeru koto ga dekimasū.
Rai-haru made ni wa kono hon ga dekiagarimashō.
Rainen no fuyu made ni wa kono atarashii jidōsha wa dekiagarimashō.
Raishū no getsuyōbi made ni wa anata no shatsu wa dekiagarimashō.

Kari-nui wa itsū dekiagarimashō ka?

Rainen no Sangatsū made ni wa watakūshi no tomodachi wa koko e kuru tsumori desū to kaite kimashita.

Kōhī (w)o o-agari ni narimasū ka? Iya, mō kekkō.

Will you have some coffee? No, this is plenty.

Aikawarazu genki desū. Sore wa kekkō desū.

Sore wa kekkō desū.

Uchikin (w)o okimashō ka?

Shall I put down a deposit.

Iie, uchikin wa irimasen.

Iie, uchikin wa nakūte mo yoroshiū gozaimasū.

Uchikin (w)o oka-nakereba narimasen ka?

Uchikin (w)o o-negai itashimasū.

O-kane wa dekiagarimashita toki de yoroshiū gozaimasū.

It's all right to give the money when it is finished.

Anata ga Nippon e itta toki ni wa doko (w)o kembutsū shimashita ka?

Watakūshi ga Takashima-ya e itta toki ni, kuroi kutsu wa arimasen deshita.

Tōkiō ni ita toki ni Takashima-ya e kaimono ni ikimashita.

Itsū kono tokei wa dekiagarimasū ka?

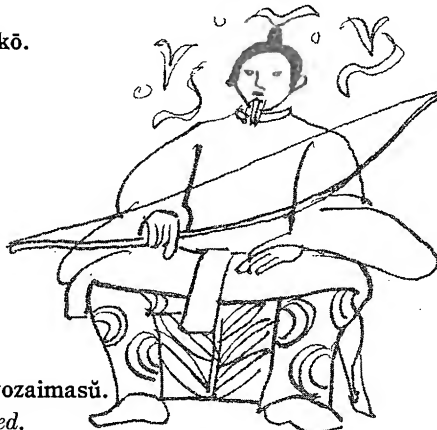
When will this watch be finished?

Itsū kono kutsu wa dekiagarimasū ka?

Itsū kono yōfuku wa dekiagarimasū ka?

Itsū kono zubon wa dekiagarimasū ka?

Itsū kari-nui wa dekiagarimasū ka?



11

Dai Jū Ikk(w)a (Lesson XI)

- Hanako San, anata ga hanashite ita¹⁸ hīto⁸⁴ wa dare desū ka?
Sentaku-ya de gozaimasū.
Senshū okutta sentaku mono (w)o motte
5 kimashita ne?
Hai, motte mairimashita.
De wa, ni kai ni aru yogorete iru sentaku mono⁸⁴ (w)o watashite⁸⁶ kudasai.
Hai, kashikomarimashita.
10 Sentaku-ya ni karā ni nori (w)o tsukete, shatsu ni wa nori (w)o tsuke-nai yō ni⁶⁵ hanashite kudasai. Soshite sentaku mono wa itsū dekiru⁵⁴ ka kiite kudasai.
- Hanako, who is that man to whom you were speaking?
He is the laundry man.
He brought the laundry that we sent last week, didn't he?
Yes, he brought (it).
Then, please give him the soiled wash which is on the second floor.
Yes, I shall.
Please tell the laundry man to starch the collars and not to put starch in the shirts. And please ask (him) when the wash will be done.
-
- Sūmisū San, kesa anata tō issho ni aruite ita
15 gunjintachi⁴ wa donatagata⁷³ de gozaimasū ka?
Eikoku no suihei to Fūransū no heishi de gozaimasū.
O-naka ga sūkimashita ga, doko ka²³ de
20 oishii yūhan (w)o tabeyō⁵⁴ ja arimasen ka?
Watakūshi wa dai sansei desu. Doko no ryōriya ga ichiban ii deshō ka?
Nihon shokū wa ikaga desū ka?
Hai, keredomo unagi-meshi wa chūmon shi-
25 nai de kudasai.³²
Sore de wa watakūshi ga takūsan no yūmei no hīto ga yokū yuku ryōriya⁸⁴ e tsurete itte agemashō.⁸⁶ Komban wa yokochō no Kagetsū e yukimashō.
30 Sore wa taihen ii kangae desū ne. Kagetsū wa tomodachi ga watakūshi ni tegami de hanashita ryōriya⁸⁴ deshō.
Sono o-tegami ni wa nan to¹⁵ kaite arimashita ka?
35 Zehi ichi-dō K(w)agetsū e itte tabete goran to kaite arimashita. Kono aida Beikokū kara watakūshi ni kozutsumi (w)o okutte kureta hīto⁸⁴ wa ano kata¹¹ desū.
Sō desū ka? Sā, ima kara ryōriya e ikimashō.
- Mr. Smith, who are those military men who were walking with you this morning?
They are an English sailor and a French soldier.
I am very hungry, so shall we not eat a good dinner somewhere?
I agree with you absolutely. Which restaurant do you think is the best?
What do you say to Japanese food?
Yes, but please don't order eels and rice.
Well then, I shall take you to a restaurant where a great many famous people often go. To-night let's go to the (little) side street restaurant (called) *Kagetsu*.
That's really a very good idea. *Kagetsu* is the restaurant which my friend spoke to me about in (his) letter.
What did it say (was written) in that letter.
It said that I should be sure to try the *Kagetsu* restaurant once. He is the person who recently sent me the package from America.
Is that right? Come now, let's go to the restaurant right now.

In the Restaurant

40 Komban wa.

Yokū irasshaimashita.¹⁸ Komban wa nani (w)o sashiagemashō ka?

Dōzo sūkiyaki (w)o fūtari mae⁶⁴ negaimasū.

45 Hajime ni, tōfu no suimono (w)o motte kite kudasai. Soshite, tomodachi wa hashi (w)o tsukau koto ga deki-nai kara, niku-sashi to hōchō to saji (w)o wasure-nai de kudasai.

Hai, de, o-sake wa ikaga desū ka?

50 Ā, nodo ga kawaite imasū³¹ kara, biru (w)o ni hon⁶⁴ moraimashō. Soshite budōshu mo ippon⁶¹ negaimasū.

O-kyakū Sama, koko e niku to yasai (w)o motte mairimashita.

55 Sūmisū San, ototoi Komatsū no ryōriya de tabeta niku wa dame deshita ga koko no¹⁰ niku wa kanari yawarakai yō desū ne.

Hai, o-naka ga ippai ni narimashita.⁶⁹

Tabako wa ikaga desū ka?

60 Hai, arigatō. Hamaki (w)o motte imasū.³¹ Kyūji San, mizu (w)o mō⁸⁷ ni hai motte kite kudasai, soshite kanjō mo. . .

Hai, sugu motte mairimasū.

Ja, kore wa jū yen satsū da²⁶ kara, kore de

65 kanjō (w)o haratte kudasai. O-tsurī wa anata e no kokorozashi desū yo.⁸⁸

Good evening.

Welcome! What can we do for you this evening?

We'll take two portions of *sukiyaki* please.

First, please bring us some bean-curd soup.

And, since my friend doesn't know how to use chopsticks, please don't forget a fork, knife, and spoon.

Yes, and, how about something to drink? (some liquor).

Oh, as I'm thirsty, I'll take two bottles of beer. And also one bottle of wine.

Sir, here are (I brought) the meat and vegetables.

Mr. Smith, that meat we ate the day before yesterday in the Komatsu restaurant was no good, but this meat seems quite tender, doesn't it?

Yes, I am completely filled up.

How about a smoke?

Yes, thanks, I have a cigar.

Waitress, please give us two more glasses of water and also the bill. . .

Yes, I'll bring them at once.

Well now, here is a ten yen note, so please pay the bill with it. The change is a tip for you.

Exercises

Anata ga hanashite ita hito wa dare desū ka? Sentaku-ya de gozaimasū.

Who is that man to whom you were speaking? He is the laundry-man.

Anata ga hanashite iru hito wa dare desū ka? Kutsu-ya San de gozaimasū.

Anata ga hanashitai hito wa dare desū ka? Yao-ya desū.

Ano kata ga yonde iru hon wa donna hon desū ka? Nippon go no hon desū.

Ano onna no kata ga nutte iru mono wa nani desū ka? Chokki desū.

Anata ga mite iru mono wa nani desū ka? Empitsu desū.

Ano kata ga yonde iru shimbun no namae wa nan desū ka? Nichi-Nichi to iimasū.

Ano shimbun (w)o yonde iru hito no namae wa nan to iimasū ka? Matsumoto San to iimasū.



Kare¹⁰⁴ ga itta koto (w)o watakūshi ni hanashite kudasai.

Please tell me what he said.

Matsumoto San ga kaita koto (w)o watakūshi ni hanashite kudasai.

Ano hito ga shita koto (w)o watakūshi ni hanashite kudasai.

Ano hitotachi ga mita koto (w)o ano shikan ni hanashimashita.

Watakūshi ga tabeta koto (w)o anata ni hanashimashō.

Senshū okutta sentaku mono (w)o kudasai.

Please give me the laundry we sent last week.

Sengetsū no zasshi (w)o kudasai.

Senshū no shimbun (w)o sūtete kudasai.

Watakūshi ga sengetsū okutta tegami wa tsukimasen deshita ka?

Sengetsū koshiraeta hikōki ga mitai n' desū.

Senshū koko e kita shikan wa watakūshi no itoko desū.

Nikai ni aru yogorete iru sentaku mono (w)o watashite kudasai.

Please give him the soiled wash that is on the second floor (upstairs).

Shita ni aru kozutsumi (w)o Takahashi San no o-taku e motte itte kudasai.

Motomachi ni aru ryōriya e ikimashō ka?

Sangai ni sunde iru hito no namae wa nan to iimasu ka?

Ano shi kai ni aru shimbun (w)o sūtete kudasai.

Ano shita ni iru kata ni hanashite kudasai.

Karā ni wa nori (w)o tsukete kudasai.

Please put starch on the collars.

Karā ni wa nori (w)o tsuke-nai de kudasai.

Shatsu ni wa nori (w)o tsuke-nai de kudasai.

Shatsu ni wa nori (w)o tsukete kudasai.

Uwagi ni wa kinu no ura (w)o tsukete kudasai.

Uwagi ni wa kinu no ura (w)o tsuke-nai de kudasai.

Shatsu ni wa nori (w)o tsuke-nai yō ni itte kudasai.

Please tell him not to starch the shirts.

Shatsu ni wa nori (w)o tsukeru yō ni hanashite kudasai.

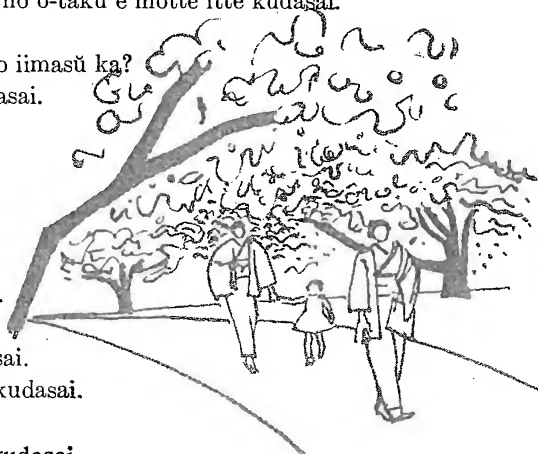
Dōzo watakūshi no yōfuku (w)o ashita no jū ji made ni motte kuru yō ni itte kudasai.

Watakūshi wa kyō uchi ni imasen kara, dōzo ano kozutsumi wa todokete kure-nai yō ni itte kudasai.

Dōzo Takahashi San ni raishū no Kinyōbi no ban koko e kuru yō ni kaite kudasai.

Dōzo Hanako San ni hachi ji ni kaeru yō ni itte kudasai.

Ano otoko no ko ni kyō ko-nai yō ni itte kudasai.



Sentaku mono wa itsū dekiru ka kiite kudasai.

Please ask him when the laundry will be ready.

Watakūshi no musūme ni itsū dekakeru ka kiite kudasai.

Watakūshi no kanai ni itsū kaeru ka kiite kudasai.

Yōfuku-ya San ni yōfuku ga itsū dekiagaru ka kiite kudasai.

Ano suihei no namae (w)o Matsumoto San ni kiite kudasai.

Hai, kikimashō.

Yes, I'll ask.

Hai, sō itashimashō.

Hai, sō shimashō.

Hai, sō hanashimashō.

Hai, sō iimashō.



Kesa anata to issho ni aruite ita gunjin wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Eikoku no suihei de gozaimasū.

Who is that military man that you were walking with this morning? He is an English sailor.

Kinō depāto e anata ga tsurete itta otoko no ko wa dare deshita ka? Matsumoto San no musūko deshita.

Watakūshi ga kinō issho ni aruite ita onna no kata wa Takahashi San de gozaimashita.

Anata to Nippon go de hanashite ita hito wa dare desū ka? Matsumoto San to iimasū.

Anata ga kinō kaita tegami wa doko ni okimashita ka? Ni kai ni arimasū.

O-naka ga sūkimashita.

(I am) hungry.

Watakūshi wa o-naka ga sūkimashita.

Anata wa o-naka ga sūkimashita ka?

Anata mo o-naka ga sūkimashita ka?

Ano hito wa o-naka ga suitea deshō ka?

Doko ka de oishii yūhan (w)o tabeyō ja arimasen ka?

Shall we not eat a good dinner somewhere?

Itsū ka oishii yūhan (w)o tabemashō ka?

Doko ka e itte yukkuri hanashimashō ka?

Itsū ka watakūshi no uchi e o-ide ni narimasen ka?

Doko ka de yōshokū (w)o tabeyō ja arimasen ka?

Biru (w)o issho ni nomō ja arimasen ka? Iie, hiruhan (w)o tabeyō to omoimasū.

Won't you drink a beer with me? No, I think I shall eat lunch.

Jū ji no basū ni norō to omoimasū.

Hayakū gakkō e ikō to omoimasū.

Zubonshita (w)o kaō to omoimasū.
Ashita tegami (w)o kakō to omotte imasū.

Watakūshi wa dai sansei desū.

I heartily agree with you.

Anata wa watakūshi ni sansei shimasū ka?
Iie, watakūshi wa sansei shimasen.
Watakūshi wa ano hito ni sansei shimasū.
Ano kata wa Takahashi San ni sansei shimasen deshita.
Takahashi San to Matsumoto San wa sansei shimasen deshō.

Doko no ryōriya ga ichiban ii deshō ka?

Which restaurant do you think is the best?

Doko no depāto ga ichiban ii deshō ka?
Doko no sakana-ya e itte kimashita ka?
Doko no shatsu-ya ni ii shima no shatsu ga arimasū ka?
Doko no kutsu-ya e ikitō gozaimasū ka?

Yōshokū wa ikaga desū ka?

How about some western food (European or American)?

Nihon shokū wa ikaga desū ka?
Shina-meshi wa ikaga desū ka?

Unagi-meshi wa chūmon shi-nai de kudasai.

Please do not order eels and rice.

Takai mise e tsurete ika-nai de kudasai.
Watakūshi no tegami (w)o ake-nai de kudasai.
Ano gunjin ni wa hanasa-nai de kudasai.
Ima nani mo kaka-nai de kudasai.
Asahan (w)o ima tabe-nai de kudasai.
Dōzo imōto-wa tsurete ko-nai de kudasai.
Jū ni ji made wa ko-nai de kudasai.

Watakūshi ga takūsan no yūmei na hito ga yokū iku ryōriya e tsurete itte agemashō.

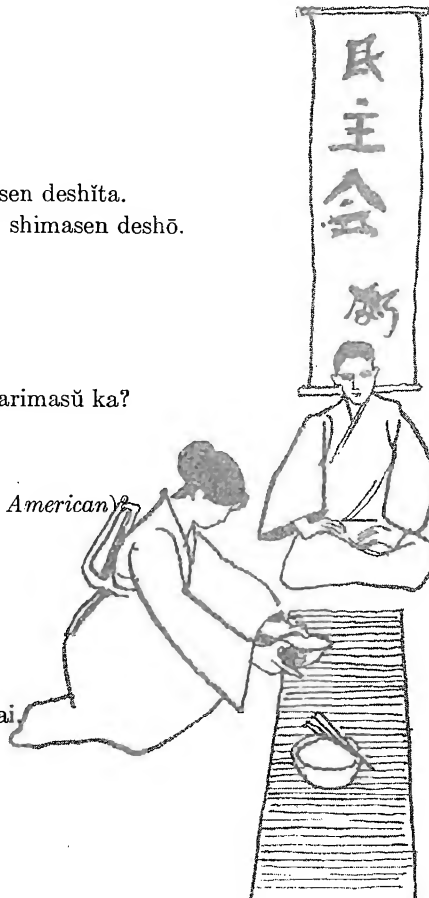
I'll take you to a restaurant where many famous people often go.

Watakūshi no tomodachi ga yokū iku ryōriya e tsurete itte agemashō.
Takahashi San ga watakūshi ni kaita tegami (w)o misete agemashō.
Watakūshi ga okāsan ga kaimono ni yokū iku depāto e tsurete itte agemashō.
Ikita sakana (w)o utte iru sakana-ya e tsurete itte kudasai.

Watakūshidomo no yokū yomu zasshi (w)o agemashō.

I shall give you a magazine which we often read.

Anata no sūki na hon (w)o agemashō.
Ano hito ga motte kita shatsu (w)o agemashō.



Kinō katta empitsu (w)o agemashō.
 Senshū hanashīta hito ni ano kozutsumi (w)o agemashīta.
 Sono hon (w)o kudasaimasū ka?
 Hai, kono hon (w)o agemashō.
 Watakūshi ga kaita hon (w)o sashiagemasū.

Nichi-Nichi shimbun (w)o yokū yomimasū ka? Hai, yokū yomimasū.

Do you often read the Nichi-Nichi newspaper? Yes, often.

Ano ryōriya e yokū o-ide ni narimasū ka? Iie, amari mairimasen.
 Takashima-ya e anata no otōsan wa kaimono ni yokū ikimasū ka? Iie, amari ikimasen.
 Yūhan ni wa biru (w)o yokū nomimasū ka? Hai, yokū nomimasū.
 Sashimi (w)o yokū o-agari ni narimasū ka? Iie, amari tabemasen.

Nichi-Nichi (w)o yonda koto ga arimasū ka? Iie, yonda koto wa arimasen.

Have you ever read Nichi-Nichi? No, I have never read (it).

Ano ryōriya e itta koto ga arimasū ka? Iie, itta koto wa arimasen.
 Takashima-ya e anata no otōsan wa kaimono ni itta koto ga arimasū ka? Hai, itta koto ga arimashō.
 Yūhan ni wa sashimi (w)o tabeta koto ga arimasū ka? Iie, tabeta koto wa arimasen.

Nichi-Nichi (w)o itsū mo yomimasū ka? Iie, itsū mo wa yomimasen.

Do you always read Nichi-Nichi? No, not always.

Ano ryōriya e itsū mo o-ide ni narimasū ka? Iie, itsū mo wa mairimasen.
 Anata no otōsan wa Takashima-ya e kaimono ni itsu mo ikimasū ka? Iie, itsū mo wa ikimasen.
 Yūhan ni wa biru (w)o itsū mo nomimasū ka? Hai, itsū mo nomimasū.
 Hashi (w)o itsū mo tsukzimasū ka? Iie, itsū mo wa tsukaimasen.

Komban wa Kagetsū e ikimashō.

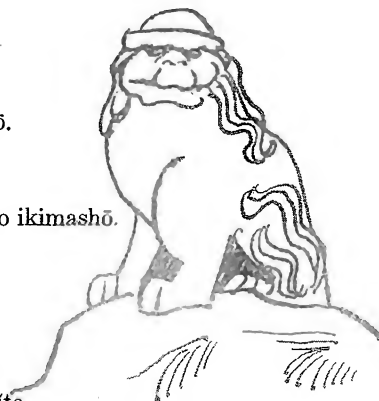
Let's go to the Kagetsu restaurant to-night.

Komban wa Komatsū e ikimashō.
 Komban wa Matsumoto San no o-taku e ikimashō.
 Kyō no gogo wa Takashima-ya e ikimashō.
 Kesa anata ga hanashīte ita tokoro e ikimashō.
 Senshū watakūshidomo ga itta ryōriya e mō ichido ikimashō.

Sore wa taihen ii kangae desū.

That's a very good idea.

Anata no kangae wa taihen yō gozaimasū.
 Ano kata no kangae wa amari yokū arimasen.
 Ano onna no kata no kangae wa taihen ii yō deshīta.
 Watakūshi no kangae wa taihen ii deshīta to Matsumoto San ga iimashīta



Kagetsū wa tomodachi ga watakūshi ni tegami de hanashita ryōriya deshō.

Kagetsu must be the restaurant which my friend wrote me about.

Takashima-ya wa Matsumoto San ga watakūshi ni tegami de hanashita depāto deshō.

Sore wa tomodachi ga watakūshi ni okutte kureta kozutsumi desū.

Are wa watakūshi ga zasshi (w)o katta hon-ya* desū.

Kore wa imōto ga itte ita gakkō desū.

Sono tegami ni wa nan to kaite arimashita ka?

What was written in that letter?

Kono tegami ni wa nan to kaite arimasu ka?

Kono kozutsumi ni wa dare no namae ga kaite arimashita ka?

Sono kozutsumi no naka* ni wa nani ga haitte imasu ka?

Kono kami ni wa nan to kaite arimasu ka?

Kono hon ni wa donna koto ga kaite arimashita ka?

Kitto ichi-do Kagetsū e itte tabete goran to kaite arimashita.

He wrote that I should certainly try eating at the Kagetsu once.

Kitto ichi-do Kōbe e kembutsū ni itte goran to kaite arimashita.

Kitto ichi-do Nippon shokū (w)o tabete goran to kaite arimashita.

Ichi-do sashimi (w)o tabete goran kudasai.

Ichi-do unagi-meshi (w)o tabete goran kudasai.

Watakūshidomo wa Kagetsū e itte, Nihon shokū (w)o tabete mimashita to tomodachi ni kakimashita.

Kono aida Beikokū kara watakūshi ni kozutsumi (w)o okutte kureta hito wa ano kata desū.

He is the man who recently sent me the package from America.

Watakūshi ga kinō yonde ita hon wa kore desū.

Kinō Takashima-ya de katta shatsu (w)o misete kudasai.

Senshū watakūshi ga nonda hamaki wa dame deshita.

Kesa kaita tegami wa doko ni arimasu ka?

Kyūji wa watakūshi ni hashi (w)o motte kite kuremashita.

The waiter kindly brought me the chopsticks.

Ano hito wa tegami (w)o kaite kuremasen deshita.

Ano hito wa mainichi watakūshi ni Eigo (w)o oshiete* kuremasu.

Takahashi San wa watakūshi ni kono hon (w)o kuremashita.

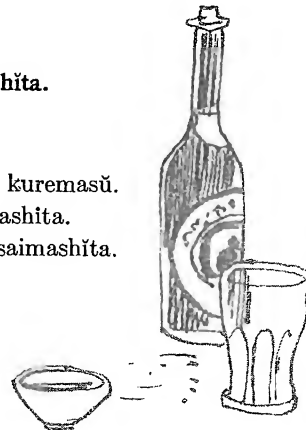
Matsumoto San wa watakūshi ni kono hon (w)o kudasaimashita.

Dōzo sūkiyaki (w)o futarimae negaimasu.

I should like to have two portions of sukiyaki.

Dōzo sūkiyaki (w)o hitorimae negaimasu.

Dōzo tempura (w)o san nin mae negaimasu.



Dōzo sūkiyaki (w)o yo nin mae negaimasū.

Dōzo tempura (w)o go nin mae negaimasū.

Hajime ni, tōfu no suimono (w)o motte kite kudasai.

First of all, please bring us some bean soup.

Hajime ni, sūkiyaki (w)o hitorimae motte kite kudasai.

Hajime ni, sentaku-ya e itte kudasai.

Hajime ni, te (w)o aratte kudasai.

Hajime ni, Takashima-ya e ikimashō.

Tomodachi wa hashi (w)o tsukau koto ga dekimasen.

My friend doesn't know how to use chopsticks.

Watakūshi wa hashi (w)o tsukau koto ga dekimasen.

Anata wa hashi (w)o tsukau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Amerika-jin wa fude (w)o yokū tsukau koto ga dekimasen.

Nippon-jin wa mina hashi (w)o tsukaimasū.

Nikusashi to hōchō to saji (w)o wasure-nai de kudasai.

Please don't forget a fork, knife, and spoon.

Niku to yasai (w)o wasure-nai de kudasai.

Watakūshi wa hon (w)o wasuremashita.

Wasure-nai de kaite kudasai.

Takashima-ya e itte shatsu (w)o wasure-nai de katte kite kudasai.

Kyūji wa watakūshidomo ni tamago (w)o motte kuru koto (w)o wasurete imashita.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Bīru (w)o ni hon moraimashō.

How about something to drink? I'll take two bottles of beer.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Bīru (w)o sambon moraimashō.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Hai, Fūransū no budōshu (w)o ni hon moraimashō.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Sake (w)o ippon moraimashō.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Bīru (w)o ippon moraimashō.

O-sake wa ikaga desū ka? Hai, arigatō gozaimasū ga mizu dake moraimashō.

Watakūshi wa nodo ga kawakimashita.

I am thirsty.

Anata wa nodo ga kawakimashita ka?

Ano hito wa nodo ga kawakimashita sō desū.

Nodo ga kawaite ita kara, bīru (w)o shi hon nomimashita.

Dōzo tabe-hajimete kudasai.

Please begin eating.

Dōzo nomi-hajimete kudasai.

Dōzo kaki-hajimete kudasai.

Dōzo hanashi-hajimete kudasai.



Ototoi Komatsū no ryōriya de tabeta niku wa dame deshita ga koko no niku wa kanari yawarakai yō desū ne.

The meat we ate the day before yesterday in the Komatsu restaurant was no good, but this meat seems quite tender.

Ototoi Kagetsū no ryōriya de nonda budōshu wa dame deshita ga koko no budōshu wa kanari oishii yō desū ne.

Sengetsū Takashima-ya de katta shatsu wa dame deshita ga koko no shatsu wa ii yō desū ne.
Kinō Yokohama de nonda kōhī wa dame deshita ga koko no kōhī wa kanari oishii yō desū ne.

Ano ototoi naoshite moratta tokei wa dame desū ga anata no tokei wa ii yō desū ne.
Kono niku wa yawarakakū arimasen.

O-naka ga ippai ni narimashita.

I am completely filled.

Watakushi wa o-naka ga ippai ni narimashita.

Anata wa o-naka ga ippai ni narimashita ka?

Ano hito wa o-naka ga ippai ni narimashita sō desū.

Kurokū narimashita.

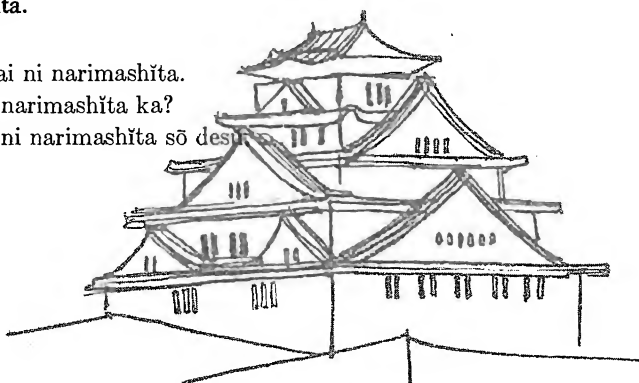
It became black.

Shirokū narimashita.

Takakū narimashita.

Yasukū narimashita.

Ōkikū narimashita.



Maki-tabako* (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, hamaki dake nomimasū.

Do you smoke cigarettes? No, I smoke only cigars.

Maki-tabako (w)o nomimasū ka? Iie, kiseru* dake de suimasū.*

Tomodachi wa hamaki ga o-sūki desū ka? Taihen sūki da sō desū.

Hamaki wa nomimasen. Maki-tabako dake nomimasū.

Hamaki wa nomimasen kara, dōzo maki-tabako (w)o kudasai.

Hamaki (w)o hito hako kaitai desū.

Anata ni wa matchi* ga arimasū ka?

Matchi (w)o futa hako moraimashō.

Mizu (w)o ni hai motte kite kudasai.

Please bring us two glasses of water.

Mizu (w)o ippai motte kite kudasai.

Bīru (w)o ippai motte kite kudasai.

Bīru (w)o mō ippai motte kite kudasai.

Budōshu (w)o mō sambai motte kite kudasai.

Biru (w)o ippon motte kite kudasai.

Please bring a bottle of beer.

Budōshu (w)o sambon motte kite kudasai.

O-sake (w)o roppon motte kite kudasai.

O-sake (w)o shi hon motte kite kudasai.

Kanjō (w)o kudasai.

Please give me the check.

Kyūji wa kanjō (w)o motte kimashita.

Kanjō wa ikūra desū ka?

Kanjō wa ni yen go jissen de gozaimasū.

Watakūshi ga kanjō (w)o haraimashō.

Iie, watakūshi ga haraitai desū.

Kutsu ni go yen haraimashita.

Kore wa go yen satsū desū.

This is a five yen note.

Watakūshi wa anata ni go yen satsū (w)o watashimasen deshita ka?

Sore wa taihen ii hamaki da to omoimasū.

Ano yōfuki wa taihen jōtō na kiji da to bantō ga iimashita.

Kyō wa Nichiyōbi da kara, gakkō e ikimasen.

Tomodachi no tegami ni Kagetsū wa ichiban ii ryōriya da to kaite arimasū.

O-tsuri wa anata e no kokorozashi desū yo.

The change is for you!

Kyūji e no kokorozashi wa ichi yen de takūsan desū ka?

Sore de takūsan deshō.

Kore wa tomodachi kara anata e no tegami desū.

Takūsan tabe-nai to, sugu o-naka ga sūkimasū yo.

Kono kogane* (w)o go yen satsū ni kaete kudasai.

Kono sakana wa dame desū kara, tabete wa ikernasen yo.



12

Dai Jū Ni K(w)a (Lesson XII)

Shitsūrei desū ga, kono machi de dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii ka go-zonji desū ka?

Amari yokū wa shirimasen ga moshi anata ga seiyō fū no hoteru ga o-sūki nareba,⁸⁹

⁵ Gūrando Hoteru ga ichiban atarashikūte, ōkiū gozaimasū. Moshi anata ga seiyō fū no yado-ya (w)o o-konomi de⁸⁹ nakereba,⁸⁹ Amanoya to iu¹⁵ furui ii yado-ya ga gozaimasū.

¹⁰ Amanoya wa koko kara tōi desū ka?

Takūshī de o-ide ni nareba, asoko ni mieru⁹⁰ tatemono⁸⁴ ga Amanoya de gozaimasū kara, hichi fun gurai de mairemashō.⁹⁰

Arigatō gozaimashita.

I beg your pardon, but do you know which hotel in this town is the best?

I don't know very well, but if you like a western style hotel, Grand Hotel is the newest and the largest. If you don't want a western style hotel, the Amano is a good old inn.

Is the Amano far from here?

If you go by taxi, since the Amano is the building you can see over there, one can go in about seven minutes time.

Thank you very much.

At the Hotel

¹⁵ Bantō San, heya ga arimasū ka?

Hai, zashiki ga hitoma to shinshitsu ga gozaimasū. Sangai⁶¹ ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Shi kai ga yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Hā, sangai no hō (w)o negaimasū, shikashi ²⁰ shizuka na heya ga hoshii desū kara, michi ni mukatte i-⁵⁶nai heya (w)o kudasai.

Hai, kashikomarimashita.

Ima o-me ni kakemasū kara, soshite uwazōri wa kochira ni gozaimasū kara, dōzo kutsu ²⁵ (w)o kore ni hakikaete o-agari kudasai.

Kono heya wa taihen kokoromochi no ii heya desū ne. Zembu no heya wa niwa ni men shite⁵⁰ imasū shi, soshite takūsan no hana ya ki ga me no shita ni¹⁴ miemasū.

³⁰ Goran no tōri, kono heya wa jun Nihon fū de gozaimasū kara, shindai wa gozaimasen,⁴⁹ keredomo o-furo to benjo wa kono tsugi no heya ni gozaimasū.

Arigatō gozaimasū. Kore wa taisō ōkikūte,⁴³

³⁵ akaru-sō⁶⁵ no heya desū ga ikūra desū ka?

Hitoban jū yen desū ga issūkan nara, go jū yen de, hito tsuki ga hyakū hichi jū go yen de gozaimasū. Dono gurai o-tomari no tsūmori⁷² desū ka?

⁴⁰ Issūkan kurai o-jama³⁸ ni narimashō. Jochū ni watakūshi no nimotsū (w)o motte kite kureru³² yō ni itte kudasai.

Clerk, do you have any rooms?

Yes, there is a living room and a bedroom. Do you prefer the third or the fourth floor?

Oh, I see. I should like the third floor, but as I want a quiet room, please give me a room that doesn't face the road (street).

Yes, gladly.

Since I'll show it to you now, and as here are some slippers, please change your shoes to these and go up.

This room is a very pleasant room, isn't it? The whole room faces the garden and besides one can see lots of flowers and trees, and such things under his eyes.

As you see, since this room is genuine Japanese style, there is no bed, but the bath and toilet are in this next room.

Thank you. This is a very large and bright looking room. How much is it?

It's ten yen per night, but if (you take it) for one week, it's fifty yen; by the month it's one hundred seventy-five yen. About how long do you intend to stay?

I'll stay about a week. Please tell the maid to kindly bring my luggage.

- Daidokoro wa mada aite⁹¹ imasū ka? Is the kitchen still open?
 O-ki-no-dokū sama desū ga, ima wa mō I'm very sorry but, it's already closed now.
 45 shimatte⁹¹ imasū.
 De wa, watakūshi wa kanari tsukarete Well then, I'm quite tired, so can I take a
 imasū ga, sugu furo ga toremashō⁹⁰ ka? bath right now?
 Hai, moshi o-tsukare nareba, sekken ya Yes, if you are tired, soap and towels are in
 tenugui wa furoba ni gozaimasū ga yukata the bathroom and, as the maid will bring up
 50 wa ima jochū ga motte agarimasū³⁷ kara, a bathrobe, please change and take (your)
 o-kikae ni natte,⁴⁴ o-furo (w)o o-tori kudasai. bath.
 Okūsan, o-yu³⁸ no o-kagen wa ikaga⁷³ de Madam, how is the temperature of the hot
 gozaimasū ka? water?
 A, sūkoshi atsu-sugiru yō da⁶⁵ kara, tsu- Oh, it seems a little too hot; so please add
 55 metai mizu (w)o tashite kudasai. some cold water.

Exercises

Kono machi de dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii n' desū ka? Yokū shirimasen.

Which is the best hotel in this town? I really don't know.

Kono machi de dono yado-ya ga ichiban atarashii n' desū ka? Yokū shirimasen.

Kono atari de dono ryōriya ga ichiban ii n' desū ka? Zonjimasen.

Bentendōri de dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii n' desū ka? Shirimasen.

Kagetsū to Komatsū de wa dochira ga ii n' desū ka?

Watakushi wa Beikoku-jin desū kara, sonna koto wa shirimasen.

Kono machi de dono shatsu-ya ga ichiban ii n' desū ka?

Go-zonji desū ka? Iie, shirimasen.

Do you know? No, I don't know.

Anata wa tomodachi ga Nippon e kono aida kimashita koto (w)o shitte imasū ka? Iie, shirimasen.

Anata ga Nippon go ga dekiru to wa shirimasen deshita.

Anata wa Matsumoto San (w)o go-zonji desū ka? Iie, ano kata (w)o shitte imasen.

Ano onna no kata wa ano Beikoku no heishi (w)o go-zonji deshō ka? Iie, go-zonji de nai deshō.

Seiyōfū no hoteru de gozaimasū ka? Nihon-fū no yado-ya ga o-sūki de gozaimasū ka?

Do you want a western-style hotel or would you like a Japanese-style inn?

Seiyōfū no ryōriya ga o-sūki desū ka? Nippon-fū no ryōriya de gozaimasū ka?

Ryōri wa Nippon-fū ni shite kudasai.

Hakurai no kiji no hō ga o-sūki desū ka? Nippon no kiji no hō ga o-sūki desū ka?

Yōfukū de gozaimasū ka? Kimono ga o-sūki de gozaimasū ka?

Nihon-fū no tatemono ga o-sūki desū ka? Seiyōfu no tatemono ga o-sūki desū ka?



Moshi anata ga seiyōfū no hoteru ga o-sūki nareba, Gūrando Hoteru ga ichiban atarashikūte ōkiū gozaimasū.

If you would like a western style hotel, Grand Hotel is the newest and the largest.

Moshi anata ga Nihon-fū no yado-ya (w)o o-konomi nareba, Amanoya ga gozaimasū.

Moshi anata ga takūsan o-agari ni nara-nakereba sugu o-naka ga sūkimashō.

Moshi anata ga tegami (w)o o-kaki ni nara-nai nareba, deru koto wa dekimasen deshō.

Moshi anata ga sore (w)o katakana de kaite kudasaimasureba, watakūshi wa wakarimashō.

Moshi sore ga dekiagarimasureba, motte kite kudasai.

Moshi anata ga o-ide ni naru koto ga o-sūki nareba, dōzo o-ide kudasai.

Moshi watakūshi ga sono tegami (w)o kakeba, anata wa Takahashi San e motte ikimashō ka?

Moshi watakūshi ga kono tegami (w)o kaka-nakereba, tomodachi wa koko e kyō kimashō.

Moshi anata ga Nippon no hikōki (w)o goran ni nareba, watakūshi ni sō itte kudasai.

Moshi anata ga Takahashi San (w)o goran ni nara-nakereba, hayakū kaette kudasai.

Moshi ano kata ga kaimono ni ikeba, watakūshi wa ano hito to issho ni ikimashō.

Watakūshi no kanai ga kyō depāto de shatsū (w)o kaeba, watakūshi wa dekae-nakūte mo ii deshō.

Moshi watakūshi no otōsan wa kutsushita (w)o kawa-nakereba, watakūshi wa Takahima-ya e ika-nakereba narimasen.

Gūrando Hoteru ga ichiban atarashikūte, ōkii tatemono de gozaimasū.

Grand Hotel is the newest and it is a big building.

Kono kutsu wa shirokūte kirei desū.

Ano hana wa, tobi-iro de, chiisai desū.

Ano ōkikūte atarashii tatemono wa Gūrando Hoteru desū.

Watakūshi no bōshi wa chiisakūte kuroi n' desū.

Moshi anata ga seiyōfū no yado-ya o-konomi de nakereba, Amanoya ga gozaimasū.

If you don't want a western style hotel, there is the Amanoya.

Moshi anata ga Nihon shokū ga o-konomi de gozaimasureba, Komatsū no ryōriya ga gozaimasū.

Moshi anata no Nippon no tomodachi ga Shina-meshi (w)o o-konomi de nakereba, Kagetsū wa Nippon-fū no ryōriya desū.

Moshi anata ga ima haraitaku nakereba, uchikin dake de mo yoroshiū gozaimasū.

Moshi anata ga ashita kitaku nakereba, dōzo watakūshi ni sō itte kudasai.

Amanoya to iu furui ii yado-ya ga gozaimasū.

There is a good old inn called Amanoya.

Kono tatemono ga Takashima-ya to iu depāto desū.

Ima asoko de hanashite iru hito wa Tanaka San to iu kata desū.

Kore wa nan to iu yasai desū ka?

Sore wa ninjin to iu yasai desū.

Takahashi San to iu kata wa doko ni imasū ka?

Anata ga depāto e ittara, Matsumoto to iu bantō ni watakūshi no shatsu no koto (w)o kiite kudasai.

Amanoya wa koko kara tōi desū ka? Moshi takūshī de oide nareba, hichi fun kan gurai de mairemashō.

Is the Amanoya far from here? If you go by taxi, you can go in about seven minutes.

Kagetsū wa koko kara tōi desū ka? Moshi jinrikisha de o-ide ni nareba, jippun kan gurai de ikemashō.

Takashima-ya wa Komatsu kara tōi desū ka? Moshi anata ga aruite o-ide ni nareba, jū go fun kan gurai de ikemashō.

Anata wa Nippon go ga kakemasū ka? Hai, keredomo katakana dake sūkoshi kakemasū.

Can you write Japanese? Yes, but I can only write a little in katakana.

Anata wa Fūransū go ga yomemasū ka? Iie, sūkoshi mo yomemasen.

Watakūshi wa Nippon go wa hanasemasen.

Ima dekakeru koto ga dekimasū ka?

Watakūshi wa ano budōshu wa nomemasen deshita.

Takashima-ya de shima no shatsu ga kaemashō ka? Tabun kaemashō.

Asoko ni mieru tatemono wa gakkō desū.

Heya ga arimasū ka? Hai, zashiki ga hito ma to shinshitsū ga gozaimasū.

Do you have any rooms? Yes, there is a parlor and a bedroom.

Heya ga aite* imasū ka? Ni kai ni ii heyga ga fūta ma gozaimasū.

Shinshitsū ga iku ma irimasū ka? Shinshitsu ga mi ma hoshii desū.

Zashiki to shinshitsū (w)o o-nozomi de gozaimasū ka?

Iie, shinshitsū dake hoshii desū.

Shinshitsū (w)o hito ma misete kudasai.

Nan gai ga o-sūki desū ka? Shita (w)o negaimasū.

Which floor do you like? I would like the first floor.

Nan gai ga o-sūki desū ka? Ni kai (w)o negaimasū.

Nan gai ga o-sūki desū ka? Go kai ga sūki desū.

Nan gai ga o-sūki desū ka? Rokkai ga sūki desū.

Nan gai ga o-sūki desū ka? Hachi kai ga sūki desū.

Ano tatemono ni wa nan gai arimasū ka?

How many floors are there in that building?

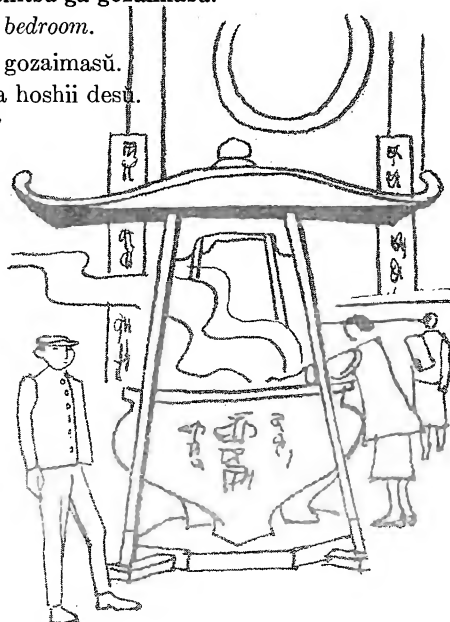
Ano tatemono ni wa hachi kai arimasū.

Watakūshi no jimusho wa san gai desū.

Amanoya ni wa shi kai arimasū.

Ano tatemono no takasa wa dono gurai arimasū ka?

Hyakū go jisshakū gurai deshō.



Shizuka na heya ga hoshii desū.

I want a quiet room.

Motto ōkii heya ga hoshii desū.

Kono yado-ya de ichiban ōkii heya ga hoshii desū.

Motto chiisai heya ga hoshii desū.

Motto akarui heya ga hoshii desū.

Michi ni mukatte i-nai heya (w)o kudasai.

Please give me a room which does not face the street.

Michi ni mukatte iru heya (w)o kudasai.

Niwa ni mukatte iru heya (w)o kudasai.

Watakūshi ga Tōkiō ni ita toki ni wa, ano tatemono ni mukatte iru heya ni sunde imashita.

Michi ni mukatte i-nai heya (w)o bantō ni negaimashita.

Heya (w)o ima o-me ni kakemashō.

I'll show you the room now.

Watakūshi no katta hon (w)o ima o-me ni kakemashō.

Watakūshidomo no niwa (w)o ima o-me ni kakemashō.

Watakūshi no atarashii yōfuku (w)o ima o-me ni kakemashō.

Okāsan kara moratta tokei (w)o ima o-me ni kakemashō.

Dōzo kutsu (w)o kore ni hakikaete kudasai.

Please change your shoes to these.

Kono atarashii zubon ni hakikaete kudasai.

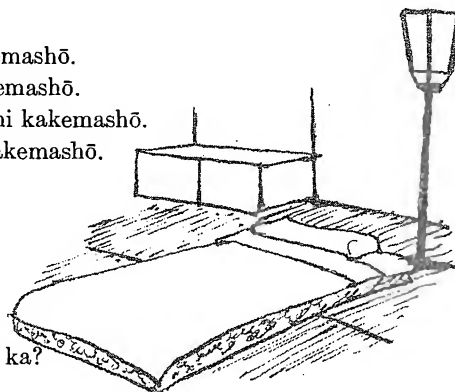
Kono cha-iro no kutsu ni hakikaete kudasai.

Kono uwazōri ni hakikaete kudasai.

Anata wa kesa kutsushita (w)o hakikaemashita ka?

Kono yukata ni kikaete kudasai.

Dōzo kono yōfuku ni kikaete kudasai.



Kyō wa kokoromochi ga ii desū ka? Hai, taihen ii kokoromochi desū.

Are you feeling fine to-day? Yes, I feel very fine.

Kore wa taihen kokoromochi no ii heya desū.

Kore wa amari kokoromochi no ii shinshitsu ja arimasen.

Kinō wa kokoromochi ga yokū nai deshita.

Ano hito wa kokoromochi ga ii to itte imashita.

Zembu no mado wa niwa ni men shite imasū.

The whole window faces the garden.

Zembu no mado wa michi ni men shite imasen.

Fūtatsu no mado dake niwa ni men shite imasū.

Zembu no heya wa higashi ni men shite imasen.

Zembu no tenugui wa yogorete imasū.

Takūsan no hana ga me no shīta ni miemasū.

You can see a lot of flowers under your eyes.

Takahashi San no niwa ni takūsan no ki ga miemasū.

Asoko ni ōki na tatemono ga miemasū.

Densha no mado kara takūsan no hito ga miemasū.

Heya no mado kara michi ga me no shīta ni miemasū.

Go-zonji no tōri, kono ryōriya wa jun Nippon-fū de gozaimasū kara, saji ya hōchō ya nikusashi wa amari tsukaimasen.

As you know, since this restaurant is pure Japanese style, they don't use spoons or knives or forks very much.

Goran no tōri, kono yado-ya wa jun Nippon-fū de gozaimasū kara, shindai wa gozaimasen.

Goran no tōri, kono heya wa jun Nippon-fū de gozaimasū kara, isu wa gozaimasen.

Goran no tōri, kono ryōriya wa jun Nippon-fū de gozaimasū kara, hashi (w)o tsukaimasū.

Go-zonji no tōri, kono hōteru wa jun seiyōfū de gozaimasū kara, heya ni wa mina shindai ga arimasū.

O-furo to benjo wa kono tsugi no heya ni gozaimasū kara, dōzo go-zuii ni o-negai itashimasū.

As the bathroom and toilet are in this next room, feel free to do as you please.

O-furo wa migi no hō ni gozaimasū kara, dōzo go-zuii ni o-negai itashimasū.

O-cha wa koko ni oite mairimasū kara, dōzo go-zuii ni o-negai itashimasū.

Shimbun wa koko ni gozaimasū kara, go-zuii ni goran kudasai.

O-kashi wa koko e motte mairimashita kara, go-zuii ni o-negai itashimasū.

Kore wa taisō ōkikūte akaru-sō na heya desū.

This is a very big room and it seems light.

Sore wa taisō ōkikūte oishii-sō na o-kashi desū.

Kore wa taisō kirei de ōkii heya desū.

Kore wa akarukūte kirei na shinshitsu desū.

Kono shima wa hade desū kara, tomodachi ga sūki-sō na shatsu desū.

Hītoban jū yen desū ga issshūkan nara, go jū yen de gozaimasū.

It is ten yen for one night, but it is fifty yen per week.

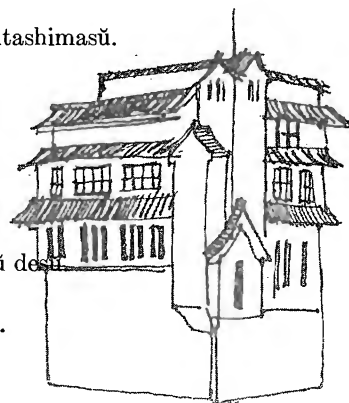
Hītoban jū yen desū ga fūtaban nara, jū go yen de gozaimasū.

Issshūkan go jū yen desū ga ni shūkan nara, hachi jū go yen de gozaimasū.

Kono jidōsha chin wa ichi jikan ni yen desū ga ni jikan nara, san yen go jissen desū.

Kono jidōsha wa ichi nichī ni jū yen desū ga fūtsūka nara, san jū go yen de, han nichī wa jū go yen de gozaimasū.

Kono heya wa hito tsuki hyakū yen desū ga ichi nen nara, sen yen de gozaimasū.



Dono gūrai o-tomari no tsūmori desū ka? Isshūkan gūrai o-jama ni narimashō.

How long do you intend to stay? I'll probably stay about one week.

Dono gūrai o-tomari no tsūmori desū ka? Ni shūkan gūrai o-jama ni narimashō.

Dono gūrai o-tomari deshita ka? Watakūshi wa Amanoya ni fūta tsuki no aida o-jama ni natte imashita.

Ano kata wa dono gūrai koko ni tomatte imashita ka? Ano kata wa Gūrando Hoteru ni mi tsuki no aida tomatte imashita.

Ano kata wa Amanoya ni yokka no aida tomatte imasū.

Dono gūrai Tōkiō ni o-sumi ni natte imasū ka? Watakūshi wa Tōkiō ni ku nen kan sunde imasū.

Jochū ni watakūshi no nimotsū (w)o motte kite kureru yō ni itte kudasai.

Please tell the maid to kindly bring me my baggage.

Jochū ni watakūshi no nimotsū (w)o heya e motte itte kureru yō ni itte kudasai.

Jinrikisha-ya ni kono kozutsumi (w)o Takahashi San no o-taku e motte itte kureru yō ni itte kudasai.

Jochū ni watakūshi no heya e mizu (w)o ippai motte kuru yō ni itte kudasai.

Jochū ni kono yogoreta sentaku mono (w)o sentaku-ya ni watasu yō ni itte kudasai.

Jochū ni watakūshi no heya e kuru yō ni itte kudasai.

Tomodachi ga kitara, watakūshi no heya e kuru yō ni itte kudasai.

Daidokorō wa mada aite imasū ka? Iie, ima wa mō shimatte imasū.

Is the kitchen still open? No, it's already closed (now).

Mado wa mada aite imasū ka? Iie, ima wa mō shimatte imasū.

Matsumoto San wa mada anata no uchi ni imasū ka? Iie, mō kaerimashita.

Anata wa Nihon go (w)o mada manande imasū ka? Iie, ima wa manande imasen.

Tomodachi wa mada* kimasen ka? Hai, mada kimasen.

Anata wa mada hiruhan (w)o tabemasen ka? Hai, mada tabemasen.

Moshi o-arai ni narimasureba, sekken ya tenugui wa kochira ni gozaimasū.

If you are going to wash, here are towels and soap and so forth.

Moshi o-naka ga o-sūki nareba, gohan* (w)o agemashō.

Moshi musūko San ga o-konomi de nakereba, shikata ga gozaimasen.

Moshi nodo ga o-kawaki nareba, mizu (w)o sashiagemashō.

Moshi anata ga tegami (w)o kaki nareba, kami to pēn (w)o motte mairimashō.

Moshi anata ga yōfuku (w)o kaitai nareba, hoka no yōfuku-ya e ikimashō.

Sekken to tenugui (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Jochū ni sekken to tenugui (w)o motte kuru yō ni itte kudasai.

Sekken (w)o hito hako moraitai desū.

Kono uwagi (w)o kite kudasai.

Please put on this coat.

Kono shatsū (w)o kite kudasai.

Kono yōfukū (w)o kite kudasai.
 Cha-iro no yōfukū (w)o kite, dekakemashita.
 Yukata ni o-kikae kudasai.
 Kono kuroi kutsu (w)o haite kudasai.
 Sono kutsushita (w)o hakitakū arimasen.

Bōshi (w)o kaburi nasai.

Put on your hat.

Ano nakaore-bōshi (w)o kabutte kudasai.
 Sono toriuchi-bōshi wa kabura-nai de kudasai.
 Kono kuroi nakaore-bōshi (w)o o-kaburi kudasai.

Kutsū (w)o nuide kudasai.

Please take off your shoes.

Anata no yōfuku (w)o nuide kudasai.
 Ano hito wa bōshi (w)o nugitakū nai to iimashita.
 Yōgoreta kutsushita (w)o nugitai desū.

Danna Sama, o-yu no o-kagen wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka? Sūkoshi atsu-sugimasū.

Sir, how is the temperature of the water? It's a little too hot.

Kono heya wa atsu-suigimasū.

Kono mizu wa amari tsumetakū arimasen kara, motto tsumetai no (w)o motte kite kudasai.

Kono o-cha wa sūkoshi tsumetakū narimashita.

San ni go (w)o tasu to, hachi ni narimasū.

If you add five to three, it becomes eight. (Five and three are eight.)

Rokū ni shi (w)o tasu to, ikutsū ni narimasū ka? Jū ni narimasū.

Jū san ni go (w)o tasu to, jū ku ni narimasū ka? Iie, sō ja arimasen. Jū hachi ni narimasū.

Sūkoshi o-nagashi itashimashō ka? Iya, sore ni wa oyobimasen.

Shall I perform the bath service for you? No, don't bother about that.

Sūkoshi o-machi itashimashō ka? Iya, sore ni wa oyobimasen.

Asahan (w)o anata no heya e motte agarimashō ka? Iya, sore ni wa oyobimasen.

Mizu (w)o motte mairimashō ka? Iya, sore ni wa oyobimasen.

Matsumoto San no o-taku made o-okuri itashimashō ka? Iya, sore ni wa oyobimasen.



13

Dai Jū San K(w)a (Lesson XIII)

- Ano kusuri no bin wa kowasareimashita⁹² ka? Was that medicine bottle broken? Where is it?
 Doko ni arimasu ka? It should be beside the bed.
 Shindai no soba ni aru hazu⁶⁸ desu. Putting it on the edge of the table like this is dangerous.
 Konna²⁸ tsukue no hashi ni oite wa abunai desu. I can't find the phone book so what happened to it?
 Denwachō ga mitsukarimasen⁹² ga dō⁷³ sareta⁹² n' deshō ka? Is that so? Then, shall I go borrow the neighbor's phone book?
 Sō de gozaimasu ka? De wa, tonari no denwachō (w)o karite mairimashō³⁷ ka? Please have my elder sister phone the doctor. I couldn't sleep last night the whole night through.
 10 Dōzo ane San ni o-isha San e denwa (w)o kakesasete⁹³ kudasai. Watakushi wa sakuban hitoban-jū⁹⁴ neraremasen⁹² deshita.

At the Telephone

- Moshi. Moshi. Motomachi no sen roppyaku san jū yo ban e. Hello. Hello. (Give me) Motomachi 1634.
 15 Motomachi no sen roppyaku san jū yo ban desu ka? Motomachi 1634?
 Hai, sō desu. Yes, that's right.
 Ainiku anata no bangō wa fusagatte imasu kara, sūkoshi o-machi kudasai. Ima o-de ni narimashita⁴⁰ kara, ryōkin (w)o irete, Unfortunately, as your line is busy now, please wait a little. Since I have the connection through now, please put in the money (phone charge) and (go ahead and talk).
 o-hanashi kudasai. Yes, thanks. I'm putting it in now. (Here it goes.)
 Hai, arigatō. Ima iremasu yo!⁸⁸
- Moshi. Moshi. Hello. Hello.
 Moshi. Moshi. Anata wa Takagi San no Hello. Hello. Is this Dr. (Mr.) Takagi's residence?
 25 o-taku desu ka? Yes, it is.
 Hai, sō de gozaimasu. I am Miss Yamada.
 Watakushi wa Yamada de gozaimasu ga, Is the doctor in?
 o-isha San wa o-ide de gozaimasu ka? Yes, he is.
 Hai, irasshaimasu. Please let me speak (to him).
 30 Chotto watakushi ni hanasasete⁹³ kudasai. Doctor, Miss Yamada is calling on the phone.
 O-isha San, Yamada San kara o-denwa de gozaimasu. Hello. Hello. Are you Miss Yamada? I am Dr. Takagi. Is there something I can do for you? (Do you have any business with me?)
 Moshi. Moshi. Anata wa Yamada San desu ka? Watakushi wa Takagi desu ga nani ka? Yes, Dr. Takagi, (the condition of) my sister's illness seems a little worse and we would like you to examine her once more, so
 35 yōji ga arimasu ka? how would it suit your convenience?
 Hai, Takagi San, imōto no byōki no yōsu ga sūkoshi warui yō de, mō ichi-do go-shinsatsū (w)o o-negai shitai n' desu⁵⁵ ga anata no go-tsugō wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka?

40 Ja, sugu itte mite agemashō.⁸⁶
O-machi shīte orimasū. Sayōnara.

Very well, I'll try to come at once.
We'll be waiting for you. Goodbye.

Hanako San, dō iu⁷³ ambai desū ka?
Hai, Takagi San, sakuban wa taihen na
zutsū ga shīte,⁵⁰ neraremasen⁹² deshita no
45 de,²⁹ kesa wa nedoko kara okiraremasen.⁹²
Ane San ni ano kusuri (w)o nomasarema-
shita⁹³ ga mada kibun wa yokū arimasen.
Mune ya kata ya ude ya karada-jū⁹⁴ ga
itande, komatte orimasū.

50 Dono hen ga ichiban itai n' desū ka⁷⁵ misete
kudasai.

Kono hen desū ga dōzo amari sawara-nai
de kudasai.³²

Chotto kuchi (w)o akete, shita (w)o dashite
55 kudasai. Ima netsū (w)o hakatte mimashō.
Sore kara, dōzo sūkoshi migi no hō e yoko ni
natte, fukakū²⁸ iki (w)o sutte kudasai.

Kondo wa iki (w)o haki-dashite²⁷ kudasai.

Anata wa kaze (w)o hiite ita no ni,⁹⁵ sūkoshi
60 muri (w)o shita to miete, haien ni natta yō
ni omowaremasū.⁹² Kūsuri (w)o agemasū
kara, ni jikan-goto ni hito saji-zutsu⁵³ nonde
kudasai. Sō sureba, shi-go nichu no uchi ni
wa naorimashō.

Miss Hanako, how are you getting along?
Well, Dr. Takagi, last night I had a bad
headache and because I couldn't sleep, this
morning I can't get out of bed. My elder
sister made me drink that medicine, but I
don't feel well yet. My chest, shoulder, arm,
and my whole body hurts and I am suffering.

Please show me where it hurts the most.

It's this part, so please don't touch it much.

Please open your mouth a moment and put
out your tongue. Now I'm going to take
your temperature. After that, please turn
on your right side and take a deep breath.

This time please breathe out.

Although you got a cold, it seems you took
little care and it looks as if it has become the
grippe. I'll give you some medicine, so
please take (drink) one teaspoonful every
two hours. If you do that, inside of four or
five days you will get better.

Exercises

Ano kusuri no bin wa kowasaremashta ka?

Was that medicine bottle broken?

Ano isu wa dare ni kowasaremashta ka?

Watakūshi no musūko ni sore wa kowasaremashta.

Watakūshidomo no denwa wa kowasaremashta kara dōzo naoshite moratte kudasai.

Ano otoko no ko wa imōto ni kashi (w)o taberarete komatte imasū.

Ano otoko no ko wa tabako (w)o nonde iru no (w)o otōsan ni miraremashta.

Watakūshi no tokei wa dare ka ni toraremashta.

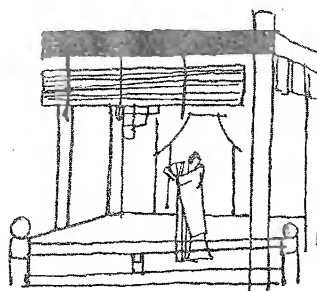
Jochū wa shujin ni yobaremashta.

Shindai no soba ni aru hazu desū.

It should be beside the bed.

Tsukue no soba ni aru hazu desū.

Tsukue no shita ni aru hazu desū.



Tsukue no ue ni aru hazu desū.

Hako no naka ni aru hazu desū.

Furoba ni aru hazu desū.

Sono tsukue (w)o shindai no soba ni oka-nai de kudasai.

Tsukue no ue ni oite kudasai.

Tsukue no shīta ni oka-nai de kudasai.

Empitsu wa anata no mae ni arimasū; anata no ushiro ni wa arimasen.

Kyō koko e kuru hazu no tomodachi wa mada kite imasen.

My friend who is supposed to come today has not come yet.

Ashita anata ga iku hazu no tokoro wa doko desū ka?

Tomodachi wa shitte iru hazu desū ga wasureta to iimashita.

Tanaka San wa watakūshi no uchi e gogo ichi ji ni tsuku hazu deshita.

Konna tsukue no hashi ni oite wa abunai desū.

Putting it like this on the edge of the table is dangerous.

Konna mado no soba ni oite wa abunai desū.

Sonna mado no chikakū e iku to, abunai desū.

Ano jidōsha wa amari furui kara, abunai desū.

Sonna takai tokoro kara tonde wa abunai desū.

Denwachō ga mitsukarimasen deshita ga dō sareta n' deshō ka?

I can't find the telephone book. What was done with it?

Kutsu ga mitsukarimasen ga dō sareta n' deshō ka?

Watakūshi no bōshi ga mitsukarimasen ga dō sareta n' deshō ka?

Tomodachi ga mitsukarimasen.

Tsugi no heya de ano kata no chokki (w)o mitsukemashita.*

O-kashi (w)o tabete ita ko wa okāsan ni mitsukeraremashita.

Konna koto wa dare ni saremashita ka?

Ano warui ko ni saremashita.

Tonari no denwachō (w)o karite mairimashō ka?

Shall I go borrow the neighbor's phone book?

Tomodachi kara hon (w)o karite kite agemashō ka?

Watakūshi wa empitsu ga mitsukarimasen ga anata no (w)o karite mo ii n' desū ka? Hai, tsukatte mo ii n' desū.

Ane San kara kami (w)o karite kimashita.

Otōsan kara o-kane (w)o karite kudasai.

Dōzo ane San ni o-isha San e denwa (w)o kakesasete kudasai.

Please have my elder sister phone the doctor.

Dōzo Takahashi San ni ano tegami (w)o kakasete kudasai.

Watakūshi wa Hanako San ni kono shatsū (w)o kawasasemashita.

Dōzo jochū ni koko e kosasete kudasai.

Tsugi no Suiyōbi ni sentaku-ya ni sentaku mono (w)o motte kosasete kudasai.

Jochū ni kaimono ni ikasemashō.

Dōzo Takagi San e denwa (w)o kakete kudasai.

Tomodachi e denwa (w)o kaketai desū. Ima anata no o-denwa (w)o tsukatte mo yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Chotto denwa (w)o watakūshi ni kakesasete kudasai.

Watakushi wa sakuban hitoban-jū neraremasen deshita.

I could not go to sleep the whole night last night.

Watakushi wa ichi nichijū deraremasen deshita.

Dōzo koko ni nete kudasai; shinsatsū (w)o itashimasū kara.

Dōzo tatte kudasai; shinsatsū (w)o itashimasū kara.

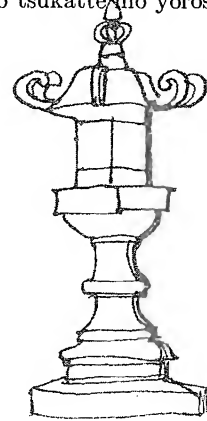
Mai ban yokū neraremasen.

Anata wa sakuban yokū neraremasen ka?

Ano sashimi wa taberaremasen deshita.

Ano kutsu wa sema-sugiru kara, hakemasen.

Ano yōfuku wa hade-sugiru kara, kiraremasen.



Moshi! Moshi! Motomachi no sen roppyakū san jū yo ban e. Motomachi no sen roppyakū san jū yo ban desū ka?

Hello! Hello! Give me Motomachi 1634. Motomachi 1634?

Moshi! Moshi! Kyōbashi no go hyakū rei rokū ban e. Kyōbashi no go hyakū rokū ban desū ka?

Moshi! Moshi! Honjō no sen ni hyakū jū ichi ban e. Honjō no sen ni hyakū jū ichi ban desū ka?

Dōzo Takagi San e denwa (w)o kakete kudasai. Bangō wa Kanda no ni hyakū jū rokū ban desū kara, sugu kuru yō ni hanashite kudasai.

Ainikū anata no bangō wa ima fusagatte imasū, sūkoshi o-machi kudasai.

Sorry, the line is busy now, please wait a minute.

Anata no denwa no bangō wa nan ban desū ka?

Watakūshi no denwa no bangō wa Motomachi ni hyakū yo ban desū. Dōzo ashita no ban rokū ji ni watakūshi ni denwa (w)o kakete kudasai.

Benjo wa ima fusagatte imasū.

Ainikū zembu no heya wa ima fusagatte imasū; dōzo ashita no asa kite mite kudasai.

Watakūshi wa jū ji ni deru tsumori desū.

I intend to leave at ten o'clock.

O-ki-no dokū Sama desū ga, imōto wa kusuri (w)o kai ni dete imasū.

Kono tsugi no basū wa nan ji ni demasū ka?

Kinō anata wa uchi (w)o nan ji ni demashita ka?

Ryōkin (w)o irete kudasai.*Please put in the (charge) money.*

Ano hako ni kane (w)o irete kudasai.

Doko e watakūshi no tegami (w)o iremashita ka? Tsukue no ue ni okimashita.

Ryōkin (w)o iremashō.

Chotto watakūshi ni hanasasete kudasai.*Please let me speak (to him) a moment.*

Ano tegami (w)o ano kata ni kakase-nai de kudasai.

Ano mise no nedan wa taka-sugiru kara, jochū ni ano mise de wa kawase-nai de kudasai.

Ano ko ni Nippon shokū (w)o tabesasete kudasai.

Ano kata ga anata ni hanashita koto (w)o kikasete kudasai.

O-isha San, Yamada San kara o-denwa de gozaimasū.*Doctor, Mr. Yamada is on the phone.*

Takahashi San, Matsumoto San kara o-denwa de gozaimasū.

Anata wa donata de gozaimasū ka? Watakūshi wa Takagi desū. Sūkoshi o-machi kudasai.

Sugu o-yobi itashimasū kara. Yamada San, Takagi San kara o-denwa de gozaimasū.

Chotto gomen kudasai. Buraun San, Sūmisū San kara o-denwa de gozaimasū. Arigatō gozaimasū. Sugu mairimasū.

Denwa wa donata kara desū ka?

Tomodachi kara denwa ga kakarimashita.

Dare ka kara denwa ga kakarimashita ka?

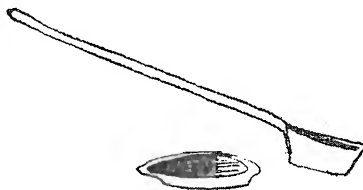
Nani ka yōji ga arimasū ka?*Do you have any business with me?*

Watakūshi wa kyō takūsan yōji ga arimasū kara, o-ki-no-dokū desū ga anata no uchi e iku koto ga dekimasen.

Donna yōji de machi e ikitai n' desū ka?

Kesa wa nani mo yōji ga arimasen kara, yukkuri hanashite irasshatte kudasai.

Ashita nani mo yōji ga nakereba, issho ni kembutsū ni ikimashō ka?

**Imōto no byōki no yōsu ga sūkoshi warui yō desū.***The condition of my sister's illness seems a little bad.*

Anata no okūsan no byōki no yōsu wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka?

Anata wa itsū kara byōki ni o-nari nasaremashita ka?

Isha ni mite moratte imasū kara, byōki no yōsu wa sūkoshi ii yō desū.

Anata no tomodachi no byōki no yōsu wa ikaga de gozaimasū ka?

Takahashi San no musuko San wa byōki da sō desū.

Go-shinsatsū (w)o o-negai shītai n' desū.

I want to ask you for an examination.

Go-shinsatsu (w)o o-negai itashimashīta.

Watakūshi no byōki no yōsu ga warui yō deshīta kara, o-isha San ni shinsatsū (w)o negai-mashīta.

Anata ga byōki nara, Takagi San ni shinsatsū (w)o shīte morattara ii deshō.

O-ki-no-dokū Sama desū ga kono gogo made wa shinsatsū (w)o shīte ageru koto ga deki-masen.

Anata no go-tsugō wa ikaga de gozaimashō ka?

How does that suit your convenience?

Anata no go-tsugō wa nan ji ga ichiban ii deshō ka?

Kyō Takagi San wa tsugō ga deki-nakatta kara, hoka no isha (w)o yoba-nakereba nari-masen deshīta.

Watakūshi no tsugō wa amari yokū arimasen.

Anata wa komban tsugō ga yō goraimasū ka? Iie, tsugō ga warui desu.

Anata no go-tsugō wa komban ii deshō ka?

Komban wa hima* desu ka? Iie, hima ja arimasen.

Dekiru dake hayakū o-ide kudasai.

Please come as soon as possible.

Hachi ji made ni itte mite agemashō.

Kono gogo mite morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Tomodachi ga byōki ni narimashīta kara, sugu itte mite agemashīta.

Anata wa dono isha ni mite moratte imasū ka?

O-machi shīte orimasū.

We will wait for you.

Mada o-ide ni narimasen kara, o-machi shīte imasū.

Matsumoto San (w)o matte imasū.

Uchi e kaera-nakereba narimasen deshīta kara, o-machi suru koto ga dekimasen deshīta.

Mada tomodachi ga koko e tsukimasen kara, mō matsū koto wa dekimasen.

Dō iu ambai desū ka?

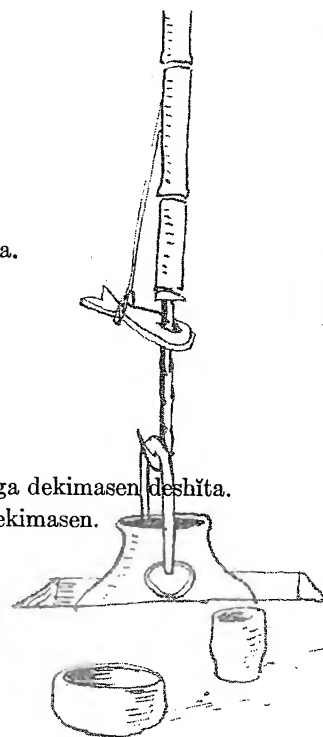
How is your condition?

Karada no ambai wa ikaga desū ka?

O-cha wa ambai yokū demashīta ka?

Ano kata wa dō iu hīto desū ka? Taihen ii hīto desū.

Sore wa dō iu hanashi desū ka? Gakkō no hanashi desū.



Sakuban wa taihen zutsū ga shimashita.

Last night I had a bad headache.

Ima wa taihen zutsū ga shite imasu.

Kinō taihen zutsū ga shimashita ga ima wa yokū narimashita.

Anata wa warui kaze (w)o hikimashita ne?

Sūkoshi zutsū ga shimasu.

Sūkoshi kaze (w)o hikimashita.

Sengetsū haien ni narimashita.

Anata wa haien ni natta koto ga arimasu ka?

Sakuban nemuremasen deshita no de, kesa wa nedoko kara okiraremasen.

Because I could not sleep last night, this morning I can not get up out of bed.

Sakuban nemuremasen deshita no de, ima wa mada kibun ga warui desu.

Sakuban nemuremasen deshita no de, kesa wa taihen tsukarete imasu.

Sakuban neraremasen deshita no de, kusuri (w)o nomimashita.

Sakuban nani mo taberaremasen deshita no de, kesa wa sūkoshi o-naka ga sūkimashita.

Sakuban byōki ni narimashita kara, tegami wa kakemasen deshita.

Sakuban tomodachi ga uchi ni imasen deshita kara, karite kuru koto wa dekimasen deshita.

Ane San ni ano kusuri (w)o nomasaremashta.

I was made to drink that medicine by my sister.

Dōzo mizu (w)o ippai nomasete kudasai.

Imōto ni tamago (w)o tabesasemashita.

Ano ko ni ano nedoko ni nesasemashita.

Ano warui otoko no ko wa watakushi no musuko ni tabako (w)o nomasemashita.

Musume ni anata e komban hachi ji ni denwa (w)o kakesasemasu.

Watakushi no netsu (w)o hakarasete kudasai.

Okāsan ni tamago (w)o tabesaremashta.

Kyō wa kibun wa ikaga desu ka?

How do you feel to-day?

Chikai uchi ni kibun ga yokū narimasu.

Go-kibun ga warui sō desu ne.

Sore (w)o suru kibun ni naremasen.

Mune ya kata ya ude ga itai n' de, komatte imasu.

My chest and shoulder and arm and all hurt me and I am suffering (a great deal).

Mune ga itai n' desu.

Kata ga itai n' de, komatte imasu.

Anata no ude wa itai n' desu ka?

Ano hito wa ude ga itakute komatte iru sō desu.

Watakushi no me ga itai n' desu.

Watakushi no o-naka ga itai n' desu.

Dono hen ga ichiban itai n' desū ka?

Which part hurts the most?

Kono hen ga ichiban itai n' desū ka?

Mune no kono hen ga ichiban itai n' desū.

Ude-jū ga itai n' de, komatte imasū.

Te ga itakūte, komatte imasū.

Watakūshi no kusuri (w)o mitsuketa tokoro wa doko desū ka misasete kudasai.

Please let me see the place where you found my medicine.

Watakūshi ni anata no tokei (w)o misasete kudasai.

Watakūshi ni budōshu (w)o nomasete kudasai.

Musūko ni gyūnyū (w)o nomasemashita.

Ano ko ni nedoko kara okisasete kudasai.

Dōzo kore ni atara-nai de kudasai.

Please don't touch this.

Migi no te ga itai n' desū kara, atara-nai de kudasai.

Ano tsukue no ue ni aru bin ni atara-nai de kudasai.

Kore wa taihen abunai mono desū kara, atara-nai de kudasai.

Kono kūsuri ni wa ano ko ni atarase-nai de kudasai.

Kuchi (w)o akete, shīta (w)o dashite kudasai.

Please open your mouth and put out your tongue.

Nimotsū (w)o akete, kutsu (w)o dashite kudasai.

Ano to (w)o akete, tsugi no heya e haitte mite kudasai.

Mata-nakereba narimasen deshita kara, hon (w)o akete, sūkoshi yonde imashita.

Nimotsū (w)o mina ake-nakereba, are wa mitsukarimasen deshō.

Ano hako kara wa mina dashite kudasai.

Shīta (w)o misete kudasai.

Netsū (w)o hakatte mimashō.

I'll take your temperature. (I'll measure the fever.)

Dōzo netsū (w)o hakatte mite kudasai.

Kono heya no ōkisa (w)o hakatte kudasai.

Mado no hirosa (w)o hakattara san jakū* ni sun arimashita.

Isha wa anata ni netsū ga aru to iimashita ka?

Utsumuki ni nete kudasai.

Please lie face downward.

Agomuki* ni nete kudasai.

Hidari no hō e yoko ni natte kudasai.

Migi no hō e yoko ni natte kudasai.

Mō sūkoshi migi e yotte* kudasai.



Dōzo koshi (w)o magete* kudasai.

Dōzo okite kudasai.

Dōzo nete kudasai.

Dōzo kochira e mukete* kudasai.

Dōzo migi no hō (w)o goran nasai.

Iki (w)o shi-nai de ite kudasai.

Please don't breathe.

Fūkakū iki (w)o suu koto ga dekimasen, amari o-naka ga itai n' desū kara.

Ano hito wa mada kokyū* (w)o shīte imasū ka? Iie, shinimashita.*

Ano hitotachi wa byōki deshita kara, fūkakū iki (w)o suu koto ga dekimasen.

Asoko mizu ga fūkai desū kara, haitte wa ikemasen.

Mizu no fūkasa wa dono gūrai desū ka? Jisshakū gūrai deshō. Desū kara, amari fūkakū arimasen.

Iki (w)o haki-dashite kudasai.

Please breathe out.

Ano ko wa kesa tabeta gohan (w)o haki-dashimashita.

Nonda kūsuri wa haki-dasa-nai de kudasai.

Watakushi wa iki (w)o suru koto ga dekimasen.

Amari isoida kara, iki ga hayakū* narimashita.

Kaze (w)o hiite ita no ni, sūkoshi muri (w)o shita to miemashita.

Although you had a cold, I think you exerted yourself a little too much.

Nippon go ga wakarimasū no ni, wakarimasen to iimashita.

Nihon-shokū ga taihen sūki desū no ni, byōki desū kara, taberu koto ga dekimasen.

Takashima-ya koko chikai desū no ni, naze asoko e ikimasen deshita ka?

Anata wa kaze (w)o hikimashita ka? Hai, sūkoshi muri (w)o shite, omoi kaze (w)o hikimashita.

Muri (w)o shi-nai de kudasai.

Sonna muri na koto itte wa ikemasen.

Hayakū kuru to itta no ni, mada kite imasen.

Haien ni natta yō ni omowaremasū.

I think that it has become pneumonia.

Kaze (v)o hiita yō ni omowaremasū.

Moshi anata ga muri (w)o shi-nakereba, haien ni nara-nakatta deshō.

Tomodachi ga haien ni natta to kikimashita.

Ano hito wa haien wa sugu yokū naru to omowaremasū ka?

Ni jikan goto ni, hito saji-zutsū nonde kudasai.

Please take one teaspoonful every two hours.

Yo jikan goto ni, fūta saji-zutsū nonde kudasai.



Ichijikan goto ni, mizu (w)o ippai-zutsū nonde kudasai.

Nishukan goto ni, watakushi ni tegami (w)o kaite kudasai.

Sanjikan goto ni, misaji no kūsuri (w)o koppu hambun no mizu ni irete nonde kudasai.

Shigo nichi no uchi ni wa naorimashō.

You will probably recover inside of four or five days.

Nisan nichi no uchi ni wa naorimashō.

Taiben byōki deshita ga ikka getsū¹¹⁴ no uchi ni yokū narimashita.

Sōshi nakereba, naorimasen deshō.

Sono kūsuri (w)o noma nakereba, naora-nai deshō.

Nisan ka getsū no uchi ni wa naorimashō to omowaremasū.

Hito tsuki ka futa tsuki no uchi ni wa naorimashō to omoimasū.



14

Dai Jū Shi K(w)a (Lesson XIV)

At the Bank

- O-hayō⁴³ gozaimasū.
Kyō no Amerika no kawase no nedan wa ikūra desū ka?
Ichi doru wa ni yen, ni jū go sen desū.
5 Kono kogitte wa genkin ni kaete morau koto ga dekimasū ka?
Anata wa kono ginkō de torihiki shīte imasū ka?
Hai, torihiki shīte imasū.
10 Sore de wa, kono kogitte ni uragaki (w)o shīte kudasai.
Hai, itashimashō.
Kore wa anata no o-kane desū kara, o-tori kudasai.
15 Tsuide ni, kono ni jū yen satsū (w)o ichi yen satsū to chiisai ginka ni kaete kudasai-masen³² ka?
O-yasui koto desū.
Watakūshi wa kono go jū yen (w)o chokin
20 shīte okitai n' desū ga. . .
Sō desū ka? Sore de wa, dōzo koko kara sambamme no mado e itte, azukete kudasai.
Arigatō gozaimashita.
- Good morning.
What is the American rate of exchange today?
One dollar is two yen, twenty-five sen.
Can you cash this check for me?
Do you have an account with this bank?
Yes, I have.
Very well then, please endorse this check.
Yes, I shall.
Here is your money. (As this is your money, please take it).
By the way, won't you please give me one yen bills and some small change for this twenty yen bill?
It's no trouble at all.
I should like to deposit this fifty yen. . .
You do? Very well then, please go to the third window from here and deposit it.
Thank you.
-
- Mā, Kimura San, shībarakū deshita ne.
25 Sono go wa ikaga desū ka?
Arigatō. Botsū-botsū⁴ yatte imasū.
Dochira e desū ka?
Watakūshi wa ima koko de sūkoshi kane (w)o dashimashita. Kore kara, yūbin-kyokū
30 e itte, Būrajiru ni iru ototo e yūbin kawase de kane (w)o okutte yarō³⁷ to¹⁵ omotte iru tokoro³¹ desū.
Anata no ototo San wa Minami Amerika de nani (w)o shīte irasshaimasū³¹ ka?
35 Ototo no shokugyō wa denki no gishi de, ima ni-san ka⁷⁰ getsū Būrajiru ni imasū⁹⁶ ga raigetsū kara⁴⁵ Arūzenchin e tennin sareru⁹² sō desū.⁶⁵
- My heavens! Mr. Kimura, it's been a long time (since I've seen you). How have you been since then?
So, so, thanks.
Where are you bound for?
I just now drew out a little money here.
Right now I'm going to the post-office, for I intend to send a postal money order to my younger brother in Brazil.
What is your younger brother doing in South America?
My younger brother's occupation is (that of) electrical engineer and he has been in Brazil now two or three months and I hear he is being transferred to Argentina next month.

Sore wa taihen omoshiro-sō⁶⁵ na o-shigoto
desū ne.

Watakushi no musūko mo daigakū (w)o
deru to¹⁵ Minami-Amerika e yukitai to itte
imasū.

De wa, ima kara issho ni yūbin-kyokū made
45 yukimashō ka? Kozutsumi (w)o okuri-dashi,
tegami (w)o kakitome ni shīte, hagaki ya
kitte mo shi-go mai kaitai desū kara.

That certainly seems like very interesting
work.

My son too says that he would like to go to
South America when he is graduated from
the university.

Well, shall we go to the post-office together
now? I want to mail a package, register a
letter and buy four or five post cards and
stamps.

At the Post-Office

Kono Kōbe-yuki no⁸⁴ tegami wa sūkoshi
omo-sugiru to omoimasū ga kitte wa ikūra
50 hara-nakereba narimasen⁵⁷ ka?

Hai, hakatte mite agemashō.

Hikōyūbin ka sokutatsū de okuritai n' desū
ka?

Iie, futsū de yoroshiū gozaimasū.

55 De wa, rokū sen no kitte (w)o hatte kudasai.

Kono kozutsumi (w)o Nagasaki e okuritai
ga ikūra kakarimashō ka?

Naka ni¹⁴ wa nani ga haitte imasū ka?

Hon ga ni satsū haitte imasū. Soshite dōzo
60 jū yen no hoken (w)o kakete⁴² kudasai.

Mina de²² ni jū go sen ni narimasū.⁶⁹

Dōzo o-negai itashimasū.

Sā, ima kara denshin-kyokū e itte, dēmpō
(w)o uchimashitara,⁷⁴ kyō no yōji wa sunde
65 shimaimasū.⁹⁷

I think this letter for Kobe is a little too
heavy, so how much postage (stamps) must
I put on it?

Very well, I'll weigh it for you.

Do you want to send it airmail or special de-
livery?

No, regular (mail) will be all right.

Well then, please put on (stick on) a six-sen
stamp.

I want to send this package to Nagasaki, so
how much will it cost?

What's inside?

It contains two books. And please insure it
for ten yen.

It comes to twenty-five sen all together.

Please take care of it for me.

Well, now I'm going to the telegraph-office
and when I send a telegram, to-day's busi-
ness will be completely finished.

Exercises

O-hayō gozaimasū.

Good morning.

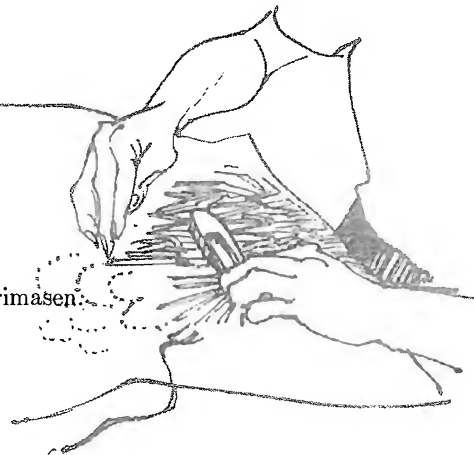
Dōzo asu no asa hayakū kite kudasai.

Ima ika-nakūte mo ii deshō; mada hayai desū kara.

Kesa hayakū okimashita ka?

Taihen tsukarete imasū kara, hayakū deketakū arimasen.

Hayakū gakkō e ikimashō.



Kyō no Amerika no kawase no nedan wa ikūra desū ka? Ichi doru wa ni yen ni jū go sen desū.

What is the American rate of exchange to-day? One dollar is (worth) two yen, twenty-five sen.

Kyō no Eikoku no kawase no nedan wa ikūra desū ka? Ichi pondo wa ni jū yen shi sen desū.

Kyō no Fūransū no kawase no nedan wa ikūra desū ka? Ichi fūrankū wa hachi jū go sen desū.

Kyō no Shina no kawase no nedan wa ikūra desū ka? Yokū wakarimasen.

Kinō no Amerika no kawase no nedan wa ikūra deshita ka? Kinō ichi doru wa ni yen go jissen deshita.

Asu no Amerika no kawase no nedan wa ikūra deshō ka? Dō omoimasū ka? Sūkoshi agaru deshō.

Kono kogitte wa genkin ni kaete morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Can you cash this check for me?

Dōzo kono kogitte (w)o genkin ni kaete kudasai.

Ainikū genkin wa arimasen.

Kono kogitte (w)o kaeru koto ga dekimasū ka?

Chīsai ginka wa arimasen ga kono jū yen satsū de kamaimasen ka?

Watakūshi no tomodachi no kogitte (w)o genkin ni kaete morau koto ga dekimasū ka?

Anata wa kono ginkō de torihiki shīte imasū ka? Hai, torihiki shīte imasū.

Do you have dealings (an account) with this bank? Yes, I do.

Anata wa Yokohama Shōkin* Ginkō de torihiki shīte imasū ka? Iie, Dai Ichi* Ginkō to torihiki shīte imasū.

Watakūshi wa kono ginkō to torihiki shītai desū.

Anata wa chokin dake shītai n' desū ka? Kogitte wa tsukaimasen ka?

Takahashi San wa Yokohama Shōkin Ginkō de torihiki shīte imasū ka? Go-zonji desū ka?

Watakūshi no chokin wa ikūra arimasū ka?

Kono kogitte ni uragaki (w)o shīte kudasai.

Please endorse this check.

Shītsūrei desū ga anata wa kono kogitte ni uragaki (w)o suru koto (w)o wasurete imasū.

Kono kawase ni uragaki ga arimasen kara, genkin ni kaeru koto ga dekimasen.

Matsumoto San ni kono kogitte ni uragaki (w)o shīte kureru yō ni itte kudasai.

Kono kogitte no uragaki wa yomemasen.

Kore wa anata no uketori desū kara, o-tori kudasai.

This is your receipt so please take it.

Kore wa anata no o-tsuri desū kara, o-tori kudasai.

Sore wa anata no kogitte desū kara, o-tori kudasai.

Kore wa anata no ni jū go yen satsū desū kara, o-tori kudasai.

Kore wa watakūshi no kane desū kara, tora-nai de kudasai.

Kono jū yen satsū (w)o ichi yen satsū ni kaete kudasai.

Please change this ten yen bill into one yen bills.

Kono ichi yen satsū (w)o ginka ni kaete kudasaimasen ka?

Kono ni jū yen satsū (w)o go yen satsū ni kaete kudasai.

Kono go jū yen satsū (w)o jū yen satsū ni kaete kudasai.

Kono hyakū yen satsū (w)o go jū yen satsū ni kaete kudasaimasen ka?

Kono jū doru satsū (w)o Nippon no kane ni kaete kudasai.

Chiisai ginka ga arimasū ka?

Do you have any small change?

Chiisai ginka (w)o motte imasen kara, dōzo kono satsū (w)o ginka ni kaete kudasaimasen ka?

Ainikū satsū ga arimasen kara, anata ni chiisai ginka (w)o age-nakereba narimasen ga kamaimasen ka?

Dōzo chiisai ginka (w)o kure-nai de kudasai.

Watakūshi wa chiisai ginka ga arimasen deshita kara, bantō ni jū yen satsū (w)o kaete kudasai to negaimashita.

Kono hon wa taihen yomi-yasui desū.

This book is easy to read.

Nihon go wa hanashi-yasukū arimasen.

Eigo mo hanashi-yasukū arimasen.

Katakana wa kanari kaki-yasui desū.

Kono renshū wa shi-yasukū arimasen.

Watakūshi wa kono go jū yen (w)o chokin shite okitai n' desū.

I want to deposit this fifty yen.

Anata wa kane (w)o chokin shitai n' desū ka matawa kane (w)o dashitai n' desū ka?

Kono hichi jū yen no kogitte (w)o chokin shite okitai n' desū.

Yokohama Shōkin Ginkō ni otōsan ga okutte kita yūbin kawase (w)o chokin shite kudasai.

Kesa otōto wa ginkō ni hyakū yen chokin shimashita.

Dōzo koko kara sambamme no mado e itte, azukete kudasai.

Please go to the third window from here and deposit (it).

Dōzo hidari e ni bamme no mado e itte, azukete kudasai.

Dōzo migi e yo bamme no mado e itte, azukete kudasai.

Kono hachi jū yen (w)o azuketai n' desū.

Migi no sambamme no to (w)o akete kudasai.

Mā, Kimura San, shibarakū deshita ne. Sono go wa ikaga desū ka?

Why, Mr. Kimura, it's been a long time (since I last saw you). How have you been since then?

Matsumoto San, anata no okūsan ni wa shibarakū o-me ni kakarimasen ga ikaga de gozaimasū ka?



Takahashi San, shibaraku o-me ni kakarimasen deshita ne. Sono go wa ikaga desu ka?
 Tanaka San kara shibaraku tegami (w)o moraimasen ga naze deshō ka?
 Anata ni wa shibaraku o-me ni kakarimasen deshita ga sono go wa dō desu ka?

Keiki* wa dō desu ka? Mā, botsu botsu yatte imasu.

How's business? Oh, so, so (Coming along slowly).

Botsu botsu aruite kudasai.

Botsu botsu yonde kudasai.

Botsu botsu hanashite kudasai.

Kyūji ni ikūra kokorozashi (w)o yarimashō ka?

Ichi yen yattara ii deshō ka?

Shimbun-ya ni kane (w)o yarimashita.

Dochira e desu ka?

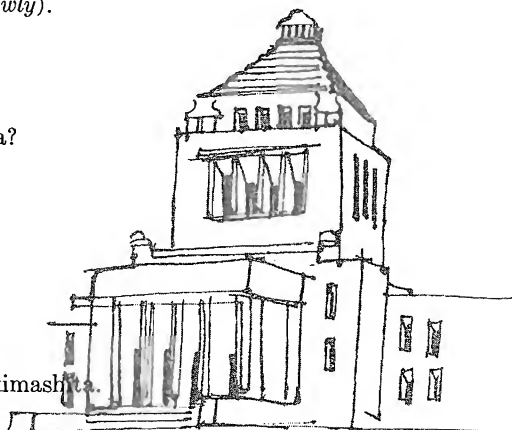
Where are you going? (Where to?)

Dochira kara desu ka? Ginkō kara kimashita.

Ima kara dochira e desu ka? Ginkō made.

Kinō wa dochira e deshita ka? Nyū Yōku e ikimashita.

Dochira made desu ka? Yūbinkyoku made.



Watakushi wa ima koko de sūkoshi kane (w)o dashimashita.

I just now drew a little money out here.

Anata wa ikūra dashitai n' desu ka?

Watakushi wa ni jū go yen dashitai n' desu.

Ima ginkō e itte, sūkoshi kane (w)o dashite, kono kogitte (w)o chokin shite oku tsumori desu.

Anata wa ginkō e itte, ikūra dashimashita ka?

Anata wa hon (w)o dashite, sūkoshi yonde kudasai.

Anata no atarashii yōfuku (w)o dashite, misete kudasai.

Ano hako kara empitsū (w)o dashite kudasai.

Būrajiru ni iru ototo e yūbin kawase (w)o okuritai.

I want to send a postal money order to my brother in Brazil.

Arūzenchin ni iru otōsan e yūbin kawase (w)o okuritai.

Yūbin kawase (w)o ikūra kaitai desu ka?

Ni hyakū yen no yūbin kawase (w)o kaitai desu.

Kono yūbin kawase (w)o kaete kuremasen ka?

Yūbin kawase de kane (w)o okutte yarō to omoimasu.

I think I'll send the money by postal money order.

Kono tegami (w)o dasō to omoimasu.

Ima dekakeyō to omoimasu.

Kono gogo daigakū e ikō to omoimasu.

Watakūshi wa o-isha san (w)o yobō to omoimasū.
Ashita no asa, rokū ji ni okiyō to omoimasū.

Kyūji ni ichi yen no kokorozashi (w)o yatte kudasai.

Please give one yen tip to the waitress.

Kono chiisai ginka (w)o jochū ni yatte mo ii n' desū ka?
Tomodachi ni tabako (w)o yarimashita.
Kyūji ni ikūra kokorozashi (w)o yarimashō ka?
Ane wa imōto ni kashi (w)o yatta sō desū.

Kane (w)o okutte yarō to omotte iru tokoro desū.

I am about to send him some money.

Gohan (w)o tabeyō to shīte iru tokoro desū.
Bīru (w)o nomō to omotte iru tokoro desū.
Watakūshi wa sakana-ya e ikō to shīte iru tokoro desū.
Watakūshi ga tsuita toki ni wa tomodachi ga dekakeyō to shīte iru tokoro deshita.

Anata no otōto san wa Minami Amerika de nani (w)o shīte irasshaimasū ka? Ototo no shokugyō wa denki no gishi desū.

What does your brother do in South America? My brother is an electrical engineer.

Anata wa koko de nani (w)o shīte irasshaimasū ka? Watakūshi no shokugyō wa junsu desū.
Anata no shokugyō wa nani desū ka? Watakūshi wa bantō desū.
Ano Matsumoto San to iu hito no shokugyō wa nan desū ka? Go-zonji desū ka?
Yōfukū-ya darō to omoimasū.
Anata wa ano ryōriya de nani (w)o shīte imasū ka? Kyūji (w)o shīte imasū.

Denki (w)o keshīte kudasai.

Please put out the electric light.

Denki (w)o tsukete kudasai.
Anata no mise de denki no tokei (w)o utte imasū ka?
Ano tatemono ni denki ga tsuite imasū ka?
Kono taku ni wa denki no gishi ga sunde imasū.

Ni-san ka getsū Būrajiru ni imasū ga raigetsū kara, Arūzenchin e tennin sareru sō desū.

He has been in Brazil for two or three months and next month I hear he is being transferred to Argentina.

Anata no musūko san wa dono gurai Beikokū ni irasshaimasū ka? Go ka nen Kīta-Amerika ni imasū ga rainen kara, Minami-Amerika e tennin sareru sō desū.
Anata wa dono gurai koko ni irasshaimasū ka? Shi shūkan koko ni imasū ga ni-san nichī shitara, Kyōto e iku tsumori desū.
Ano Būrajiru no kata wa doko e tennin saremashita ka? Go-zonji desū ka? Shina e tennin saremashita sō desū.



Sore wa taihen omoshiro-sō na shigoto desū ne.

That must really be an interesting kind of work.

Tōkiō wa taihen omoshiroi machi desū ne.

Sore wa omoshiro-sō na hon desū ne.

Takahashi San wa omoshiro-sō na hito desū ne.

Sono shigoto wa amari omoshirokū arimasen deshita.

Sore wa omoshiroi koto desū ne.

Anata no shigoto wa nani desū ka? Denki no gishi desū.



Watakūshi no musūko wa daigakū (w)o deru to, Minami-Amerika e ikitai to itte imasū.

My son says that he wants to go to South America when he is graduated from the university.

Anata wa daigakū (w)o deru to, donna shokuyō (w)o mochitai desū ka?

Anata wa daigakū (w)o demashita ka? Hai, san nen mae ni daigakū (w)o demashita.

Anata wa itsū daigakū (w)o demasū ka? Ni nen no uchi ni deru tsumori desū.

Ano onna no kata wa daigakū (w)o demashita ka? Go-zonji desū ka? Iie, mada demasen deshō.

Ima kara issho ni yūbin-kyokū made yukimashō ka?

Shall we go to the post-office together now?

Ima kara issho ni ginkō made yukimashō ka?

Ima kara issho ni ryōriya made yukimashō ka?

Ima kara issho ni yado-ya made yukimashō ka?

Ima kara issho ni gakkō made yukimashō ka?

Ima kara issho ni densha no teiryūjo made yukimashō ka?

Ima kara issho ni depōto made yukimashō ka?

Kozutsumi (w)o okuri-dashitai n' desū.

I want to send off a package.

Itsū ano kozutsumi (w)o okuri-dashimashita ka?

Anata ni ototoi okurimashita.

Itsū watakūshi ni ano kozutsumi (w)o okutte kuremasū ka?

Ashita okuri-dashimashō.

Kono kozutsumi wa omo-sugiru kara, hikōyūbin de okuru koto wa dekimasen.



Tegami (w)o kakitome ni shitai n' desū.

I want to register a letter.

Kono tegami (w)o kakitome in shite morattara, ikūra desū ka?

Dōzo jochū ni tegami (w)o kakitome ni shite dasu yō ni itte kudasai.

Dōzo sono tegami (w)o kakitome ni shite kudasai.

Anata no tegami wa kakitome de kimashita ka?

Hagaki (w)o rokū mai kudasai.

Please give me six post cards.

Ano kesa moratta hagaki wa dare kara kimashita ka?

Jū mai no hagaki (w)o kaitai n' desū.

Anata wa Kyōto e tsuitara, watakūshi ni hagaki (w)o ichi mai okutte kudasaimasen ka?
Yūbin-kyokū e itte, hagaki (w)o jū ni mai katte kite kudasai.

Kono tegami (w)o kado no yūbin-bako ni irete kudasai.

Please put this letter in the mail box on the corner.

Koko kara ichiban chikai yūbin-bako wa doko ni arimasū ka?

Kono kozutsumi wa yūbin-bako ni hairimasen.

Watakūshi no tegami (w)o kono yūbin-bako ni iretara, yoroshiū gozaimasū ka?

Dōzo kono tegami (w)o dashite kudasai.

Please post this letter.

Ima ano hagaki wa dasa-nai de kudasai. Watakūshi ga dekakeru toki ni sore (w)o yūbin-bako ni iremashō.

Watakūshi wa kinō yūbin-kyokū e ika-nakereba narimasen deshita kara, ano tegami (w)o dashimashita.

Kitte (w)o shi-go mai kaitai n' desū.

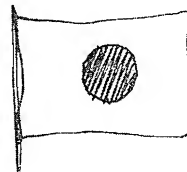
I want to buy four or five stamps.

Dōzo yūbin-kyokū e itte, jū mai no kitte (w)o katte kite kudasai.

San sen no kitte (w)o jū ni mai kaitai n' desū.

Dōzo kitte (w)o rokū mai kudasai.

Watakūshidomo wa kitte ga nai kara, dōzo yūbin-kyokū e ittara, kitte (w)o hichi-hachi mai katte kite kudasai.



Kono Kōbe-yuki no tegami wa sūkoshi omo-sugiru to omoimasū.

I think this letter for Kobe is a little too heavy.

Kono Amerika-yuki no kozutsumi wa omo-sugiru to omoimasū.

Kono nimotsū wa omo-sugiru kara, motte ika-nakereba narimasen.

Kono Tōkiō-yuki no kozutsumi wa omo-sugiru to omoimasū kara, hikōyūbin de okutte wa ikemasen.

Kono hako wa omoi desū kara, yūbin de okuru koto ga dekimasen.

Kitte wa ikūra hara-nakereba narimasen ka?

How much (in) stamps must I paste on?

Kono tegami wa Nagasaki e okuritai desū ga kitte wa ikūra hara-nakereba narimasen ka?

Kono tegami wa hikōyūbin de dashitai desū ga kitte wa ikūra hara-nakereba narimasen ka?

Kono tegami wa sokūtatsū de okuritai desū ga go jissen no kitte (w)o hattara, ii n' desū ka?

Kono kozutsumi wa Kyōto e okuritai nara, hichi jū go sen no kitte (w)o hara-nakereba narimasen.

Hakatte mite agemashō.

I'll weigh it for you.

Dōzo kono kozutsumi (w)o hakatte mite kudasai.

Hakatte mitara, nagasa ga shi shakū arimashita.

Hakatte mitara, omosa ga ni kin arimashita.

Hikōyūbin ka sokutatsū de okuritai n' desū ka? Iie, futsū de yoroshiū gozaimasū.

Do you want to send it airmail or special delivery? No, ordinary is all right.

Futsū yūbin de yoroshiū gozaimasū ka? Iie, sokutatsū de okuritai n' desū.

Kyō o-taku ni wa sokutatsū no tegami ga kimashita ka? Iie, hikōyūbin no tegami ga kimashita.

Dōzo kono tegami (w)o hikōyūbin ka sokutatsū de dashite kudasai.

Konnen* no atsusa wa futsū ja arimasen.

Rokū sen no kitte (w)o hatte kudasai.

Please paste on a six sen stamp.

Jissen no kitte (w)o hatte kudasai.

Kono kozutsumi (w)o Nagasaki made Yokohama kara okuru ni wa go jissen no kitte de takusan deshō ka?

Dōzo shi sen no kitte (w)o go mai kudasai.

Kono kozutsumi (w)o Nagasaki e okuritai n' desū ga ikūra kakarimashō ka?

I want to send this package to Nagasaki. How much will it cost?

Kono kozutsumi (w)o Beikokū e okuritai n' desū ga ikūra kakarimashō ka?

Kono tegami (w)o Fūransū e okuritai n' desū ga ikūra kakarimashō ka?

Kono tegami wa sokutatsū de Hokkaidō e okuritai n' desū ga ikūra kakarimashō ka?

Kono tegami (w)o hikōyūbin de okuttara, itsū Kōbe e tsukimashō ka?

Ano hikidashi no naka ni wa nani ga haitte imasū ka? Hon ga ni satsū haitte imasū.

What is inside that drawer? Two books.

Ano hako no naka ni wa nani ga haitte imasū ka? Nani mo haitte imasen.

Takusan no mono ga haitte imasū ka? O-kashi dake haitte imasū.

Ano hikidashi no naka ni wa nani ga haitte imasū ka? Kami ga haitte imasū.

Ano kozutsumi no naka ni wa nani ga haitte imasū ka? Zasshi ga jissatsū haitte imasū.

Asoko ni hon ga iku satsū arimasū ka? Go satsū arimasū.

Anata wa hoken ni haitte imasū ka?

Are you insured?

Anata wa hoken ni hairitai desū ka?

Anata no o-taku ni wa hoken ga ikūra tsukete arimasū.

Dōzo kono kozutsumi ni hyakū yen no hoken (w)o kakete kudasai.

Anata no okosan ni wa hoken ga tsuite imasū ka?

Mina de ni jū go sen ni narimasū.

It all comes to twenty-five sen.

Mina de ikūra ni narimasū ka?

Mina de san jissen ni narimasū.

Mina de ikūra deshīta ka?

Mina de yo yen ni narimashīta.

Ano hītotachi wa mina kekkon shīte imasū.

Dōzo o-negai itashimasū.

Please take charge of it. (Please, I ask you).

Anata wa dare ni o-hanashi shītai n' desū ka? Suzuki San ni o-negai shītai n' desū.

Dōzo Takahashi San ni koko de hītoban o-tomari ni naru yō ni negatte kudasai.

Ashīta wa hayakū kuru yō ni negaimasū.

Kore (w)ō motte kite kudasai to negaimashīta.

Ima kara denshin-kyokū e itte, dēmpō (w)ō utsu tsumori desū.

Now I'm going to the telegraph office and I intend to send a telegram.

Watakūshi wa kono dēmpō (w)ō Tōkiō e uchitai desū ga ikūra desū ka?

Dōzo watakūshi ni dēmpō de shirasete kudasai.

Dōzo kono dēmpō (w)ō sokutatsū de utte kudasai.

Anata ga sono dēmpō (w)ō futsū de uttara, motto yasui deshō.

Ano warui hito wa junsā ni utaremashīta.*

Anata wa doko (w)ō utaremashīta ka?

Watakūshi wa mune (w)ō utaremashīta.

Kyō no yōji wa sunde shimaimashīta.

To-day's business is all finished.

Kyō no shigoto wa sumimashīta.

Watakūshi wa kashi (w)ō tabete shimaimashīta.

O-sumi ni nattara, sūkoshi hanashi ga aru n' desū ga...

Hiruhan wa sumimashīta ka?

Shīte shimatta koto wa shīkata ga arimasen.

Yōji ga nakereba, denshin-kyokū e issho ni ikimasen ka?

Ainikū desū ga, kyō wa yōji ga gozaimasū kara.

Nani ka watakūshi ni yōji ga arimasen ka? Arigatō gozaimasū ga, nani mo arimasen.

Watakūshi ni donna yōji ga gozaimasū ka? Machi e ittara, zasshi (w)ō katte kite kudasai.

Yōji ga atte, Kyōto e itte imasū.

Sono hon wa yonde shimaimashīta.

I finished reading that book.

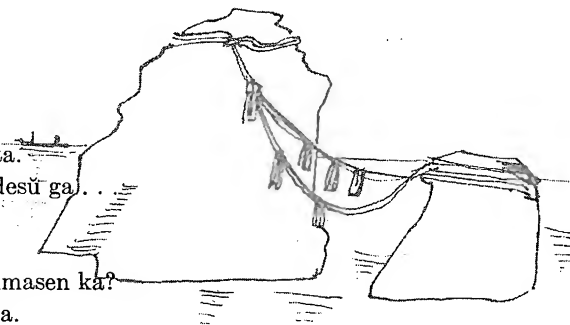
Kore de shigoto (w)ō shimatte kudasai.

Anata wa nan ji ni sono shigoto (w)ō shimaimasū ka? Jū ji ni shimau tsumori desū.

Sakūban no renshū (w)ō kaite shimaimashīta ka? Hai, mina kaite shimaimashīta.

Tomodachi wa Tōkiō e itte shimaimashīta.

Dare ga kono būru (w)ō nonde shimaimashīta ka? Shirimasen.



15

Dai Jū Go K(w)a (Lesson XV)

At the Barber's

Toko-ya San, kono tsugi no kisha (w)o toritai kara, isoide kami (w)o katte, hige (w)o sotte kudasai. Amari mijkakū²⁸ karai de kudasai.

Barber, as I want to take this next train, please quickly give me a haircut and a shave. Please don't cut it too short.

At the Information Window

- 5 Kono tsugi no Nagasaki-yuki wa nan ji ni demasū ka?
Jū ji go fun desū.
Sore wa kyūkō desū ka? Tokkyū desū ka?
Tokkyū desū.
- 10 Tokkyū wa jū ichi ji han ni tachimasū.
Sore wa nan ji ni Nagasaki e³³ tsukimasū ka?
Myōgo-jitsū no asa no hachi ji han ni tsukimasū.
- 15 Tokkyū ni wa Kanda eki kara noremasū⁹⁰ ka?
Iie, tokkyū wa Kanda eki ni wa tomarimasen.⁹¹
Sore de wa, kyūkō kata-michi no kisha chin wa ikūra desū ka?
20 Ni jū go yen desū.
Ōfuku wa ikūra desū ka?
Yon⁵² jū go yen desū.

What time does the next (train) to Nagasaki leave?

At ten-five.

Is that an express train or a limited?

It's a limited.

The limited leaves at eleven-thirty.

What time does it arrive at Nagasaki?

It arrives the day after tomorrow at eight-thirty in the morning.

Can I take the limited at the Kanda station?

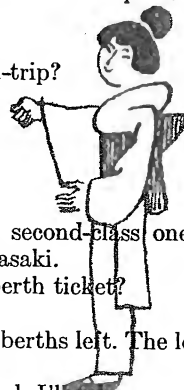
No, the limited doesn't stop at Kanda station.

Well then, how much is the express train fare one way?

It's twenty-five yen.

How much is a round-trip?

It's forty-five yen.



At the Ticket Window

- Nagasaki e kyūkō ni tō kata-michi ichi mai⁵⁴
25 kudasai.
Shindai ken mo desū ka?
Hai, dōzo negaimasū.
Shindai wa ue⁴³ shika⁷⁹ nokotte imasen.
Shīta wa mina urikiremarshīta ga. . .
- 30 Shīkata ga nai kara, ue (w)o moraimashō.
Ryōhō de²² san jū hachi yen ni narimasū.
Akabō San, kono ōkii kaban (w)o chikki ni shīte⁵⁰ kudasai. Chiisai hō⁴⁷ no wa kisha no naka e mochikonde kudasai. Shindai no
- 35 bangō wa san gō⁵² sha no ni ban desū kara.

Please give me one second-class one-way express ticket to Nagasaki.

Do you also want a berth ticket?

Yes, please.

There are only upper berths left. The lowers were all sold out.

Since it can't be helped, I'll take an upper.

Both together come to thirty-eight yen.

Porter, please check this big suitcase. Please carry the little one into the train. The berth number is number two in the third train.

Hai, kashikomarimashita.

Kippu (w)o o-kashi kudasai, torankū (w)o azukete kimasū³⁷ kara.

Yes, very well, sir.

Please lend me (your) ticket and I'll check the trunk.

In the Train



Shitsūrei desū ga, anata mo Nagasaki e
40 o-ide ni narimasū ka?

Hai, sō desū.

Anata wa Beikokū no kata no yō ni⁶⁵ miuke-
masū ga, itsū kochira e o-koshi ni narima-
shita⁴⁰ ka?

45 Hai, ni shūkan mae ni⁸⁰ Yokohama e tsuki-
mashita.

Kono-goro no zeikan no tori-atsukai wa dō
desū ka?

Kanari yasashikatta⁴³ to omoimasū. Ryoken
50 wa motte ita shi,⁴⁴ nimotsū wa mina⁴³
watakūshi jishin no furugi ya hitsuyō na
mono bakari⁷⁹ de, zeikin (w)o harau-beki⁶⁸
mono wa nakatta⁴³ kara, amari muzukashikū
arimasen deshita.

55 Sore wa kekkō deshita ne. Umi no ue wa dō
deshita ka?

Fune wa okii deshita. Tenki mo taihen
yokatta⁴³ kara, amari yowazu ni⁹⁸ mairi-
mashita. Watakūshi no shindai wa ichiban

60 ue no kampan ni arimashita no de, sūkoshi
osorete imashita ga, arai nami ni⁹⁹ wa awazu
ni⁹⁸ Yokohama e tsukimashita.

Kono-goro no funa-chin wa takakū natte iru
sō ja arimasen ka?

65 Hai, sūkoshi wa takakū natta sō desū ga
taishita koto wa arimasen.

Pardon me, but are you also going to Naga-
saki?

Yes, that's right.

You look like an American. When did you
come over here?

Yes, I arrived at Yokohama two weeks ago.

How is the treatment at the customs these
days?

I think it was quite easy. I had a passport
and the baggage was just my own old clothes
and useful articles, and as I didn't have to
pay any duty, it wasn't very difficult.

That's really splendid. How was the cross-
ing? (How was it over the ocean?)

The ship was large. As the weather was very
good also, I arrived without getting very
seasick. Since my berth was on the top deck,
I was a little frightened, but we arrived at
Yokohama without meeting any rough
waves.

I hear that the ship fare now-a-days has
become high, hasn't it?

Yes, they say it has become a little high, but
it isn't (so) very much.

Exercises

Toko-ya San, kono tsugi no kisha (w)o toritai kara, isoide kami (w)o katte kudasai.

Barber, as I want to take this next train, please give me a haircut quickly.

Toko-ya San, chotto kami (w)o katte kudasai.

Kami wa kara-nai de kudasai.

Watakūshi wa kami (w)o katte moritai n' desū ga, ii toko-ya ga kono kinjo ni arimasū ka?

Isoide aruite kudasai.

Isoide motte kite kudasai.

Kisha wa jū ji ni demasū kara, isoide yukimashō.

Kuchi-hige wa sora-nai de kudasai.

Please don't shave off my mustache.

Ano hige no nai hito wa suihei de, ano nagai hige no aru hito wa shikan desū.

Hige (w)o sotto moritai n' desū.

Tomodachi wa ano toko-ya san ni hige (w)o sorasemashita.

Anata wa watakushi no toko-ya ni soraseru hō ga ii deshō.

Kesa wa hige (w)o sorazu ni gakkō e ikimashita.

Amari mijikakū kara-nai de kudasai.

Please don't cut it too short.

Kono zubon wa mijikai desū ga, sore wa nagai desū.

Ano tegami wa amari nagakū kaka-nai de kudasai.

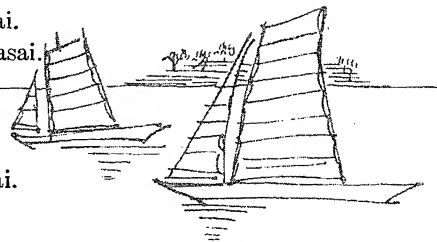
Ano tegami wa amari mijikakū kaka-nai de kudasai.

Kanai wa kami (w)o mijikakū katte imasū.

Kono sode wa ni sun mijikai desū.

Kono-goro wa hi ga mijikakū natte kimashita.

Kono uwagi (w)o san zun* mijikakū shite kudasai.



Kono tsugi no Nagasaki-yuki wa nan ji ni demasū ka? Jū ji go fun desū.

When does the next train for Nagasaki leave? At ten five.

Kono tsugi no Kōbe -yuki wa nan ji ni demasū ka? Go ji han ni demasū.

Kono tsugi no Tōkiō kara kuru kisha wa nan ji ni tsukimasū ka? Gogo yo ji desū.

Kono tsugi no Yokohama-yuki (w)o toritai desū ga nan ji ni demasū ka? Komban no hachi ji desū.

Kisha ga botsū-botsū to* dekakemashita.

A! Kisha ga dete shimaimashita.

Nan ji no kisha de oide desū ka?

Kisha wa jippun okuremashita.*

Kisha wa jippun hayarimashita.*

Sore wa kyūkō desū ka? Tokkyū desū ka?

Is that the express train or the limited?

Kyūkō wa nan ji ni demasū ka? Tokkyū wa nan ji ni demasū ka?

Tokkyū wa ku ji de, kyūkō wa ku ji han ni demasū.

Nagasaki e no kyūkō wa jū ji ni tatte, tokkyū wa jū ji han ni tachimasū.
Tōkiō kara Nagasaki e wa Kōbe made tokkyū de itte, Kōbe de kyūkō ni norikaemasū.
Ōsaka kara no tokkyū wa Tōkiō e go ji han ni tsūkimasū, sōshite kyūkō wa go ji ni tsukimasū.

Sore wa nan ji ni Nagasaki e tsūkimasū ka? Myōgo nichī* no asa no hachi ji han ni tsūkimasū.

What time does it arrive at Nagasaki? It arrives the day after tomorrow at eight thirty in the morning.

Kyūkō wa nan ji ni Kōbe e tsūkimasū ka? Myōgo-nichi no gogo no san ji jū go fun mae ni tsūkimasū.

Myōgo-nichi nan ji ni Nagasaki (w)o deru tsumori desū ka? Myōgo-nichi no ban no hachi ji ni Tōkiō no tokkyū (w)o toru tsumori desū.

Nagasaki e nan ji no kisha de tatsu tsumori desū ka? Yo ji no kisha de tatsu tsumori desū.
Anata no kisha wa nan ji ni Nagasaki e tsūkimashita ka? Kinō no asa no ku ji ni tsūkimashita.

Anata wa kinō nan ji no kisha de Tōkiō (w)o demashita ka? Kinō gogo ni ji no kisha de demashita.

Tokkyū ni wa kono teishaba* de noremasū ka? Iie, tokkyū wa kono teishaba de wa tomarimasen.

Can one take the limited at this station? No, the limited doesn't stop at this station.

Kyūkō ni wa Shinagawa eki kara noremasū ka? Iie, kyūkō wa Shinagawa eki de wa tomarimasen.

Hachi ji no Nagasaki-yuki ni wa Kanda eki kara noremasū ka? Hai, koko de tomarimasū.
Moshi anata ga Ōsaka e ikitai nareba, Kanda eki kara tokkyū de ittara, ii deshō.
Watakushi wa Yokohama e itte, Gūrando Hoteru de hitoban tomarimashita.

Kyūkō kata-michi no kisha-chin wa ikūra desū ka? Ni jū go yen desū.

How much is the express train fare one way? Twenty-five yen.

Tokkyū ō-fuku no kisha chin wa ikūra desū ka? Shi jū yen desū.

Tōkiō kara Nagasaki made kata-michi no kisha chin wa ikūra desū ka? San jū yen desū.

Shashō San, densha chin wa ikūra desū ka? Go sen desū.

Dōzo kata-michi no kippu (w)o ichi mai kudasai.

Ōfuku wa ikūra desū ka? Yon jū go yen desū.

How much is the round trip? Forty-five yen.

Ōfuku no kippu (w)o kattara, motto yasui desū ka? Hai, ōfuku no kippu (w)o kattara, motto yasui deshō.

Tōkiō kara Kōbe made no ōfuku kippu wa ikūra desū ka? San jū go yen desū.

Hiroshima made no ōfuku kippu wa ikūra desū ka? San yen desū.

Kata-michi nara, ni jū shi sen de; ōfuku nara, shi jissen desū.

Aruite itte kuru to san jikan kakarimasū ga jidōsha de ōfuku shitara, nan jikan karaki-mashō ka?

Kono fune wa San Fūranshisūko e ōfuku shimasū ka?

Ni mai no kata-michi kippu yori wa ōfuku kippu no hō ga yasui desū.

Nagasaki e kyūkō ni tō kata-michi ichi mai kudasai.

Please give me one second-class one way express ticket to Nagasaki.

Shizuoka e tokkyū ittō ōfuku ni mai kudasai.

Okayama e kyūkō ni tō kata-michi sammai kudasai.

Kyōto e tokkyū ni tō ōfuku yo mai kudasai.

Dōzo Kanda eki e itte, Maebashi-yuki no futsū ni tō kata-michi no kippu (w)o jū mai katte kite kudasai.

Ano kisha ni wa shindaisha* ga tsuite imasū ka?

Does that train have a sleeping car?

Nagasaki made no shindai ken wa ikūra desū ka? Ue wa jū yen de, shīta wa hichi yen desū.

Ue no shindai (w)o negaimasū.

Shīta no shindai (w)o negaimasū.

Shindai wa ue shīka nokotte imasen.

There are only upper berths left.

Tabako wa nokotte imasū ka? Tabako wa hito hako shīka nokotte imasen.

Nippon go (w)o manabi-hajimete kara ichi nen ni shīka narimasen.

Go yen shīka nokotte imasen.

Ano kata wa tomodachi (w)o hitori shīka tsūrete kimasen deshīta.

Nippon go no hon (w)o ni satsū shīka yoma-nai to iimashīta.

Eigo shīka hanashimasen.

Ainikū shīta no shindai wa mina urikiremashīta. Shīkata ga nai kara, ue (w)o moraimashō

Sorry, the lowers were all sold out. Since it can't be helped, I'll take an upper.

Ainikū kyō kuroi kutsushīta wa mina urikiremashīta. Shīkata ga nai kara, shiroi no (w)o moraimashō.

Ainikū kyō niku wa mina urikiremashīta. Shīkata ga nai kara, hoka no tokoro e ikimashō.

Ainikū suika wa mina urikiremashīta. Shīkata ga nai kara, hoka no yao-ya e itte mimashō.

Ainikū ittō no kippu wa mina urikiremashita ga. . . Shikata ga nai kara, kōka no kisha (w)o torimashō.

Ryōhō de san jū hachi yen ni narimasū.

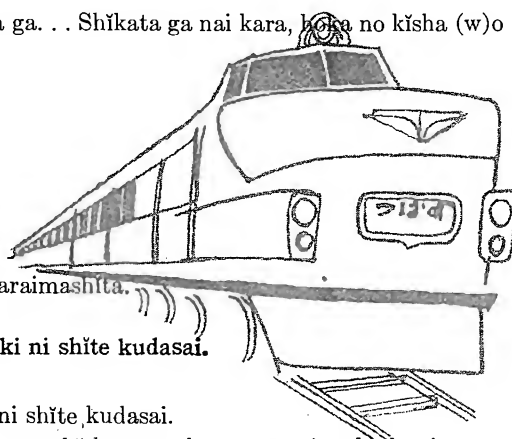
Both together they come to thirty-eight yen.

Shindai dake wa jū yen desū.

Kisha no kippu dake wa yon jū yen desū.

Mina de shi jū yen ni narimasū.

Kutsū to bōshi to ryōhō ni, san jū go yen haraimashita.



Anō* akabō San, kono ōkii kaban (w)o chikki ni shīte kudasai.

I say, porter, please check this big satchel.

Anō, akabō San, kono nimotsū (w)o chikki ni shīte kudasai.

Anō, akabō San, watakūshi no kaban (w)o totte, kisha no naka e motte itte kudasai.

Anō, akabō San, watakūshidomo no kaban wa azukete arimasū kara, kono kippu (w)o motte itte, totte kite kudasai.

Akabō San, kono ōkii kaban wa omo-sugiru kara, dōzo chikki ni shīte kudasai.

Chikki ni suru ni wa kane ga ikūra kakarimasū ka? Sore wa tada* desū.

Chiisai hō no wa kisha no naka e mochikonde kudasai.

Please put this little one inside the car.

Kisha no naka e watakūshi no nimotsū (w)o motte itte kudasai.

Watakūshi no kozutsumi (w)o toko-ya e motte itte kudasai.

Kono ōkii kaban wa kisha no naka e mochikonde kudasai.

Kono torankū mo ni gō sha e mochikonde kudasai.

Shindai no bangō wa san gō sha no ni ban desū.

The berth number is number two in the third train.

Anata no shindai no bangō wa nan gō sha no desū ka? Shi gō sha no jū ni bamme desū.

Takahashi San no shindai wa nan ban desū ka? Go gō sha no samban desū.

Anata no denwa no bangō wa Motomachi no roppyakū shi jū ban desū ne?

Shinshitsū no bangō wa ni bamme no kampan no san jū ban desū.

Anata no o-taku no bangō wa Ginza no sen shi hyakū ban desū ne?

Kippu (w)o o-kashi kudasai.

Please lend me your ticket.

Ano hon (w)o yonde shimattara, dōzo watakūshi ni kashīte kudasai.

Anata ga pen (w)o tsukatte i-nai nara, chotto watakūshi ni kashīte kudasai.

Kane (w)o kashīte kudasai to negaimashita, keredomo kashīte kuremasen deshita.

Ni jū yen tsugi no Doyōbi made watakūshi ni kashite kuremasen ka? to tomodachi ga iimashita.

Ano hito ni kane (w)o kasa-nai de kudasai.

Torankū (w)o azukete kimasū.

I'll check your trunk.

Watakūshi no kippu wa koko ni arimasu kara, torankū to kaban (w)o azukete kite kudasai.

Watakūshi no yōfuku (w)o koko ni azukete mo ii n' desu ka?

Watakūshi no torankū wa Matsumoto San no taku ni azukete okimashita.

Ima kara yao-ya e itte kimasu.

Shitsurei desu ga, anata mo Nagasaki e o-ide ni narimasu ka? Hai, sō desu.

Excuse me, but are you also going to Nagasaki?

Shitsurei desu ga, anata mo Kōbe e o-ide ni narimasu ka? Hai, sō desu.

Shitsurei desu ga, anata mo kono kisha ni norimasu ka? Iie, norimasen.

Shitsurei desu ga, anata mo Tōkiō kara kimashita ka? Hai, sō desu.

Shitsurei desu ga, anata mo kono fune de Beikoku e o-ide ni narimasu ka? Iie, watakūshi wa kono tsugi no "Taiyō Maru" *de iku tsumori desu.

Anata wa Beikoku no kata no yō ni miukemasu.

You look like an American.

Anata wa Nippon-jin no kata no yō ni miukemasu.

Anata no tomodachi wa Fūransū-jin no kata no yō ni wa miemasen.

Takahashi San wa Nippon-jin no kata no yō ni miukemasu ga, Beikoku-jin da sō desu.

Anata wa Eikoku-jin no yō ni miukemasu ga, sō de gozaimasu ka?

Itsū kochira e o-koshi ni narimashita ka? Ni shūkan mae ni Yokohama e tsukimashita.

When did you cross over here? I arrived at Yokohama two weeks ago.

Anata wa umi (w)o o-koshi ni natta koto ga arimasu ka? Iie, arimasen.

Itsū Amerika e o-koshi ni narimashita ka? Mikka mae ni San Fūranshisūko e tsukimashita.

Itsū Eikoku e o-koshi ni narimashita ka? Shi ka getsu mae ni mairimashita.

Itsū otōto San wa Minami Amerika e o-koshi ni narimashita ka? Jū nen mae ni ikimashita.

Kono-goro no zeikan no tori-atsukai wa dō desu ka?

How is the treatment now-a-days at the customs?

Kono-goro no kawase no nedan wa dō desu ka? Sūkoshi takaku narimashita.

Ane San no kono-goro no byōki no yōsu wa dō desu ka? Arigatō. Sūkoshi ii hō desu.

Ano yado-ya no tori-atsukai wa ii desu ka? Kanari ii sō desu.

Ano jidōsha wa taihen tori-atsukai-yasui desu.

Kanari yasashikatta to omoimasū.

I think it was very easy.

Kanari muzukashikatta to omoimasū.

Kanari omokatta to omoimasū.

Kanari omoshirokatta to omoimasū.

Taihen oishikatta to omoimasū.

Kono renshū wa taihen yasashii to omoimasū ka?

Eigo wa Nippon go yori yasashii to omoimasū.

Watakūshi wa Fūransū go wa Eigo gurai yasashii to omoimasū ga musūko wa Fūransū go wa Eigo hodo yasashikū nai to omou to iimashita.

Ryoken wa motte ita shi nimotsū wa watakūshi jishin no furugi deshita.

I had a passport and besides my baggage was (just) my old clothes.

Anata ni wa ryoken ga arimasū ka?

Ainikū desū ga watakūshi wa ryoken (w)o motte kimasen deshita.

Anata jishin de shite kudasai.

Watakūshi ni wa furugi shika arimasen kara, anata to issho ni iku koto wa dekimasen.

Anata wa furugi (w)o uritai n' desū ka?

Doko ni furugi-ya ga arimasū ka?

Kyō wa tenki wa ii shi o-kane wa takūsan motte imasū kara, kaimono ni ikimasen ka?

Watakūshi wa taihen tsukarete imasū shi kanai mo byōki desū kara, hayakū toko ni narimasū

Kono tegami wa anata jishin ga kakimashita ka?

Zeikin (w)o harau beki mono wa arimasen.

There is no duty that I should pay.

Anata no kaku beki tegami wa dare e desū ka?

Anata no morau beki kane wa ikūra desū ka?

Watakūshi no hanasu beki koto wa nani desū ka?

Watakūshi no su* beki koto wa nan desū ka?

Nihon go wa taihen muzukashii desū.

The Japanese language is very difficult.

Fūransū go wa amari muzukashikū arimasen.

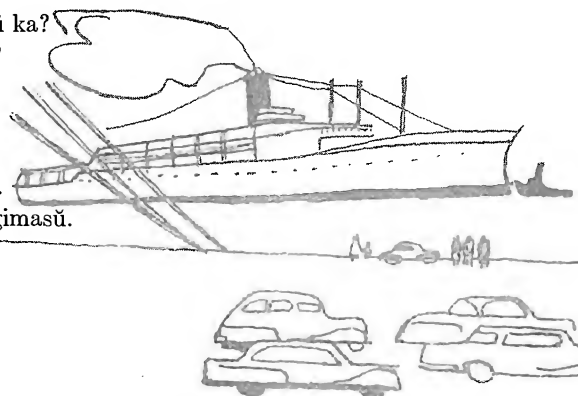
Kono renshū wa watakūshi ni muzukashi-sugimasū.

Ano hito wa taihen muzukashii kata desū.

Kono hon wa yomi-nikui desū.

This book is hard to read.

Kono kusuri wa nomi-nikui desū.



Nippon go wa kaki-nikui desū.
 Sono shigoto wa shi-nikui desū ka?
 Kono-goro tabako wa kai-nikui desū.

Umi no ue wa dō deshita ka?

How was the crossing?

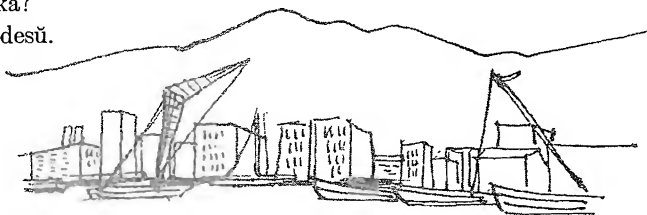
Tenki wa dō deshita ka?

Fune no ue wa dō deshita ka?

Zeikan no tori-atsukai wa dō deshita ka?

Umi (w)o o-koshi ni narimashita ka? Iie, koshimasen deshita.

Hikōki de umi no ue (w)o tonda koto ga arimasu ka? Hai, arimasu.



Fune wa ōkii deshita. Tenki mo taihen yokatta kara, amari yowazu ni mairimashita.

The ship was large. As the weather was fine too, I came over without getting very seasick.

Fune wa chiisai deshita. Tenki mo taihen warukatta kara, yoimashita.

Ano Nihon no fune no namae wa nan to iimasu ka? Taiyō Maru* to iimasu.

Fune ni yotta koto ga arimasu ka? Iie, arimasen.

Ano hito wa taihen sake ni yotte imasu.

Ano hito wa itsu mo¹⁰⁶ yotte imasu ka?

Tōkiō no natsu wa ii desu ka? Iie, sūkoshi atsui desu.

Watakushi no shinshitsu wa ichiban ue no kampan ni arimashita no de, sūkoshi osorete imashita.

Because my state-room was on the top deck I was a little frightened.

Watakushi no shinshitsu wa ichiban shita no kampan ni arimashita no de, sūkoshi osorete imashita.

Anata no shinshitsu wa dono kampan ni arimasu ka? Ni bamme no kampan ni arimasu.

Anata no shinshitsu no bango wa nani desu ka? Sambamme no kampan no sambyaku san jū yo ban desu.

Kono-goro funa-chin ga takaku natte iru kara, rainen made wa Beikoku e iku tsūmori ja arimasen.

Ano ko wa neru koto (w)o osoremasu.

Anata wa nani mo osoreru koto ga arimasen.

Ano ko wa junsu (w)o osoremasu ka? Hai, taihen osorete imasu.

Arai nami ni wa awazu ni Yokohama e tsukimashita.

We arrived at Yokohama without meeting any rough waves.

Kinō Takashima-ya e itta toki ni, Matsumoto San ni aimashita.

Anata ga shirasete kureta kata ni wa awazu ni kaerimashita.

Kesa wa tegami (w)o kakazu ni dekakemashita.

Yūhan (w)o tabezu ni koko e kimashīta ka?

Denwa (w)o kakezu ni ko¹¹⁶-nai de kudasai.

Umi no ue wa dō deshīta ka? Nami wa amari arakū arimasen deshīta.

Anata wa tomodachi ni doko de au hazu desū ka?

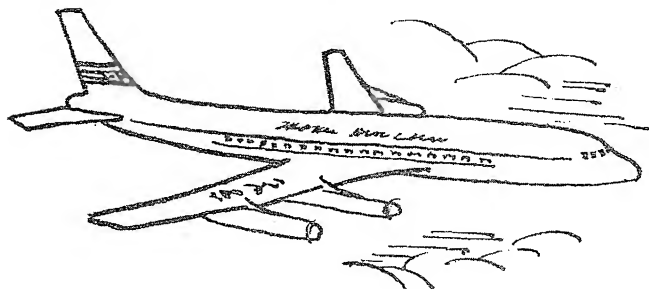
Funa-chin wa takakū natte iru sō ja arimasen ka? Hai, sūkoshi wa takakū natta sō desū ga taishīta koto wa arimasen.

I hear the ship fare has gone up, hasn't it? Yes, they say it's gone up a little, but it's nothing much.

Densha-chin wa yasukū natte iru sō ja arimasen ka? Iie, amari yasukū natte imasen.

Kisha-chin wa yasukū narimashīta ka? Iie, kisha-chin wa sūkoshi takakū natta sō desū ga taishīta koto wa arimasen.

Anata no okusama wa byōki da sō desū ga ikaga desū ka? Arigatō, sūkoshi kaze (w)o hiite imasū ga taishīta koto wa arimasen.



16

Dai Jū Rokk(w)a (Lesson XVI)

Ueda San, ii tenki desū kara, sampo (w)o shi nagara,⁸⁰ Nippon no koto ni tsuite¹⁰⁰ o-hanashi shīte kudasaimasen ka?

Hai, Nippon wa Taiheiyō ni aru Ajiya no shimaguni de, sono¹³ menseki wa Amerika no Tekisasū shū to hotondo onaji⁴⁷ de arimasū ga, jinkō wa kare-kore hichi sen go hyakū man nin desū.

Kita no hō wa, Nippon-Kai (w)o koseba,⁸⁹ Shiberiya kara tsuzuite Roshya no hongokū e³³ hairimasū.

Nippon-Kai no nishi ni wa, Chōsen hantō ga ari,⁴⁴ minami wa Taiwan kara Shina ni men shīte, Nan-yō e, higashi wa Taiheiyō de arimasū.

Kuni wa yottsū no shima de naritatte imasū: sono uchi Honshū wa mannaka¹⁰¹ de, minami ni wa Shikoku to Kyūshū ga ari, kita ni wa Hokkaidō ga arimasū.

20 Nippon wa sampu to shi jū sangen ni wakatte imasū. Sampu wa Tōkiō fu, Kyōto fu, Ōsaka fu no koto desū. Nippon no shufu wa Tōkiō de, Honshū ni arimasū.

Tōkiō ni tsuide,¹⁰⁰ ōkii tokai wa Ōsaka, 25 Kyōto, Kōbe, Yokohama, nado de arimasū. Tokai ni wa kanari ōkii tatemono ga arimasū ga jishin no tame ni²⁹ amari takai tatemono wa tateraremasen.

Nihon ni wa takusan no takai yama ya kawa 30 ga arimasū ga mottomo⁴⁷ yūmei na no⁵⁶ wa Fuji-san desū.¹⁰² Kawa de nadakai no wa Shinano-gawa de, mizuumi de wa Biwa-ko desū.

Omo na sambutsū toshite¹⁰⁰ wa kiito ga 35 sekai ni shirarete imasū.

Shūkyō wa shu-to-shīte Bukkyō to Kīrisūto-kyō to Shintō nado de arimasū.

Nihon no kyōiku seido wa Ō-Bei no to yokū nite, taihen shimpo shīte imasū.

Miss Ueda, since it's good weather, while we're taking a walk, won't you please speak about Japan?

Yes, Japan is an island country of Asia in the Pacific Ocean, and it's area is approximately the same as that of the American state of Texas; the population is about seventy-five million.

To the north, crossing the Sea of Japan, continuing on from Siberia, one enters the Russian mainland.

The Korean peninsula is to the west of the Japan Sea and to the south from Formosa it faces China and toward the South Seas and to the east is the Pacific Ocean.

The country consists of four islands: among them Honshu is the middle one, to the south are Shikoku and Kyushu, and Hokkaido is to the north.

Japan is divided into three metropolitan districts* and forty-three prefectures: The three districts are the Tokio district, Kyoto district, and the Osaka district. The capital of Japan is Tokio, and it is in Honshu.

Following Tokio the large cities are Osaka, Kyoto, Kobe, Yokohama, etc. In the cities there are quite large buildings, but because of earthquakes very high buildings can not be built.

In Japan there are many high mountains and rivers; the most famous one is Fuji-yama. Of the rivers the Shinano river is a well-known one; of the lakes, Lake Biwa is (well-known).

Silk is known throughout the world as its principal product.

The religions are chiefly Buddhism, Christianity, Shinto, and so forth.

The Japanese system of education is similar to that of the Occident (Europe and America) and is very advanced.

- 40 Chotto o-machi kudasai. Kyōiku seido to
iu¹⁵ kotoba wa dō iu⁷³ imi desū ka?
Sore wa Eigo de *educational system* no¹³ imi
desū.
Arigatō. Sore de yokū wakarimashita.
- 45 Jinjō shō-gakkō kara, kōtō shō-gakkō, chū-
gakkō, kōtō gakkō, daigaku ni itaru made¹⁰⁰
yokū kambi shite imasū.
- Please wait a moment. What is the meaning
of the word *kyōiku seido*?
That means educational system in English.
Thank you. Now I understand.
It is complete from elementary school,
higher primary school, middle (high) school,
college, up to the university.

Kokumin wa taihen kimben desū ga iro-
iro no undō mo konomimasū: bēsu-bōru,
50 tenisū, suiei, sumō, jūdō, nado ga omo na
mono desū ga shōsū no hito wa gorūfū (w)o
shite asonde iru-rashii¹⁰³ desū. Tō kokū ni
wa keshiki no yoi tokoro ga takusan⁴³ aru
no de, gaikokū kara tasū no hito ga kem-
55 butsū ni kimasū.

The people are very industrious, but they
like all kinds of sports also: baseball, tennis,
swimming, wrestling, judo, etc. are the
principal ones but it seems a small number
play golf. To this (the said) country, be-
cause of its many scenic places, come large
numbers of people from foreign countries to
go sightseeing.

* There are now only two *fu*, as Tokio has been recently designated a *to* (miyako).

Exercises

Sampo (w)o shi nagara, Nippon no koto ni tsuite o-hanashi shite kudasaimasen ka?

While we are taking a walk, won't you speak about Japanese things?

Watakūshi wa sampo ga taihen sūki desū.

Anata wa sampo (w)o shītai n' desū ka?

Anata wa Nippon no koto ni tsuite no hon (w)o yomimashita ka?

Ano hito wa Shina no koto ni tsuite hanashimashita.

Anata wa ryōri no koto ni tsuite shitte imasū ka?

Anata wa Nippon no rikugun no koto ni tsuite shitte imasū ka?

Tabē nagara, hanashimashō.

Aruki nagara, tabako (w)o nomu koto wa konomimasen.

Nippon wa Taiheiyō ni aru Ajiya no shimaguni desū.

Japan is an island country of Asia in the Pacific Ocean.

Eikokū wa Taiseiyō ni aru Yōroppa no shimaguni desū.

Chōsen wa Taiheiyō ni aru hantō desū.

Taiwan wa Taiheiyō ni aru shima desū.

Taiheiyō wa sekai de ichiban ōkii umi desū ka?

Shina wa Ajiya ni arimasū.



Sono menseki wa Amerika no Tekisasu shu to hotondo onaji de arimasu ga jinko wa kare kore hichi sen go hyaku man nin desu.

It's area is approximately the same as that of the American state of Texas and the population is about seventy million.

Amerika no menseki wa dono gurai desu ka?

Nippon no menseki to Kariforuniya* no menseki to wa dochira ga okii desu ka?

Anata wa doko kara kimashita ka? Watakushi wa Penshirubania* shu kara kimashita.

Watakushi no sei wa anata to hotondo onaji desu.

Nippon-jin to Shina-jin to wa hotondo onaji mono (w)o tabemasu ka?

Amerika no jinko wa dono gurai arimasu ka? Ichi oku* san zen man nin gurai arimasu.

Tochio no jinko wa sekai de sambamme da so desu.

Ima wa kare-kore ju ji desu.

Watakushi wa kare-kore ni jikan manabimashita.

Kita no ho wa Nippon-Kai (w)o koseba, Shiberiya kara tsuzuite, Roshya no hongoku e hairimasu.

To the north, crossing the Sea of Japan and continuing on from Siberia, one enters the Russian mainland.

Ano hito wa ni jikan hanashi-tsuzukemashita.

Yomi-tsuzukete kudasai.

Ano hito wa mata shigoto (w)o tsuzukemashita.

Tomodachi wa hongoku e kaerimashita.

Nippon-Kai no nishi ni wa, Chosen hanto ga ari, minami wa Taiwan kara Shina ni men shite, Nan-yo e, higashi wa Taiheiyō de arimasu.

The Korean peninsula is to the west and to the south from Formosa it faces China and to the east to the South Seas and the Pacific Ocean.

Beikoku no nishi wa Taiheiyō de, higashi wa Taiseiyō, kita ni wa Kanada ga ari, minami wa Mekishiko ni men shite imasu.

Eikoku no nishi wa Taiseiyō de, higashi wa, kaikyō* (w)o koseba, Berugi ni hairi, minami wa Furansu ni men shite, kita wa toku Noruwē (w)o mite imasu.

Furansu no minami wa doko no kuni desu ka?

Nishi ni wa donna kuni ga arimasu ka?

Eikoku wa shimaguni desu ka? Hanto desu ka?

Nan-yō to iu imi wa nan desu ka? Taiwan no minami no hō ni aru Taiheiyō (w)o Nan-yō to iimasu.

Nanyō wa Taiwan kara minami no hō e Ōsutorariya* made no umi (w)o Nan-yō to iimasu.

Nan-yō ni wa ni-san zen no shima ga arimasu.

Kuni wa yottsū no shima de naritatte imasū: sono uchi Honshū wa mannaka de, minami ni wa Shikoku to Kyūshū ga ari, kita ni wa Hokkaidō ga arimasū.

The country consists of four islands: among them Honshu is the middle one, to the south are Shikoku and Kyushu, and Hokkaido is to the north.

Beikoku wa shi jū hachi shū de naritatte imasū.

Kono machi no mannaka ni aru okii tatemono wa nan desū ka?

Tomodachi ga michi no mannaka (w)o aruite imasū.

Kono kuni wa sūki desū ka?

Ano kuni (w)o dō omoimasū ka?

Nippon wa ni fu to shi jū sangen ni wakatte imasū.

Japan is divided into two metropolitan districts and forty-three prefectures.

Amerika wa shi jū hachi shū to Hawaii, Arasūka ni wakatte imasū.

Fu to iu no wa nani no imi desū ka? Fu wa okii machi no imi desū.

Nippon no shufu wa Tōkiō de, Honshū ni arimasū.

The capital of Japan is Tokio and it is in Honshu.

Fūransū no shufu wa Parī de, Yōroppa* ni arimasū.

Beikoku no shufu wa Washinton de, Kita Amerika ni arimasū.

Itarī no shufu wa Rōma de, Yōroppa ni arimasū.

Chōsen no shufu wa Keijō de, Ajiya ni arimasū.

Taiwan no shufu wa Kiirun de, Ajiya no shimaguni de arimasū.

Eikoku no shufu wa Rondon de, Yōroppa ni arimasū.

Roshya no shufu wa Mosukō de, Doitsu* no shufu wa Berurin desū.

Tōkiō ni tsuite, okii tokai wa Ōsaka, Kyōto, Kōbe, Yokohama, nado de arimasū.

Following Tokio, the large cities are Osaka, Kyoto, Kobe, Yokohama, etc.

Nyū Yōkū ni tsuite, okii tokai wa Shikago, San Fūranshisūko, Hiraderuhiya, Bosūton nado de arimasū.

Rondon* ni tsuite, okii tokai wa doko desū ka?

Rio de Janeiro ni tsuite, okii tokai wa Saun* Pauro, desū ka?

Buenosu Airesu* ni tsuite, okii tokai wa Rosario desū ka?

Tokai ni wa kanari okii tatemono ga arimasū ga jishin no tame ni amari takai tatemono wa tateraremasen.

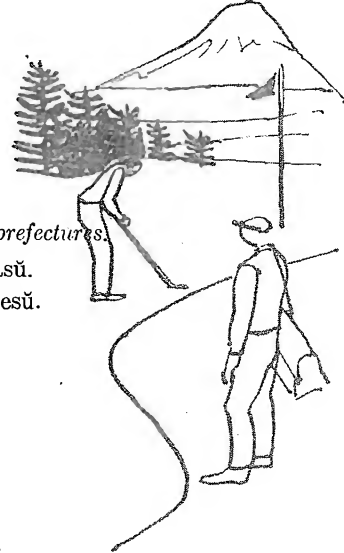
In the cities there are quite large buildings, but because of earthquakes, very high buildings are not built.

Kono machi ni wa okikūte takai tatemono ga arimasū ne.

Kesa jishin ga arimashita.

Warui mizu (w)o nonda tame ni, byōki in narimashita.

Ano hito wa isha ni naru tame ni manande imasū.



Ano tatemono wa jishin no tame ni kowaremashta.
 Ōkii jishin no toki ni wa takeyabu* e nigeekomimasū.*

Nihon ni wa takusan no takai yama ya kawa ga arimasū ga mottomo yūmei na no wa Fuji San desū.

In Japan there are many high mountains and rivers; the most famous one is Fujiyama.

Kono machi de mottomo yūmei na hito wa dare desū ka?
 Beikoku ni wa takusan no takai yama ya kawa ga arimasū ga mottomo yūmei na no wa Rokki-zan ya Mishishippi-gawa desū.
 Tōkiō no soba ni yūmei na Sumida-gawa ga arimasū.
 Fuji San no takasa wa kare-kore san mairu arimasū.
 Fuji San kara yūmei na Asama-yama ga miemasū.
 Asama-yama wa funkazan* no hitotsū desū.

Kawa de nadakai no wa Shinano-gawa de, mizuumi de wa Biwa-ko desū.

Of the rivers, the Shinano river is a well-known one and of the lakes, Lake Biwa is (famous).

Amerika de yūmei na mizuumi wa nan to iimasū ka? Mishigan-ko ya Huron-ko deshō.
 Kyōto to Ōsaka no chikakū ni arimasū.
 Natsū wa takusan no hito ga kono mizuumi de asobimasū.*
 Nippon-jin wa mizuumi de amari oyogimasen* ga umi ya kawa de yokū oyogimasū.

Omo na sambutsū toshite wa kiito ga sekai ni shirarete imasū.

Silk is known throughout the world as its chief product.

Kono machi no omo na sambutsū wa nan desū ka? Kono machi de wa o-cha ga takusan dekimasū.*
 Nippon-jin toshite wa kome ga mottomo hitsuyō na mono desū.
 Nihon no o-cha mo sekai ni yokū shirarete imasū.
 Roshya no rikugun wa sekai de ichiban ōkii sō desū.

Shūkyō wa shu-to-shite Bukkyō to Kirisuto-kyō to Shintō nado de arimasū.

The religions are chiefly Buddhism, Christianity, Shinto, and so forth.

Amerika no shūkyō wa shu-to-shite Shinkyō to Kyūkyō to Yudaya-kyō nado de arimasū.
 Anata no shūkyō wa nan desū ka? Watakushi no shūkyō wa Kirisuto-kyō desū.
 Kamakura no daibutsū* wa Nihon de mottomo yūmei desū.
 O-miya* de yūmei na no wa Meiji-jingū* desū.

Nihon no kyōiku seido wa Ō-Bei no to yokū nite, taihen shimpo shite imasū.

The Japanese system of education is like that of Europe and America and it has progressed a great deal.

Nihon no kekkon seido wa Ō-Bei no to yokū nite imasen, taihen chigatte* imasū.
 Ano ko wa okāsan ni yokū nite imasū.
 Ano tatemono wa watakushi no gakkō ni yokū nite imasū.

Amerika no denki wa taihen shimpo shīte imasū.
Ajiya de Nippon no kyōiku seido ga ichiban shimpo shīte imasū.

Chotto o-machi kudasai. Kyōiku seido to iu kotoba wa dō iu imi desū ka? Sore wa Eigo de *educational system* no imi desū.

Pardon me. What is the meaning of the word "kyōiku seido"? In English that means "educational system."

Chotto o-machi kudasai. O-miya wa Eigo de nani no imi desū ka? Sore wa Eigo de *statue* no imi desū.

Chotto o-machi kudasai. Daibutsū to iu kotoba wa dō iu imi desū ka? Sore wa Eigo de *statue of Buddha* no imi desū.

Chotto o-machi kudasai. Kaji to iu kotoba wa Fūransū-go de nan to iimasū ka? Sore wa Fūransū-go de *feu* to iimasū.

Chotto o-machi kudasai. Kekkon seido to iu kotoba wa dō iu imi desū ka? Sore wa *marriage customs* no imi desū.

Arigatō. Sore de yokū wakarimashita.

Thanks. That makes it very clear.

Shitsūrei desū ga sore de mo* mada wakarimasen.

Sore de yokū wakarimashita ka?

Sore de wa watakūshi wa ima kara uchi e kaerimashō.

Dono kotoba no imi ga wakarimasen ka? Chigaimasū to iu kotoba no imi ga wakarimasen deshita.

Jinjō shō-gakkō kara, kōtō shō-gakkō, chū-gakkō, kōtō gakkō, daigaku ni itaru made yokū kambi shīte imasū.

It is complete from elementary school, higher primary school, middle school, high school, up to the university.

Nippon-jin wa mina shō-gakkō (w)o de-nakereba narimasen; chū-gakkō ya kōtō gakkō e wa itte mo ika-nakūte mo ii n' desū.

Anata wa kōtō gakkō (w)o demashita ka? Hai, demashita.

Rainen daigaku (w)o deru hazu desū.

Kono jimusho* no naka wa mina yokū kambi shīte imasū.

Kokumin wa taihen kimben desū ga iro-iro no undō mo konomimasū.

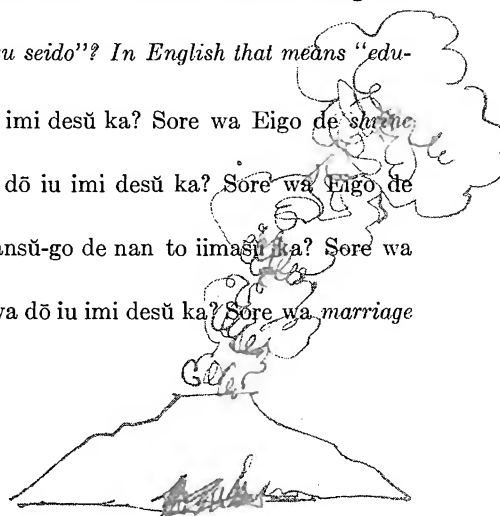
The people are very industrious, but they like all kinds of sports also.

Amerika no kokumin wa kimben desū ga bēsū-bōru, ya fūto-bōru nado (w)o konomimasū.

Donna undō ga sūki desū ka? Watakūshi wa tenisū no hō ga ichiban sūki desū.

Ano hito wa taihen kimben desū ga musūko san wa amari kimben ja arimasen.

Suiei wa taihen yoi undō desū.



Besū-bōru, tenisū, suiei, sumō, jūdō, nado ga omo na mono desū.

Baseball, tennis, swimming, wrestling, judo, etc. are the principal ones.

Anata wa tenisū (w)o shīte asobimasū ka? Iie, tenisū wa shimasen ga suiei ga sūki desū.

Sumō wa mita koto ga arimasen ga jūdō wa mita koto ga arimasū.

Kono-goro wa rikugun de takūsan no heishi ga jūdō (w)o naratte* iru sō desū.

Raishū jūdō no shiai* ni tsurete itte kudasai.

Shōsū no hito wa gorūfū (w)o shīte asonde iru-rashii desū.

A small number of people, I think, play golf.

Kyō wa ii tenki ni naru-rashii desū.

Shujin-rashii hito ga ima densha ni norimashita.

Ano hito wa takūsan sake (w)o nonda-rashii desū.

Tomodachi wa taihen tsukarete iru-rashii desū.

Anata wa Nihon-jin-rashikū Nihon go (w)o hanasemasen ka?

Kono kuni ni wa keshiki no yoi tokoro ga takūsan aru no de, gaikokū kara tasū no hito ga kembutsū ni kimasū.

To this country, because of its many fine scenic places, come large numbers of people from foreign countries to go sightseeing.

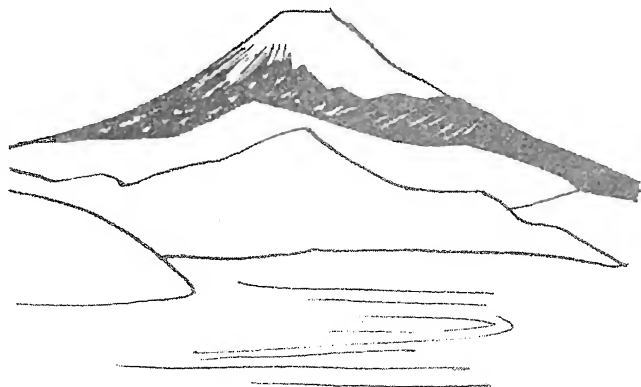
Doko ka¹⁰⁶ keshiki no yoi tokoro e itte mitai desū.

Nikkō no keshiki (w)o mita koto ga arimasū ka?

Gaikokū-jin ga takūsan Nikkō e kembutsū ni kuru sō desū.

Anata wa nani ka gaikokū go ga hanasemasū ka?

Hai, Süpein* go to Horutogarū* go ga sūkoshi dekimasū.



GRAMMAR

The Roman numerals and Arabic numerals in parentheses refer to lessons and lines respectively.

PRONUNCIATION

ROMANIZATION

Japanese is Romanized in this text to facilitate the development of a knowledge of the spoken language. The Japanese, however, do not usually write with the Roman letters, but with Chinese characters and two syllabaries (see page 215).

The system of Romanization or *romaji* which is employed here is the one used by practically all text books, scholarly works, dictionaries, and newspapers and magazines in English. While it lacks the virtue of simplifying morphological detail, it makes up for this lack by simplifying the acquisition of correct pronunciation.

The following table lists the differences between the system most widely used and that promulgated in the Japanese Government decree of 1937, which is essentially that of the phonemic transcription used by some writers.

Hepburn System	Japanese Government	Hepburn System	Japanese Government
cha	tya	jo	zyo
chi	ti	ju	zyu
cho	tyo	sha	sya
chu	tyu	shi	si
fu	hu	sho	syo
ja	zya	shu	syu
ji	zi	tsu	tu

LONG VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

A long vowel such as *ā*, *ō*, *ū*, etc., or a vowel followed by a nasal in the same syllable must be held twice as long as a vowel without the line over it, such as *a*, *o*, *u*, etc. A short *i* or *ü* is a whispered vowel and may often not be heard at all. Doubled consonants likewise are held twice as long as single ones. In English this occurs only when two words, the first of which ends in, and the second of which begins with the same consonant, are pronounced in the same breath, e. g., *pen(k)nife*, *good day*. The *pp* of *roppiki* (VIII, 38) *six 'animals'*, for example, sounds like the *pp* in *cap-pistol*. Long *ch* is written *tch*, e. g., *itchaku* (X, 41) *one 'suit'*. It is often important to distinguish long vowels and consonants from others as a difference in meaning results therefrom. For instance, *tofu* means *a city or town*, *tōfu* (XI, 44) *bean-curd* and *tōfū* *the east wind*; *motto* (VI, 36) means *more* and *moto* *beginning, origin*.

SYLLABIFICATION

A syllable consists of a vowel alone, or of a vowel preceded by a consonant. A long vowel counts as two syllables, and a final *n* counts as a separate syllable. Each of two contiguous vowels makes a separate syllable and each of the vowels retains the same sound it has when not in combination with another vowel. For instance, *ikura* (VII, 37) divided into

syllables is *i-ku-ra* and *naoshite* (X, 41) *na-o-shi-te*. However, *au* may sometimes be pronounced *ō*; e. g., *morau* (VII, 60).

PITCH ACCENT

Japanese has very little stress accent and care must be taken to pronounce each syllable with the same degree of loudness or force. The accent marks over the words in the vocabulary indicate that the syllables over which the marks appear are distinguished from the unaccented syllables by a higher musical pitch, and not by stress.

An accented syllable is pronounced in a tone about a musical third higher than an unaccented syllable. When a word has a number of consecutive accented syllables the last accented syllable has a light stress accent as well as a pitch accent. It will be noticed that the polite verbal ending *māsū* generally has the accent on the syllable *ma*, but this higher tone is heard only if the final *u* is pronounced or if a word with level pitch follows. A pitch accent on the last syllable of a word is noticeable only when followed by a word beginning with an unaccented syllable. Note that the negative form *masén* has the accent on the *e*.

A word having no accent mark in the Japanese-English Dictionary, p. 219 (except those marked with an asterisk, the pitch of which has not been ascertained) is pronounced on a level pitch, and when followed by postpositions, the postposition is accented; e. g., *hashi nó* of the edge, but in *hashi no* of the bridge *hashi* keeps its accent and *no* is pronounced on level pitch. Compare *háshi nó* of the chopstick.

Long vowels usually have a drop in pitch, and the second of two consecutive vowels is usually lower than the first. Where the second of two consecutive vowels is accented, both vowels are on the same pitch, but are both lower than a following accented syllable. It is also important to note that in any word all the syllables which precede the accented syllable, except the first syllable, are pronounced in the same pitch as the accented syllable.

It will be noted that in true adjectives (see section 43) the pitch accent is usually on the syllable before the *i* ending, but that in the adverbial form and consequently in the tense forms and in the gerund (which are based on the adverbial form) the accent is thrown back one syllable, e. g., *nagái*, *nágaku*, *nágakatta*, *nágaküte*. There is also a similar shift in accent in the past and gerundial forms of verbs of the first class ending in *eru*, e. g., *tabéru*, *tábeta*, *tábeta*.

It must be remembered that various dialects of Japanese often place the accent in a different manner from the Tokio speech.

The Dictionary of this book (see page 219) for the most part gives the pitch marked by Kaku Jimbo and Chisato Tsunefuka in their "Kokugo Hatsuo Akusento Jiten" and represents the Tokio pitch only.

PHRASING

Within a sentence a pause may usually be made after a postposition or after the second of two consecutive postpositions.

PRONUNCIATION OF ROMAJI

LETTERS	APPROXIMATE SOUND AND EXPLANATION	EXAMPLE
a	like the <i>a</i> in father, but shorter and not drawled	arigatō (I, 3)
b	like <i>b</i> in English	ban (I, 36)

PRONUNCIATION OF ROMAJI (CONTINUED)

LETTERS	APPROXIMATE SOUND AND EXPLANATION	EXAMPLE
ch	like <i>ch</i> in <i>church</i> , but with the tongue back of the upper teeth instead of the upper gum	chiisai (VI, 36)
d	like <i>d</i> in <i>day</i> , but with the tongue touching the upper teeth instead of gum	dare (II, 23)
e	like <i>e</i> in <i>met</i> ; the postposition <i>e</i> is often <i>ye</i> after <i>n</i> .	ebi (VIII, 42)
f	like <i>h</i> in <i>hoot</i> , but with the lips close together. This sound is made by the breath escaping between the upper and lower lip and not between the teeth and the lower lip as is English <i>f</i> . It appears before <i>u</i> only, for <i>h</i> is used before other vowels.	fune (XV, 57)
g	1. at the beginning of a word like <i>g</i> in <i>go</i> 2. in the middle of a word, or in the postposition <i>ga</i> like the <i>ng</i> in <i>ring</i> (Tokio pronunciation)	gozen (VII, 23) agari (VI, 54) ga (XIII, 6)
h	1. Before <i>a</i> , <i>e</i> , and <i>o</i> like <i>h</i> in <i>hop</i> 2. before <i>i</i> like <i>h</i> in <i>heap</i> (or it is usually pronounced like German <i>ch</i> in <i>ich</i>); i. e. the tongue is in position for <i>y</i> as in <i>yellow</i> , but <i>h</i> is pronounced instead. It sounds about half way between <i>h</i> and <i>sh</i> .	hai (I, 19), hen (XIII, 50) hon (I, 9) hikui (VI, 47)
i	1. like the <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i> 2. between two voiceless consonants and sometimes elsewhere <i>i</i> is voiceless; i. e. whispered or not pronounced at all. This <i>i</i> is usually marked short; i. e., <i>i</i> in the text. 3. (i) may be pronounced or not.	ikaga (I, 2) deshita (III, 16) nan(i) (I, 16)
j	like the <i>j</i> in <i>jeer</i> , but with the tongue behind the upper teeth instead of the upper gum	Jirō (II, 5)
k	like <i>k</i> in English	kane (X, 63)
m	like <i>m</i> in <i>mother</i>	manabimassen (I, 43)
n	1. at the beginning of a word or syllable like the <i>n</i> in <i>neat</i> , but with the tip of the tongue touching the upper teeth instead of the upper gum 2. at the end of a phrase or sentence or before <i>k</i> or <i>g</i> like the <i>ng</i> in <i>sing</i> , or sometimes like <i>n</i> in <i>tin</i> , but held longer.	namae (VIII, 13) Nippon-kai (XVI, 9) arimassen (VI, 29)
o	like the <i>o</i> in <i>north</i> , but pronounced sharply, not drawled or diphthongized	ano (II, 12)
p	like <i>p</i> in English	Nippon (I, 37)

PRONUNCIATION OF ROMAJI (CONCLUDED)

LETTERS	APPROXIMATE SOUND AND EXPLANATION	EXAMPLE
r	made by a quick flapping of the tip of the tongue, lightly touching the gums behind the upper teeth. somewhat like the pronunciation of <i>r</i> as a <i>d</i> by some English people who seem to say <i>veddy</i> for <i>very</i> . closer to English <i>l</i> than to English <i>r</i> . neither the trilled nor uvular <i>r</i> , but one light tap of the tongue.	kore (I, 18)
s	always voiceless like the <i>s</i> in sympathy, but with the tip of the tongue touching the back of the upper teeth, not the upper gum	sayonara (I, 48)
sh	like the <i>sh</i> in ship, but with the tongue tip back of the upper teeth instead of the upper gum	shimbun (I, 33)
t	like the <i>t</i> in English, but with the tongue tip touching the back of the upper teeth instead of the gum	tomodachi (III, 24)
ts	a combination of <i>t</i> and <i>s</i> without any intervening sound. like <i>ts</i> in gets.	tsukue (I, 30)
u	1. between the sound of <i>u</i> in rule and the <i>u</i> in push. not drawled or diphthongized 2. between two voiceless consonants and sometimes elsewhere <i>u</i> is voiceless, i. e. whispered or is not pronounced at all. This <i>u</i> has been marked short in the text, i. e., <i>ũ</i> .	mawasu (IV, 31) sūkoshi (VII, 16) desũ (I, 5)
w	like <i>w</i> in watch. the <i>w</i> of the postposition (w)o is not usually heard except after a word ending in <i>n</i> . It is therefore placed in parenthesis as are all letters which may or may not be pronounced.	watakūshi (II, 6) (w)o (I, 35) ikk(w)a (I, 0) K(w)ayōbi (VIII, 16)
y	like the <i>y</i> in yellow, never like the <i>y</i> in by.	yomimasũ (I, 33) byōki (XIII, 36) ryōriya (XI, 27)
z	like the <i>z</i> in zinc, but with the tongue tip touching the back of the upper teeth instead of the gum. also pronounced by some people like <i>ds</i> in fads	zasshi (I, 46)

ka

1. *ka* after the verb makes a declarative sentence interrogative. No change in the declaratives word order is made.

Nani desu ka? (I, 12)

What is it?

Mai ban nani wo shimasu ka? (I, 36)

What do you do every evening?

Watakushi no zasshi wo mimashita ka?
(III, 19)

Did you see my magazine?

For other interrogative and indefinite uses of *ka*, see sections 23 and 24.

ARTICLES

2. There is neither a definite nor indefinite article in Japanese. The demonstrative adjectives (see section 10) sometimes correspond to the definite article and the numeral *ichi* corresponds on occasion to the indefinite article (see section 52).

WA AND WO

3. *Wa* and *wo* are postpositions. *Wa* usually indicates that the preceding word or phrase is the logical subject of the sentence and *wo* that the preceding word or phrase is the object of the verb. *Wa* may be translated by the expression *as for*, but *wo* has no English equivalent (see section 20). In a negative sentence *wa* usually follows the object or the predicate nominative.

Kore wa fude desu ka? (I, 18)

As-for this, is it a brush?, i. e., Is this a writing brush?

Koko kara Ōsaka e wa Kōbe e iku yori tōi desu ka? (VI, 30)

From here as-for to Osaka, is it farther to go than to Kobe?, i. e., Is Osaka farther from here than Kobe?

Mai asa nani wo shimasu ka? (I, 32)

What do you do every morning?

Mai asa shimbun wo yomimasu (I, 33)

I read the newspaper every morning.

Hikōki wa kaitaku arimasen (IV, 26)

I don't want to buy a plane.

PLURALS

4. Nouns and pronouns do not usually change their form in the plural. *Kore wa hon desu ka?* (I, 20) may mean *Is this a book?* or *Are these books?* Similarly, *Hai, hon desu* (I, 21) may mean either *Yes, this is a book* or *Yes, these are books*. The meaning is usually made clear by the context.

The suffixes *tachi*, *tomo* (domo), *ra*, and *kata* (*gata*) are sometimes added to nouns or pronouns to make plurals, e. g., *hitotachi* (III, 44) *men*, *watakushidomo* (II, 31) *we*, *anatagata* (II, 16), *you* (plural), *gunjintachi* (XI, 15) *military men*, *donatagata* (XI, 15) *who* (plural) (see section 11).

Tachi is sometimes added to nouns denoting living things; *tomo* (sonant form *domo*) meaning companion, *kata* (sonant form *gata*), and *-ra* usually apply to persons. *Kata* means *side*, *tomo* means *and others like me*, so that as Samson says (HGJ, p. 87), "The Japanese noun denotes a true universal like 'man' in 'man is mortal' which includes both 'a man' and 'men.' The suffix *domo* expresses the idea of a group or class rather than of number . . . "Tomodachi friend, although composed of *tomo* plus *dachi*, i. e., the sonant form of *tachi*, has no plural significance." (HGJ, p. 86).

Botsu-botsu (XIV, 26) means *drop by drop*. *Botsu* means *a point, a dot, a spot*. Duplication sometimes indicates plurality or one thing after the other, e. g., *nichi-nichi* *day after day, days*; *tokidoki* *from time to time, times*; *kuniguni* *country after country, various provinces*; *yamayama* *mountain after mountain, mountains*.

ga

5. In affirmative sentences *ga* is used in place of *wa* (see section 3), in order to emphasize the subject, e. g., *Kore ga hon desu ka?* (I, 26) *Is this a book?* and *this* is emphasized in English. It means *is this one* in contradistinction to *that one a book?* However, *Kore wa hon desu ka?* (I, 20) means *Is this a book?* and *book* is emphasized. It means *is this a book?*

in contradistinction to any other object. It may be said that *wa* emphasizes the predicate and *ga* the subject (see sections 20 and 85).

At the end of a clause or sentence *ga* means *but*, *and*, or *so*. It is also employed without much meaning, much as is English *so* . . . Compare the similar use of *kara* (section 29).

Oishiku arimasen *ga* dōzo o-agari kudasai *They are not very good, but please have some.*
(VI, 54)

Shitsurei desu *ga* . . . (X, 57) *pardon me, but . . .*

Iku tsumori desu *ga* anata mo issho ni *I intend to go, so won't you go also?*

ikimasen ka? (IX, 1)

Taku *wa* Kanda no itchōme desu *ga* . . . *My home is on First Street in the Kanda district so . . .*
(IX, 55)

ja

6. *Ja*, a contraction of *de wa*, is generally used after a noun form or pronoun subject of the verb *to be* in the negative.

Iie, hon *ja* arimasen (I, 27) *No, it is not a book.*

Sō *ja* arimasen (I, 29) *It's not that.*

Takahashi Jirō *ja* arimasen (II, 6) *I am not Jiro Takahashi.*

Sashimi *ga* o-suki *ja* gozaimasen ka? *Don't you like sashimi?*

(VIII, 49)

When the subject is not emphasized, *wa* is omitted.

O-konomi *de* nakereba (XII, 7) *If you don't care for*

VERBS

7. Verbs are placed at the end of a sentence or phrase. They do not by their form indicate either person or number.

Mai asa hon wo yomimasu ka? (I, 38) *Do you read books every morning?*

Mai asa shimbun wo yomimasu (I, 33) *Every morning I read the newspaper.*

Ano otoko no hito *wa* dare desu ka? (II, 14) *Who is he?*

Hon desu (I, 9) *It is a book.*

Kami to fude desu (I, 17) *They are paper and a brush.*

The polite present form of the verb is made by the addition of the suffix *masu* to the continuative stem (see section 27). This polite form is used to express an action which is habitually performed. However, there are certain exceptions to this rule (see section 31).

Mai asa nani wo shimasu ka? (I, 32) *What do you do every morning?*

Mai ban Nippon go wo manabimasu (I, 37) *I study Japanese every night.*

The compounded form of the verb in *-masu* is usually employed only in final verbs. In dependent clauses the simple form (see sections 18, 26, and 54), appears more often.

motte kite kureru yō ni itte kudasai (XII, 41) *please tell her to kindly bring*

atsu-sugiru yō da kara (XII, 54) *because it is too hot*

kaze wo hiite ita no ni (XIII, 59) *although you caught cold*

okutte yarō to omotte iru tokoro desu (XIV, 31) *I think that I shall send*

However, note *dekiagarimashita toki de* *when it is finished*

(X, 63)

For the present tense used as future (see section 96).

NEGATIVE OF masu

8. The negative of the masu ending is masen. Thus arimasen is the negative of arimasu, the latter a more formal way of expressing the verb *to be* than desu. Desu, a contracted form of de arimasu, has no negative form, and thus arimasen must be used.

Hon ja arimasen; shimbun desu, (I, 27)	<i>It is not a book; it is a newspaper.</i>
kakimasu (I, 35)	<i>write, writes</i>
kakimasen (I, 45)	<i>do not write, does not write</i>
yomimasu (I, 33)	<i>read, reads</i>
yomimasen (I, 46)	<i>do not read, does not read</i>

NAMES

9. The family name is stated first and then the given name. However, western names are given according to western custom. Girls' given names of not more than two syllables end in *ko*, *child*; compare *Ano ko wa* (VII, 18) *That child* and *okosan* (*o-ko-san*) (VI, 42) *children*.

Anata wa Rōi Sumisu desu	<i>You are Roy Smith.</i>
It is not customary to use the title <i>San</i> or <i>Sama</i> <i>Mister, Miss, Mrs.</i> when speaking of one's self.	
San may be used after a given name, e. g., Hanako San (VI, 49)	<i>Hana-ko</i>
Takahashi Jirō San desu (II, 15)	<i>He is Mr. Jiro Takahashi.</i>
Watakushi wa Matsumoto desu (II, 9)	<i>I am (Mr.) Matsumoto.</i>
Anata wa Takahashi Jirō San desu ka? (II, 5)	<i>Are you Mr. Jiro Takahashi?</i>

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

10. *Kono* means *this*, *sono* *that* (near the person spoken to or in reference to something which has been previously mentioned), and *ano* *that* (distant from both the speaker and the person addressed or referring to something not recently mentioned). These are adjectives. The corresponding demonstrative pronouns are *kore*, *sore*, and *are*.

kono onna no hito (II, 28)	<i>this woman</i>
sono otoko no hito (II, 26)	<i>that man</i>
sono o-tegami (XI, 33)	<i>that letter (you just mentioned)</i>
ano onna no hito (II, 12)	<i>that woman over there</i>
Kore wa dare no empitsu desu ka? (II, 23)	<i>Whose pencil is this (one)?</i>
Sore wa watakushi no empitsu desu (II, 24)	<i>That (near you) is my pencil.</i>
Are wa anata no shimbun desu ka? (II, 27)	<i>Is that (over there) your newspaper?</i>

The forms *kochira* *this place, here*, *sochira* *that place, there (near you)*, and *achira* *over there, that place (distant from you)* as well as *koko*, *soko*, and *asoko* (*with corresponding meanings*) are often used as demonstratives (see section 105).

Kochira wo moraimashō (VII, 57)	<i>I'll take these.</i>
Sochira wa hitotsu san sen desu (VII, 43)	<i>Those are three sen apiece.</i>
achira no ōkii no (VII, 44)	<i>those big ones</i>
koko no niku (XI, 56)	<i>this meat</i>
Compare <i>dochira</i> and <i>doko</i> <i>which</i> (section 73).	

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

11. The personal pronouns are usually omitted both as subject and object when the context makes the reference clear. Honorific forms make it clear that the first person is not meant

and the second or third person is thereby implied. Similarly, humble expressions indicate that the action is performed by the first person (see section 38).

Hiruhan ni nani wo tabemasu ka? (III, 5) *What do you eat for lunch?*

Hiruhan ni wa sakana to gohan wo tabemasu (III, 6) *I eat fish and rice for lunch.*

Sono cha-iro no wo moraimashō (X, 13) *I'll take those brown ones.*

Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasu ka? (X, 37) *Will you take both?*

Onna no hito or onna no kata *she* and otoko no hito or otoko no kata *he* are necessary only when one wishes to distinguish the sex of the third person (onna means *female* and otoko means *male*). Otherwise ano hito, sono hito, kono hito *that person, this person* will suffice. Ano ko, sono ko, kono ko *he or she* refer to children; otoko no ko *boy* and onna no ko *girl* may also be used in this way; e. g., ano otoko no ko *he*.

ano hito (III, 35) *he*

ano kata (XI, 38) *he*

ano otoko no hito (II, 14) *he*

ano onna no hito (II, 12) *she*

ano ko (VII, 18) *she*

Kono hito or kono kata indicate that the person referred to is near the speaker, sono hito, sono kata that he or she is near the person addressed, and ano hito, ano kata that he or she is distant from the person addressed (see section 10). In these phrases kata is somewhat more polite than hito. The same distinctions exist in the plural with hitotachi people, e. g., ano hitotachi (II, 19) *they*, ano otoko no hitotachi (II, 20) *they (men)* and ano onna no hitotachi (II, 21) *they (women)*.

A contracted form watashi is also used by women for the first person singular. Its plural is watashidomo (VI, 45) *we*. Anata *you* has a plural anatagata which is used when speaking to more than one person, e. g., Anata wa Nippon-jin desu ka? (II, 10) *Are you Japanese?* Anatagata wa Amerika-jin desu ka? (II, 16) *Are you Americans?*

It as subject or object may be expressed by the demonstrative pronoun (see section 10).

Sore wa . . . educational system no imi desu *It means educational system.*

(XVI, 42)

Sore wo misete kudasai *Please let me see it.*

See section 104.

THE POSTPOSITION *mo*

12. *Mo* means *also, besides* when used with an affirmative verb. When used with a negative verb, it may mean *either*. When *mo* is used, neither *wa* nor *wo* is employed (see section 19).

Anata mo Amerika-jin desu (II, 18) *You also are an American.*

Anata mo issho ni ikimasen ka? (IX, 2) *Aren't you going also?*

Budōshu mo ippon negaimasu (XI, 51) *I'd like a bottle of wine also.*

O-nedan mo sahodo takaku arimasen (IX, 43) *The price is not so high either.*

Anata no tomodachi mo yomimasen deshita ka? (III, 24) *Didn't your friend read them either?*

POSSESSIVE CASE

13. Possessives are made by placing the postposition *no* after the possessor much as English places *'s*. Possessive adjectives and pronouns are made in this way from all the personal pronouns (see section 11).

Sore wa Takahashi San no desu ka? (II, 37) *Are those Mr. Takahashi's?*

Sore wa watakushi no empitsu desu (II, 24) *That is my pencil.*

Watakushi no ja arimasen (II, 28) *It is not mine.*

Kono onna no hito no shimbun desu (II, 28) *It is her newspaper.*

The demonstrative *sono* may be used for the possessive *its*, e. g., *sono menseki* (XVI, 5) *its size*.

It is important to realize that *no* has other functions than that of indicating the possessive case and therefore Sansom's remarks will be found helpful: "*no* may be defined as a genitive particle, but its employment can be better understood if it is regarded as establishing an attributive rather than a possessive partitive relation between two words." (HGJ, p. 225.) See sections 43 and 55.

THE POSTPOSITION *ni*

14. *Ni* is used to indicate the locative and also the temporal relationships (with *ji*, *gatsu*, *nen* and the days of the week). These relationships are usually expressed in English with the prepositions *at* or *in*.

Nyū Yōku ni sunde imashita (V, 44) *lived in New York*

Kono kinjo ni niku-ya ga arimasu ka? (VII, 27) *Is there a butcher shop in this neighborhood?*

Burajiru ni imasu (XIV, 36) *has been in Brazil*

Nan ji ni demasu ka? (XV, 5) *What time does it leave?*

Nigatsu jū go nichi ni (VIII, 31) *on the fifteenth of February*

ni jikan-goto ni (XIII, 62) *every two hours*

However, the postposition *de* (see section 22), expresses the locative when the verb is one of action rather than of a state of being.

Kono tsugi no heya de bōshi wo utte imasu ne (X, 18) *In this next room they sell hats, don't they?*

Kono ginkō de torihiki shite imasu ka? (XIV, 7) *Do you have an account with this bank?*

Kōbe de umarete (VIII, 26) *being born in Kobe*

hichi fun kan gurai de (XII, 13) *in about seven minutes*

The postposition *ni* or *de* is generally employed with locative adverbs except with the verb *desu* or any of its forms.

asoko ni (XII, 11) *there*

shita ni (XII, 19) *under*

soba ni (XIII, 3) *beside*

doko ni (XIII, 2) *where*

do'ko de (IX, 16) *where*

naka ni (XIV, 58) *inside*

If the verb on which the locative depends is one of motion, the postposition used is *e*, e. g., *Kisha no naka e mochikonde kudasai* (XV, 33) *Please carry it into the station* (see section 33).

Ni also expresses (*in order*) *to*, *into*, or *for*; e. g., *kaimono ni iku tsumori desu* (IX, 1) *intend to go shopping*; *kore ni hakikaete . . . kudasai* (XII, 25) *please change into these*. A verb, object of *in order to* may be translated by the continuative form of the verb (see section 27), followed by *ni*, e. g., *Nagasaki e kinu wo kai ni ikimashita* *He went to Nagasaki in order to buy silk*.

Ni indicates the indirect object of the verb. It may not be omitted as it is sometimes in English.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Dare ni ano tegami wo watashimashita ka?
(III, 28) | <i>To whom did you hand that letter?</i> |
| Tomodachi ni ano tegami wo watashimashita (III, 30) | <i>I gave that letter to my friend.</i> |
| Shashō ni o-kiki nasai (IX, 21) | <i>Ask the conductor.</i> |
| Jochū ni . . . itte kudasai (XII, 41) | <i>Please tell (to) the maid.</i> |

THE POSTPOSITION TO

15. To is used to mean *and*, connecting nouns and pronouns. It is not used after the last noun or pronoun in a series, and is never used to express *and* connecting clauses (see section 83).

- | | |
|---|--|
| Hamu to tamago wo tabemasu (III, 3) | <i>I eat ham and eggs.</i> |
| Waishatsu to shima no shatsu wo misete kudasai (IX, 39) | <i>Please show me some white shirts and some striped shirts.</i> |
| Koko ni cha-iro to tobi-iro no ii no ga gozaimasu (X, 11) | <i>Here are some good tan and brown ones.</i> |

After the present form of the verb at the end of a dependent clause to means *when*, *whenever*, or *if*, and it usually expresses a habitual occurrence. In this case, if the final verb is past, the dependent verb is construed as referring to past time also.

- | | |
|---|--|
| go-roku chō yuku to (IX, 32) | <i>when one goes or if one goes</i> |
| Kinu no ura wo tsukemasu to, mitsu-gumi ga roku jū yen de gozaimasu (X, 53) | <i>If we put in a silk lining, the suit will be sixty yen.</i> |
| daigaku wo deru to (XIV, 41) | <i>when he is graduated from the university</i> |

To is also equivalent to the conjunction *that*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Kagetsu e itte, tabete goran to kaite arimashita (XI, 35) | <i>It said (it was written) that I should go to the Kagetsu restaurant and try it.</i> |
| Muri wo shita to miete (XIII, 60) | <i>it appears that you abused yourself and</i> |
| Kane wo okutte yarō to omotte iru tokoro desu (XIV, 31) | <i>I think that I shall send money.</i> |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Yukitai to itte imasu (XIV, 42) | <i>He says that he wants to go.</i> |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|

To iimasu or to mōshimasu accordingly means *said that*, *said as*, *is called*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Haru, natsu, aki, fuyu to iimasu (X, 30) | <i>They are said as Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter, i. e. they are called Spring, Summer, etc.</i> |
|--|--|

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Amanoya to iu . . . yado-ya (XII, 8) | <i>an inn said as Amanoya, i. e. an inn called Amanoya.</i> |
|--------------------------------------|---|

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Anata no namae wa nan to iimasu ka? | <i>Your name, what is it said as?, i. e. What is your name?</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---|

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Buraun to mōshimasu (VI, 5) | <i>I am called Brown.</i> |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|

To iu is often used simply to connect a subordinate clause with the noun it modifies.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Kyōiku-seido to iu kotoba (XVI, 40) | <i>the word which is called kyōiku-seido, i. e. the word kyōiku-seido</i> |
|-------------------------------------|---|

TWO POSTPOSITIONS

16. Two postpositions often govern the same noun. Each postposition then has the same function that it has when used singly.

- Watakushi ni wa kakimashen deshita (III, 37) *As-for to me, he didn't write i. e., He didn't write to me.*
 Ni shaku hassun no wo san mai morau koto ga dekimasu ka? (IX, 48) *May I take three two shaku, eight sun ones?*

17. Gohan is cooked rice. Uncooked rice is kome.

PAST TENSE

18. The verb form ending in *masu* is made past by changing *masu* to *mashi* and adding *ta*. The past of *desu* is *deshita* and when the latter is added to the negative form of the verb in *-masen* (see section 8), the polite past tense in the negative is formed.

- Nani wo tabemashita ka? (III, 11) *What did you eat?*
 Zasshi wo mimashita ka? (III, 19) *Did you see the magazine?*
 Hon wo yomimashita ka? (III, 21) *Did you read the book?*
 Nani mo tabemasen deshita (III, 15) *I didn't eat anything.*
 Kakimashen deshita (III, 37) *He didn't write.*

The past ending is *ta* and this is added to the continuative stem of verbs (see section 27). When verbs of the second class add *ta* to the continuative stem, the verb undergoes the same phonetic changes which take place when *te*, the gerundial ending (see section 30), is added. Thus the simple past tense may be formed by changing the *te* of the gerund to *ta*, e. g., *tabeta* (XI, 56), *ita* (XI, 14), *okutta* (XI, 4), *hanashita* (XI, 32) are past forms of *taberu*, *iru*, *okuru*, and *hanasu* respectively.

Attributively or in dependent clauses, the simple past is used more often than the form in *-mashita*.

The past form is often used attributively to modify a noun, e. g., *ikita sakana* (VIII, 52) *live fish* (*ikiru* is the verb *live, be alive*), *dekiagarimashita toki de* (X, 63) *the completed time, i. e. when it is finished*.

The past form sometimes corresponds to a present in English, e. g., *yoku irasshaimashita* (XI, 41) *you are welcome*, *arigatō gozaimashita* (VIII, 18) *it was kind, i. e. you are very kind*, and *o-naka ga sukimashita* (XI, 19) *stomach became empty, i. e., I am hungry*. These forms would seem to correspond to a perfect.

The colloquial suffix *ta* comes from *tari* which was originally *te* plus *ari*, and *tari* does not of itself constitute a past tense, but it does to some extent correspond with a perfect tense and did not function as a preterit; vid. HGJ, pp. 178, 179.

NEGATIVE PRONOUNS

19. The postposition *mo* is used after interrogative pronouns (see section 73), to form the negative of indefinite pronouns. The verb with which they are used must be negative for these pronouns to have a negative sense, e. g., *Nani mo shitaku arimasen* (IV, 13) *I don't want to do anything*, *Dare mo imasen* *Nobody is in*. See the formation of indefinite pronouns (section 23).

wa

20. With a negative verb the use of *wa* instead of *wo* emphasizes the object (see sections 3 and 5).

- Anata no zasshi wa mimasen deshita (III, 20) *I didn't see your magazine.*
 Ano otoko no hitotachi ni wa okurimasen deshita (III, 46) *I didn't send them to them.*

DESIRE

21. The desiderative form of the verb may be made by removing the ending *masu* and adding *tai* to the continuative stem of the verb (see section 27). The suffix *tai* is an adjective (see section 43) and therefore has a negative form *taku* which is used to form the negative desiderative. Both positive and negative desideratives may be followed by the verb *to be*. In such a case, the positive may be followed or not by *'n*, a contracted form of *mono thing*.

hanashitai (IV, 3)	want to speak
hanashitaku (IV, 5)	don't want to speak
okuritai (XIV, 56)	want to send
kaitai desu (XIV, 47)	want to buy
kaitaku arimasen (IV, 26)	don't want to buy
toritai (XV, 2)	want to take

Hoshii or *nozomi* *want, desire* followed or not by the verb *to be* expresses wish for a *thing*. The thing desired is followed by *ga* in the affirmative and *wa* in the negative (see section 20). Hoshii is an adjective and therefore its negative is *hoshiku*.

Shizuka na heya ga hoshii desu (XII, 20) *I want a quiet room.*

Bōshi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasu ka? (X, 22) *Do you wish a hat?*

THE POSTPOSITION *de*

22. The postposition *de* expresses the instrumental case, i. e. the means by which something is accomplished, and may be translated by *or with*.

hikōki de (IV, 27)	by means of an airplane
kore de (XI, 64)	by means of this, i. e. with this
Basu de ikimashō ka? (IX, 8)	Shall we go by bus?
densha de (VIII, 60)	by street car
sokutatsu de (XIV, 52)	by special delivery

De often corresponds to English *in*, e. g., *Nihon go de hanashitai desu ka?* (IV, 3) *Do you want to speak in Japanese?* *tegami de hanashita ryōriya* (XI, 31) *the restaurant spoken about in the letter*. With *naru* *become* it has the meaning *for* in expressions like *Mina de ni jū go sen ni narimasu* (XIV, 61) *It comes to twenty-five sen for all* and *Ryōhō de san jū hachi yen ni narimasu* (XV, 31) *It's thirty-eight yen for both*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

23. The postposition *ka* placed after an interrogative pronoun forms an indefinite pronoun; e. g., *nani ka* (IV, 14) *anything, something*, *nani ka yōji* (XIII, 34) *some business or other*, *doko ka* (XI, 34) *somewhere, anywhere*, *dare ka* *somebody*. (See sections 1, 19, 73, and 106.)

CORRELATIVES

24. *Either . . . or* correlating nouns, pronouns, or adjectives is expressed by the postpositions *de mo* placed after each noun, pronoun, or adjective. *Neither . . . nor* is expressed in like fashion by *mo . . . mo* with the verb in the negative. *Either* alone is *de mo* with a negative verb.

kōhī de mo, o-cha de mo (IV, 18)	either coffee or tea
Amari ōkiku mo chiisaku mo gozaimasen (VI, 41)	It's neither too big nor too small.
hambun de mo, sambun no ichi de mo (VII, 61)	either a half or a third

Sō de mo gozaimasen (VI, 35)

It isn't that either, i. e. Not at all.

Alternative questions are made by the juxtaposition of two independent questions with or without a conjunction.

Densha de ikimashō ka? Basu de ikimashō ka? (IX, 8)

Shall we go by trolley or by bus?

Sangai ga yoroshiū gozaimasu ka? Shi kai ga yoroshiū gozaimasu ka? (XII, 17)

Do you prefer the third floor or the fourth floor.

Anata no uchi e todokemashō ka matawa motte o-kaeri ni narimasu ka? (IX, 51)

Shall we deliver it to your home or do you want to take it with you?

CAPABILITY

25. The attributive form of the verb (see section 26) modifying *koto* thing used as subject of the verb *dekiru* is *possible* expresses capability. In the affirmative the postposition *ga* is always employed after *koto*. The negatives and the past tense of this expression are formed in the usual manner (see section 8 and 18). Compare the potential, section 90.

tobu *koto* ga dekimasu (IV, 28)

flying thing is possible, i. e. can fly

Yomu *koto* ga dekimasen (IV, 41)

the reading thing is not possible; Reading is not possible, i. e., (I) can't read.

Taberu *koto* ga dekimashita ka? (IV, 34)

was eating possible?, i. e., Could you eat?

tsukau *koto* ga deki-nai kara (XI, 46)

because he can't use

CONCLUSIVE FORM OF THE VERB

26. In the present-day colloquial, the attributive and the predicative or conclusive form of the verb are the same (see HGJ, p. 92 for development).

Most Japanese dictionaries and grammars in Roman letters give verbs in the conclusive form, and for this reason this form is sometimes referred to as an infinitive. Its functions, however, do not correspond to our infinitive, for it is used as a present tense. In contradistinction to the polite present (see section 7) it may be called the simple present.

There are two classes of verbs in Japanese. To class I belong those verbs whose conclusive form ends in *ru* preceded by a syllable ending in *e* or *i*, e. g., *taberu* (IV, 34) *eat*, *kazoeru* (VII, 1) *count*, *miru* *see*, *dekiru* (XI, 13) *be possible, be ready*, *iru* (XI, 7) *be*. There are very few verbs of the first class ending in *iru*, so that most verbs ending in *ru* preceded by any vowel other than *e* belong to the second class.

To class II belong verbs whose conclusive form has the last syllable ending in *bu*, *gu*, *ku*, *mu*, *nu*, *ru*, *su*, *tsu*, or a vowel plus *u*. If a verb ends in *ru* preceded by *a*, *o*, or *u*, or sometimes when preceded by two vowels, it belongs in class II. The following are verbs of class II: *tobu* (IV, 28) *fly*; *isogu* (IV, 45) *hurry*; *kaku* *write*, *yomu* (IV, 41) *read*, *shinu* *die*, *suwaru* (IV, 47) *sit*; *mawasu* (IV, 31) *drive*; *tatsu* (IV, 44) *stand*, *kau* (IV, 29) *buy*, *iu* (XVI, 41) *say*.

An exception to the latter rule may be noted in *kaeru* *change* which belongs to class I, while *kaeru* *return, come back* belongs to class II. Thus the gerundial form of *kaeru* *change* is *kaete* with one *t* and its continuative stem is *kae* (see *hakikaete* (XII, 25) and *kikae* (XII, 51), while the gerundial form of *kaeru* (VII, 15) *return* is *kaette* with two *t*'s and *kaeri* (IX, 52) is its continuative stem. (See sections 27, 30, 116, and 117.)

There are two irregular verbs in Japanese, *suru* (IV, 43) *do* and *kuru* *come*.

The simple present form is more often used than the polite form as an attributive or in dependent clauses. The verb *desu* has the simple present form *da* or *de aru*. The simple negative present is made by adding *nai* to the negative form (see sections 56 and 57).

sukoshi hiro-sugiru kara (X, 7)	<i>because it's a little too wide</i>
Itsu dekiru ka kiite kudasai (XI, 13)	<i>please ask when it will be ready</i>
tsukau koto ga deki-nai kara (XI, 46)	<i>because he can't use</i>
jū yen satsu da kara (XI, 64)	<i>since it's a ten yen bill</i>
atsu-sugiru yō da kara (XII, 54)	<i>as it seems too hot</i>
yogorete iru sentaku mono (XI, 7)	<i>the soiled laundry</i>

CONTINUATIVE FORM OF THE VERB

27. By removing the ending *ru* of the conclusive form (see section 26) of verbs of class I, we obtain the continuative stem of those verbs. Verbs of the second class change the final *u* of the conclusive form to *i* to form their continuative stem. Two phonetic changes take place when *i* is added to verbs of class II: verbs ending in *tsu* drop the *su* and the *t* is palatalized, giving the continuative ending *chi* while verbs ending in *su* have their continuative ending *si* palatalized to *shi*. The continuative stem of the irregular verbs *kuru* and *suru* are *ki* and *shi* respectively.

The continuative form of *desu* is *de*, and the *r* of *gozaru*, *nasaru*, *kudasaru*, and *irassharu* usually disappears in the colloquial giving a continuative stem *gozai-*, *nasai-*, *kudasai-*, and *irasshai-* respectively.

The continuative stem is so called because it is the form to which suffixes or other verbs are added, e. g., *hakikaete* (XII, 25) *change (shoes, socks, etc.)* is composed of *haku* *put on (shoes, socks, etc.)* and *kaeru* *change*, *norikaetara* *if transfer* is made up of *noru* *ride* and *kaeru* *change* while *uriko* (X, 27) *salesgirl, salesman* is composed of *uru* *sell* and *ko* *child* (see section 9). When the suffix *masu* is added to the continuative stem, we obtain the polite present form of the verb. When we add *tai*, we obtain the desiderative form.

Another continuative use of this form may be seen in section 44. The continuative stem and the noun form are identical (see section 40).

Compound verbs sometimes have a different meaning than would be derived from the two parts. The verb *dasu* (XIII, 54) *put out* is sometimes used with the continuative stem of verbs to mean *begin to*; however in *okuri-dashi* (XIV, 45) *to send off* and *haki-dashite* (XIII, 58) *throw out, expel* *dasu* adds little to the meaning of the verb.

ADVERBS

28. Adverbs generally precede the verbs or adjectives they modify.

sugu motte mairimasu (XI, 63)	<i>I'll bring immediately</i>
yoku yuku (XI, 27)	<i>often go</i>
kanari yawarakai (XI, 57)	<i>quite tender</i>
However an adverb often precedes a noun subject or object.	
Fukaku iki wo sutte kudasai (XIII, 57)	<i>Please breathe deep.</i>
Hayaku yao-ya e yukimashō (VII, 48)	<i>Let's go quickly to the grocery store.</i>
taihen kiji ga yō gozaimashite (IX, 42)	<i>the material seems very good and</i>
An adjective modifying a verb is used in the adverbial form (see section 43).	
Mijikaku kara-nai de kudasai (XV, 3)	<i>Please don't cut it short.</i>
Adverbs of place usually take the locative particle <i>ni</i> (see section 14), but adverbs of time or quantity take no postposition except for emphasis.	
Ima tegami wo kakitai desu ka? (IV, 20)	<i>Do you want to write a letter now?</i>
Ima wa nani mo suru koto ga dekimasen (IV, 43)	<i>I can't do anything now.</i>
Sukoshi o-machi kudasai (XIII, 19)	<i>Please wait a little.</i>

- Sukoshi wa dekimasu (IV, 38) *I can a little.*
 Kesa ichi man no ebi ga tsukimashita (VIII, 40) *This morning ten thousand shrimp arrived.*
 Kesa wa nedoko kara okiraremasen (XIII, 45) *I can't get out of bed this morning.*

The adverbs of place *koko* (VIII, 66) *here*, *soko* (VIII, 36), *there* (near the person addressed), and *asoko* (VIII, 62) *over there* (distant from the person addressed) and the forms *kochira*, *sochira*, and *achira* correspond to the related demonstratives (see section 10).

Konna ni in *this manner*, *sonna ni* in *that manner*, *anna ni* in *that manner* all correspond to *such*, *in such a way*, and they differ from each other as do the corresponding demonstratives.

Most adverbs as Sansom says "are either adverbial phrases or other parts of speech functioning as adverbs. Such a word as *ima* *now* is a noun by origin (*ma*-space) . . ." (HGJ, p. 290) Nouns are sometimes made to function as adverbs by the addition of the postpositions *ni* or *to*; e. g., *hajime ni* (XI, 44) *first of all*; verbs in the gerundial form may function as adverbs; e. g., *hajimete* (VI, 12) *for the first time*, *isoide* (XV, 2) *quickly*, adverbial forms of *hajimeru* *begin* and *isogu* *hurry* respectively. Adjectives by the addition of *ku* to the stem may become adverbs; e. g., *hayai* *fast*, *quick* forms *hayaku* (VII, 48) *quickly*.

BECAUSE

29. *Kara* *because* always follows the explanation. Note that *kara* after the gerundial form of the verb does not mean *because* (see section 80).

- tatsu koto ga dekimasen kara *because I can't stand*
 (IV, 44)
 isogimasu kara (IV, 21) *because I'm in a hurry*
 Nippon-go wo yomu koto ga dekimasen *because I can't read Japanese.*
 kara (IV, 41)

Kara is often used as is English *so* at the end of a thought. Many times *kara* has no meaning whatever and is used simply to wind up a sentence; compare the same function of *ga*, section 5.

- kusuri wo agemasu kara (XIII, 61) *I'll give you some medicine and . . .*
 No *de* is used to mean *because*.
 neraremasen deshita no de (XIII, 44) *because I couldn't sleep*
 ichiban ue no kampan ni arimashita no de *because it was on the top deck*
 (XV, 59)
 keshiki no yoi tokoro ga takusan aru no de *because it has many fine scenic places*
 (XVI, 53)

Because of, on account of, for the sake of is expressed by *no tame ni*; e. g., *jishin no tame ni* (XVI, 27) *on account of earthquakes*.

GERUNDIAL FORM OF THE VERB

30. The gerundial form of the verb is formed by the addition of the suffix *te* (for development see HGJ, p. 175 et seq.) to the continuative stem of the verb (see section 27), e. g., *tabete* (V, 1) *eating*, *mite* (V, 3) *seeing*, *irete* (XIII, 20) *inserting*. These are all verbs of class I, as may be seen by their conclusive forms which are *taberu*, *miru*, and *ireru* respectively.

When *te* is added to verbs of class II, certain sound changes take place; viz. the final *i* of the continuative stem is dropped and a resulting final *k* vocalizes to *i*, e. g., the verb

kaku write (conclusive form) is **kaki** in its continuative form and dropping the **i**, we have the base, and to the base **te** is added. Thus the hypothetical form **kakte** gives us, by the vocalization of the **k**, the gerundial form **kaite** (V, 13) *writing*. If the final consonant of the base is **g** (the voiced form of **k**) it also vocalizes, but after having voiced the **t** of the gerundial ending **te** to **de**; e. g., **isogu** (IV, 45) is **isogi** in its continuative form, and dropping the **i** and obtaining the base, we have **isog-**. When we add **te**, however, we get the gerundial form **isoide** (V, 47) *hurrying*.

Verbs whose bases end in **n**, **m**, or **b** likewise voice the **t** of **te** to **d**, e. g., **shinu** *die*, **shini** (continuative form), **shin-** (base), **shinde** (gerundial form) *dying*; **yomu** (IV, 41) *read*; **yom** plus **te** gives **yonde** (V, 22) *reading*; **tobu** (IV, 28) *fly*: **tob** plus **te** gives **tonde** (VII, 9) *flying, skipping*. In the case of **bt** becoming **nd** and **mt** becoming **nd**, note that besides voicing the **t**, both the **b** and the **m** have become accommodated (i. e. partially assimilated) to the following dental. That is, they have become the dental nasal **n**.

If the base of the verb ends in **ch** or **r**, these sounds are assimilated to the following **t** of **te**, e. g., **tatsu** (IV, 44) *stand*: **tach-** plus **te** gives **tatte** (V, 5) *standing*; **suwaru** (IV, 47) *squat*: **suwar-** plus **te** gives **suwatte** (V, 30) *squatting*.

Verbs whose base ends in a vowel simply double the **t** of the **te** ending, e. g., **arau** *wash*: **ara-** plus **te** gives **aratte** (V, 34) *washing*; **suu** *suck*: **su-** plus **te** gives **sutte** (XIII, 57) *sucking*.

It should be noted that the gerundial form of **iku** *go* is spelled irregularly **itte** *going*, and it should not be confused with **itte** *saying* which is from **iu**.

The honorific form of **iku** *go*, **kuru** *come*, and **iru** *be* is **ide** and it is preceded by the honorific prefix **o**.

Kochira e o-ide kudasai (IX, 41)

Please come this way.

Nagasaki e o-ide ni narimasu ka? (XV, 39)

Are you going to Nagasaki?

O-isha San wa o-ide de gozaimasu ka?
(XIII, 28)

Is the doctor at home?

The **-te** form is often employed as a noun, and thus the name gerundial although not completely accurate, seems adequate.

Tsukue no hashi ni oite wa abunai desu
(XIII, 4)

Putting it on the edge of the table is dangerous.

The uses of the **-te** form as Sansom says (HGJ, p. 175) "can all be explained as conjunctive uses" (see sections 37 and 44).

See sections 116 and 117.

PROGRESSIVE FORM OF THE VERB

31. The progressive tenses are made by the gerundial form of the verb (see section 30) plus the verb **iru** (its honorific form, **irassharu**) or **oru** meaning *be* (see section 71). When **iru** and **oru** are in the present tense, the verb is in the present progressive; when **iru** or **oru** are past, the verb is past progressive.

The progressive tenses only partially correspond to those in English. The simple present or polite present (see section 7) is used for customary action, but the progressive must be used in Japanese when the action of the verb is continuing.

Nani wo shite imasu ka? (V, 8)

What are you doing?

Nani mo shite imasen (V, 9)

I am not doing anything.

Nani wo shite irasshaimasu ka? (XIV, 34)

What is he doing?

Nani wo motte imasu ka? (V, 10)

What do you have?

Empitsu wo motte imasu (V, 11)

I have a pencil.

Nani go wo yonde imashita ka? (V, 19)

What language were you reading?

Ryoken wa motte ita (XV, 49)	<i>I had a passport</i>
kirashite orimasu (X, 10)	<i>out of stock</i>
Yottsu no shima de naritatte imasu (XVI, 16)	<i>It consists of four islands.</i>

Nani ga haitte imasu ka? (XIV, 58)	<i>What is inside?</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------

The progressive is often used to express a resultant state or condition and corresponds to a perfect tense in English. This is generally true with the verb *iku go* so that *itte imasu* (VI, 27) means *have gone, went*.

yogorete iru sentaku mono (XI, 7)	<i>the laundry which has been soiled</i>
yukitai to itte imasu (XIV, 42)	<i>he has said that he wants to go</i>
Nodo ga kawaite imasu (XI, 50)	<i>throat has become dry, i. e.: I am thirsty.</i>
shimpo shite imasu (XVI, 39)	<i>has progressed</i>
kambi shite imasu (XVI, 47)	<i>has been perfected</i>

The negative progressive is formed by the gerund followed by the negative of *iru, oru*, etc. *Iru* is a verb of the first class so that its continuative stem is *i*.

Nani mo kaite imasen deshita (V, 14)	<i>I wasn't writing anything.</i>
michi ni mukatte i-nai heya (XII, 20)	<i>a room not facing the street</i>

The verb *shiru know* is used in the progressive in the affirmative, e. g., *shitte imasu ka?* *do you know* but not in the progressive when negative, e. g., *shirimasen* (XII, 3) *don't know*.

The word *tokoro place* by extension has come to mean *situation* or *time* and therefore also *when* or *while*. Sometimes it means *the thing that* or *that which*. The attributive form of the progressive often modifies *tokoro desu* which seems simply to give expression to the certainty of the statement. Compare *no desu* (section 55).

okutte yarō to omotte iru tokoro desu (XIV, 31)	<i>I am at the intending-to-send point, i. e., I intend to send</i>
---	---

See section 117.

PLEASE

32. A polite request is made by the addition of *kudasai condescend* to the gerundial form of the verb (see section 30). *Kudasai* is an imperative form of *kudasaru*. *Dōzo please* may also be used.

Hanashite kudasai (V, 6)	<i>Please speak.</i>
Yonde kudasai (V, 17)	<i>Please read.</i>
Jissen ni makete kudasai (VIII, 55)	<i>Please reduce it to ten sen.</i>
Dōzo tatte kudasai (V, 5)	<i>Please stand up.</i>

The gerundial form may be used with *nasai*, but as *nasai* is the imperative of *nasaru do*, such an expression corresponds more to a command than to a polite request. However, if either *nasai* or *kudasai* is used with the noun form of the verb (see section 40), the latter preceded by the honorific prefix *o*, a very polite request is made.

O-kiki nasai (IX, 21)	<i>Please ask.</i>
O-nori nasai (IX, 19)	<i>Please get on.</i>
Erebētā wo o-tori kudasai (IX, 36)	<i>Please take the elevator.</i>
Dōzo o-hairi kudasai (X, 21)	<i>Please enter.</i>

The verb *kureru give, let have* (see section 86) is used for *please* also, but it is not so polite as *kudasaru*. It is often used to avoid repetition of the latter verb, e. g., *motte kite kureru yō ni itte kudasai* (XII, 41) *please tell (her) to please bring*.

A polite request not to do something is formed by the negative stem of the verb (see section 56) plus *nai de kudasai*.

- Chūmon shi-nai de kudasai (XI, 24) Please do not order.
 Sawara-nai de kudasai (XIII, 52) Please don't touch.
 Wasure-nai de kudasai (XI, 47) Please don't forget.
 The gerund and kudasaimasen ka? express *won't you please*, e. g., *chiisai ginka ni kaete kudasaimasen ka?* (XIV, 16) *won't you please change?*

THE POSTPOSITION *e*

33. The postposition *e* indicates motion toward, and may be translated by *to*. The postposition *ni* (see section 14) indicates a more stationary relationship and corresponds more frequently to *at* or *in*. However, with verbs of motion *e* sometimes corresponds to *at* or *in*.

- minami e magatte (IX, 18) turning to the south
 Koko e niku to yasai wo motte mairima-shita (XI, 53) I brought here meat and vegetables.
 O-isha San e denwa wo kakesasete kudasai (XIII, 10) Please have her phone to the doctor.
 Nan ji ni Nagasaki e tsukimasu ka? (XV, 11) What time does it arrive at Nagasaki?
 hongoku e hairimasu (XVI, 10) one enters (in) the mainland

wakaru

34. *Wakaru* is the intransitive form of *wakeru* *divide, distinguish, classify* (see section 91) and does not take an object. *Wakaru* means *to be clear* and therefore *Watakushi ni wa wakarimasen deshita* (V, 18) means *It was not clear to me*.

PERMISSION

35. To ask permission the gerundial form of the verb (see section 30) is followed by *mo even, if* and the phrase *ii desu ka?* or *ii n' desu ka?* *is it good? is it all right?* In this expression *n'* is a contracted form of *mono* thing. Naturally in granting permission *ka* is omitted.

- Aratte mo ii n' desu ka? (V, 33) Is it all right if I wash; i. e., May I wash?
 Haitte mo ii n' desu ka? (V, 40) May I enter?
 Akete mo ii n' desu (V, 28) You may open it.

PROHIBITION

36. Prohibition is expressed by the gerundial form of the verb (see section 30) followed by *wa ikemasen* (see section 20). *Ikemasen*, a potential form of *iku* (see section 90) means *cannot go*, so that *haitte wa ikemasen* (V, 41) means *as for entering, it doesn't go*, i. e. *you must not enter*. *Narimasen* may replace *ikemasen* in these expressions.

USE OF COME AND GO WITH THE GERUNDIAL FORM OF THE VERB

37. *Motte kuru* *come having* means *bring*. The conclusive form of *motte* is *motsu* *have, possess*. The expression *motte kite kudasai* (V, 12) is literally *condescend to come having*. *Motte iku* *go having* means *take* and the phrase *motte itte kudasai* (V, 15) literally means *condescend to go having*.

Bringing or taking a person is expressed in a like manner with *tsurete*, the gerundial form of *tsureru* *accompany*. *Tomodachi wo tsurete kite kudasai* (V, 37) means *Please come accompanying your friend*, i. e. *please bring your friend* and *Watakushi wo benjo e tsurete itte kudasai* (V, 35) means *Please go accompanying me to the lavatory*, i. e. *Please take me to the lavatory* (W.C.).

The conclusive form of *tsuite* is *tsuku follow*. *Tsuite itte* (V, 38) means *go following* while *tsuite kite* (V, 39) means *come following*. Therefore, *Please follow me* is *Tsuite kite kudasai* (V, 39) and *Please follow him* is *Tsuite itte kudasai*.

The verbs *kuru* and *iku* may be replaced by humble or honorific forms with the same meanings (see section 38), e. g., *motte kimashita* (XI, 4) *he brought* and *motte mairimashita* (XI, 54) *I brought*.

The verb *agaru go up* replaces *kuru* and *iku* to mean *bring up* or *take up*, e. g., *jochū ga motte agarimasu* (XII, 50) *the maid will bring up* while *kaeru* replaces *kuru* and *iku* to mean *bring home* or *take home*, e. g., *motte o-kaeri ni narimasu ka?* (IX, 52) *Will you return having it?* i. e., *Will you take it with you?* and *motte kaerimasu kara* (X, 15) *because I am taking it home*.

In speaking of an errand, one does not say *go and do something*, but *do something and come back*, e. g., *toranku wo azukete kimasu*. (XV, 37) *I'll check the trunk and come*, i. e., *I'll go and check the trunk*.

Japanese is more explicit than English in the expression *okutte yarō* (XIV, 31) *I shall send and give* which expresses the fact that the money is not only sent, but also given.

HONORIFICS

38. The prefixes *go* or *o* are used with nouns or adjectives to indicate respect. Thus a personal or possessive pronoun is often unnecessary. *Go-shujin* means *honorable master*, thus, *your master*, and *o-taku* means *honorable house*, thus, *your house*. The honorific prefixes are used with the things of the third person, but they are not employed to indicate the things of the first person. In fact, certain humble words or expressions are sometimes employed to indicate one's own things or one's own actions. Thus *kanai* (VI, 10) means *my wife*, but *okusama* (VI, 20) means *your wife* or *his wife*; *musuko* (VI, 44) means *my son*, but *musuko San* means *your son*; *ototo* (XIV, 35) *my younger brother* but *otōto San* (XIV, 33) *your younger brother*.^{*} The prefix *go* is usually used with words of Chinese origin and *o* with native words, but this is not always the case.

<i>o-kazoku</i> (VIII, 44)	<i>your family</i>
<i>o-namae</i> (IX, 59)	<i>your name</i>
<i>o-tegami</i> (XI, 33)	<i>your letter</i>
<i>o-furo</i> (XII, 51)	<i>your bath</i>
<i>o-shigoto</i> (XIV, 39)	<i>his work</i>
<i>go issho ni</i> (IX, 4)	<i>with you</i>
<i>kazoku</i> (VIII, 46)	<i>my family</i>
<i>namae</i> (IX, 61)	<i>my name</i>
<i>tegami</i> (XI, 31)	<i>my letter</i>
<i>furo</i> (XII, 47)	<i>my bath</i>

The honorific prefix is used (especially by women) with nouns or adjectives having no relation to the person addressed simply to show respect, e. g., *o-nedan* (IX, 43) *the price*; *o-isha* (XIII, 10) *the doctor*; *go-shinsatsu* (XIII, 37) *medical examination*; *o-yasui* (VII, 54) *cheap*; *o-kagen* (XII, 52) *temperature*.

^{*} The following list of nouns denoting family relationships will be found useful: *aunt oba*; *elder brother ani*; *brother-in-law* (elder sister's husband) *ane-muko*; (younger sister's husband) *imōto-muko*; (one's wife's brother) *sai no ani* or *sai no otōto*; *daughter musume*; *ojōsan*; *daughter-in-law yome*; *father: (my) chichi*; (your or my) *otōsan*; *father-in-law yōfu*; *grandfather sofū*; *grandmother obāsan*; *grandson mago*; *granddaughter mago-musume*; *mother (my) haha*; (your or my) *okāsan*; *mother-in-law yōbo*; *nephew oi*; *niece mei*; *sister-in-law* (elder) *giri no ane*; (younger) *girl no imōto*; (wife of one's elder brother) *ani-yome*; *son musuko*; *son-in-law muko*; *uncle oji*.

It is the custom to speak derogatorily concerning one's own things and therefore in offering something to eat, the lady says *Amari oishiku arimasen* (VI, 41) *It's not very good.*

The prefix *o* is generally used and without honorific significance with certain nouns, viz., *o-cha* (III, 9) *tea*, *o-yu* (XII, 52) *hot water*, *o-naka* (XI, 58) *stomach*.

Sansom (HGJ, p. 118) explains the origin of the prefix *o* as a combination of *mi* *august* and *ô* *great* with sound changes.

Both the verb *gozaru* and the verb *irassharu* are more polite forms of *be* than *desu* or *arimasu*, and refer to the being of the second or third person. *Gozaru*, however, is used also by the first person in speaking to women or superiors in order to indicate respect. Women usually use the verb *gozaru* and it may be said that their language is generally more polite than that of men, e. g., *Sô de gozaimasu ka?* (VI, 20) *Is that so?* and *Ima dochira ni irasshaimasu ka?* (VI, 21) *Where is she now?* *Irassharu* is also an honorific form for *iku* and *kuru*.

Even certain pronouns and adverbs are considered more polite than others. For instance, *donata* (VI, 3) is more polite than *dare* (II, 8) for *who* and *dochira* (VI, 21) more polite than *doko* (IV, 9) for *where*.

Verbs are usually made honorific by prefixing *o* to their noun form (see section 40), but there are also special honorific and humble verbs and expressions, e. g., *o-tomari no tsumori desu* (XII, 38) *you intend to stay* and *o-jama ni narimashô* (XII, 40) *I shall be a disturbance*; i. e., *I shall stay*. The honorific form *goran* is used for *see* instead of *miru*, e. g., *Nani wo goran ni kakemashô ka?* (IX, 38) *What do you wish to see?*

For some common verbs there are humble, plain, and honorific forms, e. g., for *go* or *come* these are *mairu*, *iku*, *o-ide ni naru* respectively, for *do* *itasu*, *suru*, and *nasaru* respectively. (see section 109).

Because of the existence of these distinct forms a pronoun subject is not usually expressed.

Sansom says (HGJ, p. 80): "It is important to remember that, in Japanese, sentences can easily be constructed where, owing to the existence of special honorific locutions, the personal pronoun can be omitted without ambiguity. It may indeed be stated that a typical Japanese sentence does not include a personal pronoun, and where one is used it generally has an emphatic value. Thus:

<i>irasshaimasu ka</i>	<i>are you going.</i>
<i>mairimasu</i>	<i>I am going</i>

The use of honorific or humble verbs dispenses with the need for a pronoun, and if pronouns are used, . . . the sentence is better translated in an emphatic way . . ."

THE POSTPOSITION *de*

39. The postposition *de* is used after a noun or pronoun predicate of the verbs *aru* or *gozaru* *be*. It is the first syllable of the copula *desu* (a contraction of *de arimasu*). When *gozaru* or *aru* in the negative are preceded by nouns or by predicate adjectives which are not true, *de wa* or *ja* (a contracted form of *de wa*) is used.

<i>Donata de gozaimasu ka?</i> (VI, 3)	<i>Who are you?</i>
<i>Hachi jû go sen de gozaimasu</i> (VIII, 43)	<i>It is eighty-five sen.</i>
<i>Shikaku ja arimasen</i> (VI, 51)	<i>It is not square.</i>

THE NOUN FORM OF THE VERB

40. The continuative stem is used as a noun, e. g., *Kaeri wa densha de nakute mo, ii deshô ne.* (VIII, 60) *The-return if not by trolley, it's all right, isn't it?, i. e., We don't have to go back by trolley, do we?*

A polite form of the verb is made by prefixing *o* to the noun form of the verb and adding the verb *do*, *be* or *become* (*ni naru*) to the latter. *Iku* *go*, *kuru* *come* and *iru* *be* have the irregular polite form *o-ide* (see section 32).

O-yobi itashimasu (VI, 6)	<i>honorable-calling I do, i. e., I'll call</i>
O-matase itashimashita (VI, 8)	<i>honorable-causing to wait I did, I made you wait, i. e., I'm sorry I made you wait.</i>
Bōshi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasu ka? (X, 22)	<i>Is wishing a hat?, i. e., Do you wish a hat?</i>
Sashimi ga o-suki ja gozaimasen ka? (VIII, 49)	<i>Don't you like sashimi?</i>
O-isha San wa o-ide de gozaimasu ka? (XIII, 28)	<i>Is the doctor in?</i>
O-hanashi shite kudasaimasen ka? (XVI, 3)	<i>won't you please do speaking?, i. e., Won't you please talk?</i>
Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasu ka? (X, 37)	<i>Will you take both?</i>
Nagasaki e o-ide ni narimasu ka? (XV, 39)	<i>Are you going to Nagasaki?</i>
Itsu o-koshi ni narimashita ka? (XV, 43)	<i>When did you cross over?</i>
O-de ni narimashita (XIII, 19)	<i>It went out; It went through, i. e., The connection is made.</i>

The verb *negau* means *request* and the expression *o-negai itashimasu* *honorable-request I do; i. e., I beg you* is variously used, e. g., *Dōzo yoroshiku o-negai itashimasu* (VI, 13) means *Please (think) well (of me) I do beg; I beg you think well of me, i. e., I am pleased to meet you.*

agaru

41. *Agaru* means *to rise, come up, go up* and by extension *be offered*. The first occurrence of *Dōzo o-agari kudasai* (VI, 9) means *Please come up, i. e., Please come in*; the second (VI, 54) means *Please (accept) the going up (to offer you), i. e., Please be offered*. The antonym of *agaru* is *kudaru* *come down* to which *kudasaru* *condescend* is related. Note that *agaru* means *go up* in *Hakikaete o-agari kudasai* (XII, 25) *Please change and go up*.

kakaru AND kakeru

42. *Kakaru* and *kakeru* *hang* (see section 91) are used in many Japanese idioms. The expression *Hajimete o-me ni kakarimasu* (VI, 12) literally means *For the first time I hang on your honorable eyes, i. e., I'm glad to meet you*. The expressions *Ima o-me ni kakemasu* (XII, 23) *Now I'll hang it on your eyes, i. e., Now I'll show it to you*; *Jū yen no hoken wo kakete kudasai*. (XIV, 60) *Please hang ten yen insurance on it, i. e., Please insure it for ten yen*; *Nani wo goran ni kakemashō ka?* (IX, 38) *What can I show you?* all show idiomatic uses of these verbs.

Kakaru means *require* in expressions referring to time or price, e. g., *Dono kurai kakarimashō ka?* (VII, 34) *About how much will it require?, i. e., How long will it take?* and *Ikura kakarimasu ka?* *How much does it cost?* Note the meaning of *hanging, dependent* in the expression *kakari no mono* (X, 20) *the person in charge*.

ADJECTIVES

43. True adjectives end in *ai, ii, oi* or *ui* and modify a noun directly.

chiisai ginka (XIV, 16)	<i>small silver</i>
okii uchi (VI, 36)	<i>big house</i>
kuroi kutsu (IX, 1)	<i>black shoes</i>
marui hako (VI, 53)	<i>round box</i>

Other adjectives, which were originally nouns, or nouns used adjectively require **no** or **na** before a following noun which they modify. **Na** is from **naru** *be, become*; for **no** (see section 13).

Amerika no shikan (VI, 17)	American officer
o-kashi no hako (VI, 49)	candy box
tsugi no heya (X, 18)	next room
roku sen no kitte (XIV, 55)	six sen stamp
kirei na o-taku (VI, 33)	beauty is home; a home where beauty is, i. e., beautiful home.
shizuka na heya (XII, 20)	quietness is room; a room where quietness is, i. e., a quiet room.
omo na sambutsu (XVI, 34)	chief product

The stem (the part remaining when the adjectival ending **i** is removed) of true adjectives may be used with **no** to modify nouns, e. g., **shiro to kuro no goban** (X, 24) *black and white check*.

When true adjectives are used not attributively, as in the above examples, but predicatively with all verbs except **desu** and **gozaru** in the affirmative, they have a special adverbial form which is made by changing the final **i** to **ku**. The predicate form of adjectives which are not true is the same as their attributive form.

tōku arimasen (VI, 29)	is not far
ōkiku gozaimasen (VI, 41)	is not big
chiisaku gozaimasen (VI, 41)	is not small
hikuku arimasen (VI, 48)	is not short
takaku natte iru (XV, 63)	has become expensive
ōkiku narimashita (VIII, 27)	became big
shikaku ja arimasen (VI, 51)	is not square

Predicate adjectives with **desu** are used in the attributive or noun (stem) form, but with the verb **gozaru** *be*, true adjectives have a special form. This is formed by changing the endings **ai** and **oi** to **ō**, **ii** to **iū** and **ui** to **ū**.

tōi desu (VI, 28)	is far
takō gozaimasu (VII, 56)	is high
tō gozaimasu (VII, 32)	is far
oishiū gozaimasu (VII, 59)	is tasty
hikū gozaimasu	is short

The expression **o-hayō gozaimasu** (XIV, 1) *good morning* is literally *it is early* (**hayai** meaning *quick, fast, early*; cf. **hayaku** (VII, 48) *quickly*). **Arigatō** (XIV, 26) is composed of **aru** *be* and **katai** *difficult*. The literal meaning of *thank you* is (*kindness*) *is difficult (to find)*.

The forms ending in **ai**, **ii**, **oi**, or **ui** originally had a **k** before the **i**. **Ki** was the attributive ending and **ku**, the conjunctive or adverbial form. By a process of sound change, the **k** vocalized in the attributive form. The 'adverbial' form changed, but later reverted, except in several dialects, to the **ku** form. With the verb **gozaru**, however, the contracted forms persist in the standard colloquial. See HGJ, p. 109.

Most adjectives in **-i** may be used predicatively in the present tense without the verb **be**, e. g., **Doko de norikaetara ii ka?** (IX, 29) *Where if I change is it good?*, i. e., *Where should I change?* **Dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii ka?** (XII, 1) *Which inn is the best?*

True adjectives may be made past by eliding the final **u** of the adverbial form and affixing the verb **aru** in the simple past tense. Other adjectives must be followed by the verb **be** when used predicatively, and the verb **be** may be varied in tense. **Nai**, the negative of **aru**, is an adjective and has a past **nakatta**.

yasashii *easy, simple* (attributive form); **yasashiku** (adverbial form) **yasashikatta** (XV 49) *was easy*

yoi *good* (attributive form); **yoku** (adverbial form); **yokatta** (XV, 58) *was good*.

nakatta (XV, 53) *was not*

As this process gives a suffix **karu** with a past form **katta** and a gerund **katte** added to the base of adjectives (and because of a morphological similarity of verbs and adjectives) there are grammarians who speak of the conjugation of the adjective in Japanese (see sections 107 and 108).

When adjectives are used before other adjectives, they often add **te** to the adverbial form. Compare the continuative use of **te** with verbs (section 44).

atarashikute ōkiū gozaimasu (XII, 5) *is new and big*

Ōkikute akaru-sō na heya desu (XII, 34) *It is a large bright room.*

True adjectives used attributively, however, can be coördinated merely by juxtaposition, while others require **no** or **na**.

furui ii yado-ya (XII, 8) *good old inn*

kirei na ii heya *pretty room*

Adjectives of quantity and position sometimes follow the noun they modify just as do numeral auxiliaries (see section 64).

yoi tokoro ga takusan (XVI, 53) *many good places*

nimotsu wa mina (XV, 50) *all the baggage*

shindai wa ue (XV, 28) *upper berth*

Abstract nouns may be made from adjectives by affixing **sa** to the stem, e. g., **ōkii** (VI, 36) *large*, **ōkisa** (IX, 48) *size*, **nagai** (VI, 57) *long*, **nagasa** (IX, 48) *length*.

For pronouns formed from adjectives (see section 55).

COORDINATION AND SUBORDINATION

44. The continuative stem of the verb (see section 27) or the gerundial form (see section 30) are often used to form compound sentences. When so used, they have no tense or mood in themselves and derive their tense or mood from that of the final verb upon which they depend.

Rikugun no shikan de, Nyū Yōku kara *He is an army officer and comes from New York.*

o-ide ni narimashita (VI, 17) *being born in Kobe, i. e., was born in Kobe*

Kōbe de umarete (VIII, 26) *and*

(Watakushi no) tokei wo naoshite moratte *I want to have my watch fixed and . . .*

okitai (X, 40) *he is married and . . .*

kekkon shite (VI, 45) *Let's go to the bakery and . . .*

Pan-ya e itte (VII, 64) *I'll reduce it and . . .*

makete (VIII, 53) *to the west is the Korean peninsula and . . .*

nishi ni wa Chōsen hantō ga ari (XVI, 12) *The te form of the verb or the continuative stem often indicate that the action of that verb occurs prior to the action of the final verb, and then signify after. Sometimes they indicate a causal relationship between the gerund or continuative and the final verb, and then mean because.*

O-kikae ni natte, o-furo wo o-tori kudasai. *After changing, please take a bath, i. e.,*

(XII, 51) *Please change and take a bath.*

kozutsumi wo okuri-dashi (XIV, 45) *after sending off a package*

Soshite or shi and may be used to connect clauses, e. g., *Ryoken wa motte ita shi nimotsu...* (XV, 49) *I had a passport and the baggage . . .*

kara

45. The postposition *kara* indicates motion away from. It is used both locatively and temporally and may be translated by *from*. *Ima kara* means *from now on* and refers to the future.

Nyū Yōku kara (VI, 18)	from New York
koko kara (VI, 28)	from here
raigetsu kara (XIV, 37)	from next month on
Ima kara, kaimono ni ikimashō (VII, 12)	Let's go shopping from now; i. e., Let's go shopping now.

Ima kara ryōriya e ikimashō (XI, 39)	Let's go to the restaurant now.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------

Compare *Ima haitte wa ikemasen* (V, 41) *You mustn't come in now* and also *Ima dochira ni irasshaimasu ka?* (VI, 21) *Where is she now?*

ACCOMPANIMENT

46. *Together with* signifying accompaniment is expressed by the phrase *to issho ni together, at* (see section 15). *To* is omitted when the person accompanied is not expressed or when the person accompanied is governed by another postposition.

Watashidomo to issho ni sunde imasu (VI, 45)	He lives with us.
--	-------------------

Anata to issho ni aruite ita gunjintachi (XI, 14)	the military men who were walking with you
---	--

Go-issho ni mairimashō. (IX, 4)	I'll go with you.
---------------------------------	-------------------

Anata mo issho ni ikimasen ka? (IX, 2)	Don't you also want to go along?
--	----------------------------------

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

47. The comparative is often formed by placing *motto more* before adjectives or adverbs and *mō* before adverbs of quantity. The superlative is made by placing *ichiban* (literally *number one, i. e., first*) or *mottomo* before the adjective.

motto ōkii uchi (VI, 36)	a bigger house
ichiban ōkii (VI, 38)	the largest house
ichiban ii tamago (VII, 46)	the best eggs
ichiban itai (XIII, 50)	most painful
mottomo yūmei (XVI, 30)	most famous
mō sukoshi semai (X, 8)	little narrower

Hō side, direction is often used with the adjective to express the comparative, e. g., *chiisai hō no* (XV, 33) *the small side one, i. e., the smaller one* (see section 59).

Than after the comparative is expressed by *yori* in which case the adjective may be used in its positive form, e. g., *Kōbe e iku yori tōi desu ka?* (VI, 30) *Than to go to Kobe, is it far? Is it farther than Kobe?* In the negative *hodo extent* is used instead of *yori*, e. g., *Kōbe e yuku hodo tōku arimasen* (VI, 32) *The-going extent to Kobe is-not far; It is not far to the extent of going to Kobe, i. e., It is not so far as Kobe.* *Musume hodo hikuku arimasen* (VI, 48) *He is not short to the extent of the girl, i. e., He is not so short as the girl.*

The comparison of equality may be expressed by *to onaji the same as*, e. g., *sono menseki wa Tekisasu-shū to onaji de arimasu* (XVI, 5) *It's size is the same as the state of Texas.*

THE PARTICLE **ne**

48. The particle **ne** at the end of sentences adds the thought *isn't that so?* Sometimes it serves to intensify the thought of the sentence and corresponds somewhat to *really*. Other times it is added simply out of politeness, for it takes away from the positiveness of the sentence.

Kirei na o-taku ni sunde imasu ne (VI, 33)

You really live in a beautiful house.

ichiban ôkii desu ne (VI, 38)

this is the largest, isn't it?

Kono tsugi no heya de bôshi wo utte imasu ne (X, 18)

They sell hats in this next room, don't they?

THERE IS, THERE ARE, POSSESSION

49. The subject of *there is* or *there are* is governed by the postposition **ga** in the affirmative and **wa** in the negative, e. g., **Niku-ya ga arimasu ka?** (VII, 27) *Is there a butcher store?* **shindai wa gozaimasen** (XII, 31) *There is no bed.* See section 71.

Aru and **gozaru** are often used to indicate possession, in which case the possessor, if expressed, becomes the indirect object, e. g., **Anata ni wa okosan ga arimasu ka?** (VI, 42) *To you are there any children?*, i. e., *Do you have any children?* **Musume ga gozaimasu** (VI, 44) *There is a daughter*, i. e., *I have a daughter.*

USE OF **suru**

50. The verbs **suru**, **nasaru** or **itasu** meaning *do* added to a noun convert that noun into a verb. The noun in some cases is used without any postposition; in others with the postposition **wo**, and in still others, it is governed by **ni**, e. g., **kekkon suru** *do marriage*, i. e., *(to) marry*; see **kekkon shite** (VI, 45) *being married*.

Shitsurei shimashita (VI, 58)

I did rudeness. I was rude, i. e., I'm sorry.

taihen nagai wo shite (VI, 57)

doing very long, i. e., staying a long time

chûmon shite (X, 42)

do an order, i. e., to order

men shite imasu (XII, 27)

is doing face, i. e., is facing

torihiki shite (XIV, 7)

doing dealings, i. e., dealing

chokin shite (XIV, 19)

doing deposit, i. e., depositing

tennin sareru (XIV, 37)

is done a transfer, i. e., is transferred, will be transferred

uragaki wo shite kudasai. (XIV, 10)

please do indorsement, i. e., please endorse.

muri wo shita (XIII, 60)

did abuse, i. e., abused

sampo wo shi (XVI, 1)

do a walk, i. e., walk

gorufu wo shite (XVI, 51)

do golfing, (to) golf, i. e., play golf

kakitome ni shite (XIV, 46)

doing a registration, i. e., (to) register

chikki ni shite kudasai (XV, 32)

please do checking, i. e., please check

Suru is used with nouns referring to our senses or feelings meaning *have, get, be, become*. The noun of feeling is then governed by the postposition **ga**, e. g., **zutsû ga shite** (XIII, 44) *I had a headache and . . .* **Suru** has a similar meaning in the expressions **soshite** (**sô shite**) *and (being so)* and **sô sureba** (XIII, 63) *if it is so*.

THE POSTPOSITION **made**

51. **Made up to, until, by** indicates motion up to a point either temporal or spatial.

yo ji han made ni (VII, 24)

by four-thirty

niku-ya made (VII, 34)

as far as the butcher shop

jû hachi ni naru made (VIII, 26)

until he became eighteen

NUMERALS

52. There are two sets of numbers: those derived from the Chinese, *ichi, ni, san*, etc. and those of native origin, *hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu*, etc. The Japanese numbers are, with few exceptions, not used beyond *ten*. It may be said that, in general, the numbers which are of Chinese derivation are used to modify words of Chinese origin, while those of native origin are used to modify native words, e. g., *ikkin* (VII, 39) *one kin*, *ichi yen* (VII, 39) *one yen*, but *Sochira wa hitotsu* (VII, 43) *one of those (eggs)*, *yottsu no shima* (XVI, 16) *four islands*.

The suffix *tsu* of the numbers of native origin is omitted when the numeral precedes the noun it modifies, e. g., *hito-tabu* (VII, 51) *one bunch*.

Yo *four* is often used with nouns of time, place, or those referring to people to avoid using *shi* which is homophonous with *shi death* (see HGJ, p. 83), e. g.; *gogo no yo ji han* (VII, 24) *four thirty P. M.*; *itchōme no jū yo ban* (IX, 62) *number fourteen, First Street*. However see *shikai* (IX, 36) *fourth floor*. *Shi* and *shichi* are often replaced by *yo (yon)* and *nana* respectively, as their similarity in sound might lead to confusion, e. g., *yon jū go yen* (XV, 23) *forty-five yen*. However, *yo* is always used with *yen* and *shi* or *yon* with *sen*.

Hichi and *shichi*, *kyu* and *ku* (VIII, 28) are variant forms. The native numbers may be spelled with one *t*, e. g., *yotsu, mutsu, yatsu*.

The numbers above ten are constructed by using *jū ten* as a base. A number placed before *jū* multiplies it, while a number placed after it is added to it.

<i>san jitchōme</i> (VII, 29)	<i>thirtieth street</i>
<i>roku jissen</i> (VII, 39)	<i>sixty sen</i>
<i>jū issai</i> (VII, 19)	<i>eleven years old</i>
<i>san jū go</i> (VII, 53)	<i>thirty-five</i>

Counting above *sen a thousand* is done by means of *man ten thousand* and thus *ni man* *two ten-thousands* is *twenty thousand*, *jū man* *one hundred thousand*, and *hyaku man* *one hundred ten-thousands* is a *million*. There is, however, a special word *oku one hundred million*. It is also important to note that numbers above one thousand are not stated in hundreds as they sometimes are in English, e. g., *sen roppyaku san jū yo ban* (XIII, 13) *number one thousand six hundred thirty-four* (not *sixteen hundred and thirty-four*).

Two or three, four or five, etc. are expressed by juxtaposition of the numerals, e. g., *shi-go* (IX, 7) *four or five*; *go-roku* (IX, 32) *five or six*; *ni-san nichu* (IX, 57) *two or three days*. In consecutive numbers above ten used in this way, *jū* is omitted in the second number, e. g., *ni jū go-roku* *twenty-five or twenty-six*.

Fractions are expressed by means of the word *bun part*, thus: *sambun no ichi* (VII, 61) *of three parts—one, i. e., one of three parts, i. e., one third*; *shibun no san* *of four parts—three, i. e., three-fourths*. However, note the word *hambun* (VII, 61) *half* (see *han*, VII, 24) and *bun part*.

Ordinal numbers are formed by adding *bamme* (*ban number* and *me eye, division, mark on a scale* (see HGJ, p. 84) to the cardinals. Again, the numeral may be preceded by *dai order, succession* or followed by *gō mark*. However, when a numeral auxiliary (see section 64) is used with an ordinal number, *ban* is omitted and *me* follows the auxiliary. The post-position *no* is used between the ordinal and a following noun in accordance with section 43.

<i>san bamme no mado</i> (XIV, 22)	<i>third window</i>
<i>koko kara san jitchōme no tokoro</i> (VII, 29)	<i>a place the thirtieth street from here</i>
<i>Dai ikkwa</i> (I, 0)	<i>first lesson</i>
<i>go ken me</i> (VIII, 66)	<i>fifth house</i>
<i>ni chōme no kado</i> (IX, 19)	<i>second street corner</i>
<i>san gō sha</i> (XV, 35)	<i>third vehicle</i>

The ordinal idea is often expressed merely by juxtaposition, e. g., *shi kai* (IX, 36) *fourth floor* (see section 70).

See section 110.

THE SUFFIX *zutsu*

53. *Zutsu* is a suffix meaning *each, by, per*.

tō-zutsu tonde (VII, 9)

skipping (flying over) ten each, i. e., by tens

jikan goto ni hito saji-zutsu (XIII, 62)

one teaspoonful per every two hours

FUTURE

54. The so-called 'future' tense is actually a present tense which expresses probability or conjecture. It may denote either an action which is probably taking place in the present or one which will be performed in the future. The 'future' tense is used also to express the imperative *let us*.

"It has been pointed out that the Japanese verb in its simple forms is neutral as to time. In the earlier stages of the language time-relations do not appear to have been expressed with precision, but a number of suffixes which originally denoted other aspects, such as certainty, probability, etc., may now be looked upon as having developed a tense-significance." (HGJ, pp. 318-319.)

This 'future' form is made by the addition of *yō* to the negative stem (see section 56) of verbs of the first class, and *u* to the negative stem of those of the second class. However, when *u* is added to the *a* of the stem of second class verbs, the combination *au* contracts to *ō* (compare the pronunciation of *morau* as *morō* (VII, 60)). *Masu* and *desu* have the irregular 'future' forms *-mashō* and *deshō* (XI, 32) respectively (see sections 116 and 117).

tabeyō (XI, 20)

will eat

yarō (XIV, 31)

will give

ii deshō (VII, 21)

it is probably better

Ikaga de gozaimashō ka? (IX, 44)

What do you think about them?

Ichi ri gurai arimashō (IX, 13)

It probably is about one ri. I think it's about one ri.

kakarimashō (VII, 36)

it probably takes

Kochira wo moraimashō (VII, 57)

I'll take this.

Nan ji ni dekakemashō ka? (VII, 31)

What time shall we leave?

Yao-ya e yukimashō (VII, 48)

Let's go to the grocery.

Kashi wo kaimashō (VII, 64)

Let's buy some cake.

The present is often used to express a future action (see section 96).

The present tense or the attributive form of the verb with *tsumori* (see section 72) is used to express the future action of the second person, e. g., *Anata wa nan ji ni dekakemasu ka?* or *Anata wa nan ji ni dekakeru tsumori desu ka?* *What time will you leave?* or *What time do you intend to leave?*

THE POSTPOSITION *no*

55. *No* (perhaps a contracted form of *mono thing*) often serves to make a noun of a verb, e. g., *kaeru no* (VII, 15) *the return*. It may also serve to make a pronoun of an adjective.

ōkii no (VII, 44)

the big ones

mō sukoshi semai no (X, 8)

little narrower ones

cha-iro no (X, 14)

tan ones

yūmei na no (XVI, 30)

famous one

The expression *no desu* or its contracted form, *n' desu*, at the end of a sentence merely

serves to round out the thought and make it specific rather than general. No **desu** means *it is a thing*, i. e., *it is a fact that*.

Dō sareta n' deshō ka? (XIII, 6)

I wonder what was done with it. What could have happened to it?

Go-shinsatsu wo o-negai shitai n' desu
(XIII, 37)

*I want to request your examination, i. e.,
I want to ask you for an examination.*

NEGATIVE STEM OF VERBS

56. The negative stem of verbs of the first class is identical with their continuative forms (see section 27). It may be formed by adding **i** to the base of **iru** verbs and **e** to the base of **eru** verbs. The base of verbs of the first class is obtained by removing the **iru** or **eru** ending of the conclusive form. The negative stem of the verb **iru be, i** (XII, 21) is therefore quite regular. Verbs of the second class add **a** to the base (i. e., the conclusive form with the **u** removed). Verbs ending in **tsu** drop the **su** and thus their base ends in **t**, e. g., **matsu wait** is seen in its negative form in **mata-nakereba** (VII, 15) *if not wait*. Verbs whose base ends in a vowel add **w** which prevents hiatus, thus **kau** forms **kawa-nakereba** (VII, 26) *if not buy*, **au** forms **awa(zu)** (XV, 61) *not meet*, and **yau** forms **yowa(zu)** (XV, 58) *not being seasick*.

dekake-nakereba (VII, 33)

if not leave

wasure-nai (XI, 47)

not forget

kaera-nakereba (VII, 25)

if not return

tsurete ika-nai (VII, 20)

not accompanying

sawara-nai (XIII, 52)

not touch

hara-nakereba (XIV, 50)

if not paste

Kuru come has an irregular negative stem **ko** or **ki**, while the irregular negative stem of **suru do** is either **shi** or **se**. **Aru be** has no corresponding negative form; the adjective **nai is** *not serves as its negative*, e. g., **Shikata ga nai** (XV, 30) *There is no help for it*. (See sections 57 and 116.)

OBLIGATION

57. The negative stem of the verb followed by **nakereba narimasen, nakute wa narimasen**, (or by **nakereba ikemasen** for the second or third persons only) expresses the idea of *have to, be obliged to, or must*. **Nakereba** is the conditional form of **nai** and means *if it is not* (see sections 56 and 89). **Narimasen** is from **naruru become** and therefore **Mata-nakereba narimasen** (VII, 15) literally means *if not wait, not become; if I don't wait, nothing will become*, i. e., *I must wait, I have to wait*.

Kaera-nakereba narimasen ka? (VIII, 58)

Do you have to go home?

Ika-nakereba narimasen (IX, 6)

I must go.

hara-nakereba narimasen ka? (XIV, 50)

must I paste?

Nai and its past **nakatta**, used after the negative stem of the verb, form a present and past negative which are not so polite as the **masen** and **masen deshita** endings (see section 8). The affirmative forms which correspond to them in lack of politeness are the conclusive and the simple past respectively (see sections 26 and 18).

To express the fact that there is no obligation or necessity **nakute mo ii desu** may be used following the negative stem of the verb when the latter is expressed.

Ika-nakute mo ii desu

Even not going, it's all right, i. e., You don't have to go.

Kaeri wa densha de nakute mo ii deshō ne (VIII, 60) *We don't have to go back by trolley, do we?*

AGE

58. In asking a person's age, the expression **Anata wa ikutsu desu ka?** *As for you, how many are you?* is used, and the answer corresponds in form to the English. However with ages under ten the numeral auxiliary referring to years of age, **sai**, must be used with the numbers of Chinese origin, or else the numbers of native origin, i. e., **hitotsu**, **futatsu**, etc. are employed. Above ten, the numbers of Chinese origin are used with or without **sai**. The word **hatachi**, however, is used for *twenty years old*.

Ano ko wa iku sai desu ka? (VII, 18) *How old is she?*

Jū issai desu (VII, 19) *She is eleven.*

PREFERENCE

59. To express the idea that something is better than another or that it is better to do one thing rather than another, the word **hō side** is used modified by a noun or pronoun in the one case, and by the simple present of the verb or its corresponding negative form in the other. The expressions **yoroshiū gozaimasu** and **ii desu** mean *it is good*. Sometimes **hō** is not required and then an object preferred is governed by the postposition **ga**.

Densha no hō ga ii deshō (IX, 10) *A trolley car is probably better, i. e., A trolley car would be preferable.*

Tsurete ika-nai hō ga ii deshō (VII, 20) *It would be better not to take her along.*

Sangai ga yoroshiū gozaimasu ka? (XII, 17) *Do you prefer the third floor?*

Futsū de yoroshiū gozaimasu (XIV, 54) *Ordinary (mail) is all right, i. e., I prefer ordinary (mail).*

-ya

60. The suffix **ya** indicates the store where a thing is sold or the keeper of that store as well. In addressing the shopkeeper, however, **San** is added.

niku (VII, 26) *meat*; **niku-ya** (VII, 34) *butcher shop*; **niku-ya San** (VII, 37) *butcher*

Takashima-ya (IX, 11) *Takashima's*

sentaku-ya (XI, 3) *laundry man*

PHONETIC CHANGES

61. Some numbers change their form when followed by nouns beginning with certain sounds:

(a) **ichi** *one*. The final **i** is dropped when followed by a noun beginning with **ch**, and the resulting long **ch** is spelled **tch**. The final **i** is dropped, and the **ch** assimilates to an initial **k**, **s**, **sh**, or **t** of a following word which **ichi** modifies. The lengthening of **sh** is indicated by an **s** before the **sh**. The **ch** also assimilates to a following **f** or **h** after the initial **f** or **h** is changed to **p**.

P or **ph** was probably the original sound of **f** or **h**.

Sansom says "the modern pronunciations are **ha**, **hi**, **fu**, **he**, **ho**. There is very good evidence to show that the early forms of these syllables were not aspirate plus vowel, but labial plus vowel, which might be represented approximately by **pa**, **pi**, **pu**, **pe**, **po** or better perhaps by **pha**, **phi**, **phu**, **phe**, **pho**" (HGJ, p. 47). Sansom also calls attention to the modern pronunciation of **f** as a labial and to the fact that the voiced forms of **ha**, **hi**, **fu**, **he**, and **ho** are **ba**, **bi**, **bu**, **be**, **bo** (HGJ, 1. c.).

itchaku (X, 41) *one suit*

ikkin (VII, 39) *one kin*

issai (VII, 19)	one year of age
issshūkan (VIII, 12)	one week
itteki	one drop
ippon (XI, 52)	one bottle

(b) *hachi* may become *ha* just as *ichi* becomes *i*, and then the same changes take place in the initial consonant of the following word.

hatchaku	eight suits
hakkin	eight kin
hassai	eight years old
hasshūkan	eight weeks
hatteki	eight drops
happon	eight bottles

The uncontracted forms of the above examples with *hachi* are also used, e. g., compare *hassun* (IX, 49) *eight sun* and *hachi sen* (VIII, 3) *eight sen*.

(c) *jū ten* becomes *ji* just as *ichi* becomes *i*, and the same changes take place in the initial consonant of the following word, e. g., *jitchōme* (VII, 29) *tenth block*, *jippun* (VII, 49) *ten minutes*, *jissen* (VII, 39) *ten sen*.

(d) *roku six* and *hyaku hundred*. The final *u* is dropped before a word which they modify beginning with *k*, and also before those with initial *f* or *h*. The *f* or *h* becomes *p* and the *k* of *roku* or *hyaku* assimilates to it, e. g., *rokkin* (VII, 53) *six kin*; *roppiki* (VIII, 38) *six animals*; *hyappiki* (VIII, 43) *one hundred animals*.

(e) *san three*, *sen one thousand*, and *han half* change *n* to *m* before a word which they modify beginning with *b* or *m* and before those with initial *f* or *h*. The *f* or *h* is used in its original form, i. e., *p* (see (a) supra). The change of the dental nasal to the labial nasal before a labial is known as nasal accommodation, a partial assimilation. It should be noted that the nasal usually voices the following *p* to *b* (an exception is *sampun three minutes*).

sambun (VII, 61)	three parts, third
sambyaku (VIII, 63)	three hundred
sambamme (XIV, 22)	third
sembiki (VIII, 41)	one thousand animals
hambun (VII, 63)	one half

The nasal voices a following *k* to *g*, *s* to *z*, and *sh* to *j*, e. g., *sangai* (XII, 19) *third floor*, *san-zen three thousand*, *san-jaku three shaku*.

When words are joined to form compounds, an initial voiceless stop of the second element will often become voiced; e. g., *daidokoro* (XII, 42) *kitchen* from *dai* and *tokoro place*; *nadakai* (XVI, 31) *famous* from *na name* and *takai high*; *uragaki* (XIV, 10) *endorsement* from *ura back* and *kaki writing*; *Iwo Jima Iwo Island* from *Iwo* and *shima island*.

The form of a word with a voiced initial stop is referred to as its sonant form, e. g., *dokoro* is the sonant-form of *tokoro* (see section 112).

THE SUFFIX *kan*

62. *Ji* is used in referring to a point of time, i. e., the hour of the day, but the suffix *kan* *interval, period, duration* must be added in speaking of a number of hours or when speaking of a certain time. *Kan* is also added to *shū week* with the same meaning.

Nan ji desu ka? (VII, 22)	What time is it?
kaeru jikan (VIII, 59)	time to return
raishū	next week
ni shūkan	two weeks' duration

TIME

63. In telling time, the expression **gozen** *the forenoon* and **gogo** *afternoon* followed by **no** indicate *A. M.* and *P. M.* respectively. The number of the hour is followed by **ji** *hour*. The minutes after or before are then stated followed by **fun** *minute* (**fun** in combination with certain numbers becomes **pun** (see section 61). **Mae** *before* is used to indicate the minutes to the hour and **sugi** *past, after* may be used to indicate the minutes after the hour. **Sugi**, however, may be omitted.

Gozen jū ichi ji desu (VII, 23)	<i>It is eleven A. M.</i>
gogo no yo ji han made ni (VII, 24)	<i>by four-thirty P. M.</i>
ni ji jippun mae (VII, 49)	<i>ten minutes to two</i>
ni ji jippun sugi	<i>ten minutes after two</i>
ni ji jippun	<i>ten minutes after two</i>

NUMERAL AUXILIARIES

64. In English the words *pieces, head, drops, and loaves* in the phrases *ten pieces of chalk, three head of cattle, four drops of water and five loaves of bread* correspond somewhat to the Japanese numeral auxiliaries. Just as *ten chalks, three cattle, four waters, five breads* sound strange, so do Japanese nouns and numerals used without an auxiliary (where one exists) or used with the wrong numeral auxiliary. However, the numeral auxiliaries are unlike the above-mentioned English words in that they do not single out smaller divisions of the noun, but rather indicate that the noun belongs to a certain larger group of objects. For this reason they are sometimes called classifiers. Thus, **hon** is used for long narrow objects, and loaves of bread, bottles, pens or pencils come in this category.

(**Pan wo**) **ni hon kudasai** (VIII, 5) *Bread two loaves please give; i. e., Please give me two loaves of bread.*

Biru wo ni hon moraimashō (XI, 50) *I'll take two bottles of beer.*

Empitsu wo ni hon kudasai *Please give me two pencils.*

The numeral auxiliary takes no postposition, but the noun which it classifies does. The numeral auxiliary may follow the noun or precede it. If it precedes, it is connected to the noun by the postposition **no** (see section 43).

Besides **hon** some frequently used numeral auxiliaries are:

dai (VIII, 62)	<i>for vehicles</i>
hiki (VIII, 23)	<i>for animals</i>
ma (<i>hitoma</i>) (XII, 16)	<i>for rooms</i>
mae (XI, 43)	<i>for portions</i>
mai (IX, 49)	<i>for flat things such as paper, clothes, blankets, etc.</i>
nin (VIII, 44)	<i>for people</i>
satsu (XIV, 59)	<i>for books, magazines, etc.</i>

All of the above auxiliaries are of Chinese origin except **ma** and **mae**. The numerals of native origin, **hitotsu, futatsu**, etc. (see section 52) are used before numeral auxiliaries of native origin or with nouns having no special auxiliary, while those of Chinese origin, **ichi, ni, san**, etc. are generally used before auxiliaries of Chinese origin.

The number may be used with the numeral auxiliary without the noun that the latter classifies. As the ending **tsu** of the native numbers is a numeral auxiliary itself, meaning *piece*, it is not used before an auxiliary.

sakana wo go hiki (VIII, 23) *five fish*

go hiki no sakana wo	five fish (used as above)
jinrikusha ga san dai (VIII, 62)	three jinrikshaws
kitte mo shi-go mai (XIV, 47)	also four or five stamps
shatsu ga shi-go mai irimasu (IX, 7)	I need four or five shirts
hon ga ni satsu (XIV, 59)	two books
ichi man no ebi (VIII, 40)	ten thousand shrimp
Ichi mai san yen go jissen de gozaimasu (IX, 43)	They are three yen, fifty sen each (shirt).
kata-michi ichi mai (XV, 24)	one one-way ticket
zashiki ga hito-ma (XII, 16)	one room
hito-tsuki (XII, 37)	one month
Note, however, hitoban (XII, 36) <i>one night</i> One, two and four referring to people, however, are expressed by hitori, futari and yottari respectively, and not by the numeral and nin.	
Kazoku wa otoko ga hitori de, onna ga futari desu (VIII, 46)	As for (my) family, men one person is and women, two persons are, i. e., My family consists of one man and two women.
Suki-yaki wo futari mae negaimasu (XI, 43)	We should like two portions of sukiyaki.
See section 111.	

sō AND yō

65. Sō desu following a verb in the conclusive form or simple past means <i>so they say</i> or <i>so I hear</i> . Sō desu following a verb in the continuative form expresses likelihood or possibility.	
Tennin sareru sō desu (XIV, 37)	I hear he has been transferred.
Sakana ga takusan aru sō desu (VIII, 9)	I hear they have a lot of fish.
Takaku natta sō desu (XV, 65)	They say it has gone up in price.
Tenki wa yoku nari sō desu	It looks as if it will be good weather.
Sō added to the stem of an adjective (see section 43) gives the meaning of <i>appearance</i> .	
akaru-sō na heya (XII, 35)	a bright-looking room
omoshiro-sō na o-shigoto (XIV, 39)	sort of interesting work
Yō means <i>manner</i> or <i>appearance</i> . When followed by the verb be (desu, da, gozaimasu, etc.), the phrase means <i>it seems, it appears</i> .	
Kanari ii yō desu ne (IX, 47)	It really seems quite good.
Yawarakai yō desu ne (XI, 57)	It really seems tender.
atsu-sugiru yō da kara (XII, 54)	as it appears a little too hot
yōsu ga sukoshi warui yō de . . . (XIII, 37)	the condition appears a little worse and . . .
Yō ni means <i>in the manner of, so as, so that, in order to</i> and it is used in clauses of purpose or manner. It is therefore used in asking a person to tell someone to do something.	
Beikoku no kata no yō ni miukemasu (XV, 42)	You look in the manner of an American, i. e., You look like an American.
Haien ni natta yō ni omowaremasu (XIII, 60)	I think that it became pneumonia. I think you got pneumonia.
Shatsu ni wa nori wo tsuke-nai yō ni hana- shite kudasai (XI, 11)	Please tell (to him) so that (he) not put starch in the shirts, i. e., Please tell him not to put starch in the shirts.
Jochū ni watakushi no nimotsu wo motte kite kureru yō ni itte kudasai (XII, 41)	Please tell the maid to kindly bring my baggage.

miru

66. The verb **miru** or its honorific form **goran** used after the gerundial form of a verb has the meaning *try*. It is often used simply to soften the abruptness of a command.

Ano junsu ni kiite mimashō (IX, 13)	<i>I'll try asking that policeman.</i>
yukkuri itte mite kudasai (VIII, 13)	<i>Please say slowly . . .</i>
Kore wo haite mite kudasai (X, 6)	<i>Please put these on.</i>
Kagetsu e itte, tabete goran to kaite arimashita (XI, 35)	<i>Go to the Kagetsu restaurant and try eating —thus was written, i. e., He wrote me to try eating at the Kagetsu restaurant.</i>
Sugu itte mite agemashō (XIII, 40)	<i>I'll try to come soon.</i>
Netsu wo hakatte mimashō (XIII, 55)	<i>I'll try taking your temperature (fever).</i>
Hakatte mite agemashō (XIV, 51)	<i>I'll try weighing it.</i>

DAYS OF THE WEEK

67. The days of the week are named after the elements; viz., sun day, moon day, fire day, water day, wood day, metal day, and earth day, e. g., **Nichiyōbi**, **Getsuyōbi**, **Kayōbi**, etc. (VIII, 15). **Bi** is the sonant form (see section 61) of **hi day** and may be omitted as **yō** also signifies *day*, i. e., **Nichiyō Sunday**, **Getsuyō Monday**, etc. (see section 113).

SHOULD

68. **Hazu** means *should*, *expect*, *ought*, and implies obligation, e. g., **Shindai no soba ni aru hazu desu** (XIII, 3) *It should be beside the bed*. **Sore mo sono hazu de gozaimashō** (VIII, 24) *That's to be expected*. is an idiom.

Beki may be used independently or after **hazu** with similar meanings, e. g., **harau beki mono wa nakatta** (XV, 52) *should pay thing there was not*, i. e., *There was nothing to be paid*.

naru

69. A noun preceding the verb **naru** *become*, *be* takes the postposition **ni**. Other parts of speech take no postposition.

Hachi sen ni narimashita (VIII, 3)	<i>It became eight sen. It went up to eight sen.</i>
O-naka ga ippai ni narimashita (XI, 58)	<i>My insides became all filled up, i. e., I am all filled up. (ippai is a contraction of ichi and hai (see section 61); hai is a noun.)</i>
Ni jū go sen ni narimasu (XIV, 61)	<i>It comes to twenty-five sen.</i>
ōkiku narimashita (VIII, 27)	<i>became big, i. e., grew up</i>
takaku natte iru (XV, 63)	<i>is high</i>

DATES

70. In dates the Japanese year period is mentioned first, then the number of the year followed by the month and day. A new Japanese year period begins when a new emperor ascends the throne. The present era, **Shōwa**, began in 1926. The cardinal (not ordinal) numbers precede **nen year** and **nichi day**. The months of the year are named numerically, e. g., **Nigatsu** (VIII, 31) *second month*, i. e., *February*. However, **Shōgatsu** or **Ichigatsu** may be used for *January*.

The days of the month from the second to the tenth are formed with the numbers of native origin and **ka**, a native numeral auxiliary meaning *days*. Above ten, the Chinese numerals are used with **nichi**.

INTENTION

72. The attributive form of the verb (see section 26) before the word *tsumori* *intention, expectation* expresses intention to do something. *Tsumori* is followed by the verb *be*. The negative of this phrase is *tsumori ja arimasen*. The noun form of the verb preceded by the honorific *o* may be used to modify *tsumori* and it is then connected to *tsumori* by means of the postposition *no*.

- iku *tsumori* desu (IX, 1) *intend to go*
 Mugiwara-bōshi wa suteru *tsumori* desu *I intend to throw away my straw hat.*
 (X, 26)
 o-tomari no *tsumori* (XII, 38) *the staying intention, i. e., intend to stop.*

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

73. The *i* of *nani* *what* is often elided. *Donata* and *dare* are both used for *who*, and *dochira* and *doko* for *where*. *Donata* and *dochira* are considered the more polite forms. *Donata* has a plural form *donatagata* (XI, 15) which may be used when referring to more than one person. Both *dochira* and *dono* mean *which*, but *dochira* is used to mean *which of two*, while *dono* refers to *which of more than two*.

- Dono depāto e ikimashō ka? (IX, 4) *To which department store shall we go?*
 (More than two stores are being considered.)
 Dochira no depāto e ikimashō ka? *To which department store shall we go?*
 (Only two stores are being considered.)
 Dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii ka? (XII, 1) *Which inn is the best? (considering more than two inns)*

Doko is also used for *which*, e. g., *doko no ryōriya* (XI, 21) *which restaurant*. *Dochira* is used for *where* as well as *which*, e. g., *Dochira e desu ka?* (XIV, 27) *To which place is it?*, i. e., *Where are you going?*

Dō and *ikaga* both mean *how*. *Ikaga* is, however, more formal than *dō* and its use is restricted to certain expressions. *Ikaga* is frequently used to mean *how about, what do you think about?*

- Dō sareta n' deshō ka? (XIII, 6) *How was probably done?, i. e., What was done with it? I wonder what happened to it.*
 O-kagen wa ikaga de gozaimasu ka? (XII, 52) *How is the temperature?*
 O-sake wa ikaga desu ka? (XI, 49) *How about some sake? What do you say to some drinks?*
 Nihon shoku wa ikaga desu ka? (XI, 23) *How would you like Japanese food?*

Dono kurai or *dono gurai* means *about how far, about how long*, but does not necessarily refer to approximate quantity only, e. g., *Dono gurai o-tomari no tsumori desu ka?* (XII, 38) *(About) how long do you intend to stay?*

How much referring to price is *ikura*, e. g., *Kono gyūniku wa ikura desu ka?* (VII, 37) *How much does this beef cost?*

How much or *how many* referring to quantity is *iku, ikutsu, or nan*. *Iku* or *nan* are used with a numeral auxiliary, but *ikutsu* where the noun has no special auxiliary (for the auxiliary *tsu*, see section 64). The final *n* of *nan* causes the same changes in the initial consonant of a following numeral auxiliary as does the *n* of *san* (see section 61, e).

Ano ko wa iku sai desu ka? (VII, 18)

How many years old is that child? How old is she?

Ōkisa wa ikutsu de gozaimasu ka? (X, 2)

The size, how much is it?, i. e., What is the size?

O-kazoku wa nan nin de gozaimasu ka? (VIII, 44)

How many people are there in your family?

Iku, ikutsu, and nan usually follow the noun modified, but they may precede it, in which case they are connected to it by the postposition *no*.

Hako wo ikutsu motte imasu ka? }

How many boxes have you?

Ikutsu no hako wo motte imasu ka? }

Empitsu wo nambon motte imasu ka? }

Nambon no empitsu wo motte imasu ka? }

How many pencils do you have?

Empitsu wo iku hon motte imasu ka? }

Iku hon no empitsu wo motte imasu ka? }

Donna and dō iu mean *what kind of, what sort of*.

Donna mise desu ka? (VIII, 6)

What sort of shop is it?

Donna bōshi ga o-nozomi de gozaimasu ka? (X, 22)

What kind of hat do you desire?

Dō iu ambai desu ka? (XIII, 42)

What kind of condition is it?, i. e., How is your condition?

Kotoba wa dō iu imi desu ka? (XVI, 41)

The word, what kind of meaning is it?, i. e., What does the word mean?

See section 106.

THE SUFFIX *tara*

74. The verb has a conditional meaning when the suffix *tara* is added. *Tara* is affixed to the continuative stem of the verb (see section 27) and when added to verbs of class II, the same phonetic changes take place as do when *-te* is added to form the gerund (see section 30). The form in *-tara* expresses the idea of *if* in asking whether something is correct or not; do not confuse with *if* in asking permission (see section 35). It may also express the idea of *when* referring to the future.

Doko de nottara yoroshiū gozaimasu ka? (IX, 16)

Where is it all right to board?; i. e., Where should I board?

Doko de norikaetara ii ka? (IX, 29)

Where should I change?

okutte morattara (IX, 54)

if I receive (them) sending; i. e., if I have them sent

dempō wo uchimashitara (XIV, 63)

when I send a telegram

DIRECT DISCOURSE

75. Japanese employs direct discourse where English has indirect discourse.

Doke de Kyōbashi-yuki e norikaetara ii ka? shashō ni o-kiki nasai (IX, 20)

Please ask the conductor, "Where should we take the Kyōbashi bound car?"

Itsu dekiru ka? kiite kudasai (XI, 13)

Please ask, "When will it be ready?", i. e., Please ask when it will be ready.

Dono yado-ya ga ichiban ii ka? go-zonji desu ka? (XII, 1)

Which inn is the best? Do you know?, i. e., Do you know which inn is the best?

Dono hen ga ichiban itai n' desu ka? misete kudasai (XIII, 50)

Which part hurts the most? please show me, i. e., Please show me which part hurts the most.

MORAU

76. The verb *morau* *receive* is used to express English *take* meaning *purchase*. This verb is used for the receiving of the first person. For the second person, the polite form of *toru* is used.

San jū go roppiki moraimashō (VIII, 47) *I'll take thirty-five or thirty-six (shrimp).*
 San mai morau koto ga dekimasu ka? (IX, 49) *May I take three shirts?*

Biru wo ni hon moraimashō (XI, 50) *We'll take two bottles of beer.*
 Ryōhō tomo o-tori ni narimasu ka? (X, 37) *Will you take both?*

After a verb in the *te* form (see section 30), *morau* indicates that the action of the preceding verb is performed for the sake of the speaker and therefore it is often equivalent to the English *have* or *get* a thing *done*.

okutte morattara (IX, 54) *if I have it sent*
 Watakushi no tokei wo naoshite moratte . . . (X, 40) *I (want to) have my watch fixed. . .*

Fuku wo koshiraete moraitai desu (X, 45) *I want to have a suit made.*
 Kogitte wa genkin ni kaete morau koto ga dekimasu ka? (XIV, 5) *Can you cash a check for me?*

WEAR

77. There are three different ways to express the act of putting on or wearing articles, depending upon how they are worn. *Haku* means *put something on the legs or feet*, *kaburu* *put on the head*, and *kiru* *put on suits, shirts*, etc. Note that the gerund of both *kuru* *come* and *kiru* *put on* is *kite*. The verb *nugu* *take off*, however, may be used of all articles of clothing.

Kore wo haite mite kudasai (X, 5) *Please try these (shoes) on.*
 Bōshi wo kabutte kudasai *Please put on your hat.*
 Uwagi wo kite kudasai *Please put on your jacket.*
 Kutsu wo nuide kudasai *Please take off your shoes.*

These verbs are compounded with the verb *kaeru* (a first class verb meaning *change*, not to be confused with *kaeru*, a second class verb, meaning *return*) to express the idea of changing wearing apparel.

Kutsu wo hakikaete . . . kudasai (XII, 24) *Please change your shoes.*
 o-kikae ni natte (XII, 51) *changing your (clothes)*

sugiru

78. The verb *sugiru* *exceed* is added to the stem of adjectives (see section 43) and to the continuative stem of verbs to express the concept *too much*.

hiro-sugiru (X, 7) *too wide*
 hade-sugiru (X, 50) *too flashy*
 atsu-sugiru (XII, 54) *too hot*
 omo-sugiru (XIV, 49) *too heavy*
 Ano hito wa nomi-sugimasu *He drinks too much.*

ONLY

79. The postpositions *dake* or *bakari*, replacing either the nominative or accusative postpositions, mean *only*, *just*. *Shika* may also be so used, but when it is, the verb must be in

the negative. *Shika* (not *dake*) is used to mean *only* after a number or a word denoting quantity.

- | | |
|---|---|
| Nakaore-bōshi dake moraimashō (X, 38) | <i>I'll take the felt hat only.</i> |
| Shindai wa ue shika nokotte imasen (XV, 28) | <i>There do (not) remain butup per berths, i. e., There are only upper berths left.</i> |
| hitsuyō na mono bakari (XV, 51) | <i>just useful things</i> |

TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS

80. *Before* indicating a time relation between events is expressed by *mae* or *mae ni*, and the verb preceding it may be in the simple present form (conclusive) whether referring to the present, past, or future, e. g., *kaeru mae ni* (X, 40) *before I return*. *Mae ni* also means *ago*, e. g., *ni shūkan mae ni* *two weeks ago*.

When may be expressed by *toki* followed by *ni* or *de*. *Toki* *time* or *occasion* is used at the end of a dependent clause, e. g., *o-kane wa dekiagarimashita toki ni, yoroshiū gozaimasu* (X, 63) *as for the money, at the finished time it's all right, i. e., You may pay when it is finished*.

After is expressed by the gerundial form of the verb followed by *kara*, e. g., *Tegami wo kaite kara, motte kite kudasai* *After you have written the letter, please bring it to me*.

While or *during* may be expressed by the continuative form of the verb followed by *nagara*, e. g., *Sō ii-nagara, heya kara dete ikimashita*. *While he was saying that, he went out of the room*. However, if the subject of the dependent clause differs from that of the independent clause, the attributive form of the verb followed by *aida ni* is used.

THE VERB *oku*

81. The verb *oku* *put, place, deposit* following a verb in *-te* means *leave in a state of*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| Uchikin wo okimashō ka? (X, 61) | <i>Shall I leave a deposit?</i> |
| Jū go sen ni shite okimasu (VIII, 53) | <i>I'll let you have it for fifteen sen.</i> |
| Chūmon shite okitai desu (X, 42) | <i>I want to leave an order.</i> |
| Chokin shite okitai n' desu (XIV, 19) | <i>I want to leave a deposit.</i> |

hai AND *iie*

82. *Hai* in response to a negative question may often correspond to *no* and *iie* to *yes*. *Hai* then implies *yes, you have said the truth* and *iie*, *no, you have not said it correctly*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| Chūmon shite okitai desu ga kamaimasen | <i>I want to leave an order, so don't you mind?</i> |
| ka? Hai, yoroshiū gozaimasu tomo (X, 42) | <i>Yes, (you have said it correctly, I don't mind) it's perfectly all right, i.e., No, it's all right.</i> |

THE POSTPOSITION *ya*

83. The postposition *ya* is used as is to (see section 15) to mean *and so forth, and, or or*. It usually implies that more than the objects enumerated could be mentioned.

- | | |
|--|---|
| Kutsushita ya zubonshita wo kaimashō (X, 65) | <i>Let's buy socks and drawers and things of that kind.</i> |
| takusan no hana ya ki (XII, 28) | <i>many flowers and trees and such</i> |
| sekken ya tenugui (XII, 48) | <i>soap and towels and other such toilet articles</i> |
| mune ya kata ya ude ya (XIII, 48) | <i>chest and shoulder and arms and so forth</i> |
- Both . . . and* may be expressed by *mo . . . mo . . .* or by *ya . . . mo* (see section 12), e.g.,

Watakushi wa Furansu go mo Eigo mo wakarimasu *I understand both French and English.*
 Hagaki ya kitte mo kaitai desu (XIV, 46) *I want to buy both postcards and stamps.*

RELATIVE CLAUSES

84. As Sansom says (HGJ, p. 81) relative pronouns do not exist in Japanese. Therefore, a whole relative clause such as exists in English will in Japanese modify a following noun. The verb of the clause will usually be in the simple past or present form (the attributive) and will modify the following noun as if the verb were an adjective (see sections 18 and 26). The subject of the verb is usually governed by the postposition *ga* or *no*.

The English expression *never to be forgotten* in *He was present at that never to be forgotten event* (used as *that event which is never to be forgotten*) is similar to the Japanese construction.

anata ga hanashite ita hito (XI, 1)

the you-were-talking-to man, i. e., the man to whom you were talking

senshū okutta sentaku mono (XI, 4)

the last-week-sent wash, i. e., the wash which we sent last week

ni kai ni aru yogorete iru sentaku mono (XI, 7)

the on-the-second-floor-soiled laundry, i. e., the soiled laundry which is upstairs

takusan no yūmei na hito ga yoku yuku ryōriya (XI, 26)

a many-famous-people-often-go restaurant, i. e., a restaurant to which many famous people often go

tomodachi ga watakushi ni tegami de hanashita ryōriya (XI, 31)

my-friend-to-me-in-a-letter-spoken restaurant, i. e., a restaurant which my friend wrote to me about

michi ni mukatte i-nai heya (XII, 20)

a-not-facing-the-street room, i. e., a room which does not face the street

Burajiru ni iru ototo (XIV, 30)

my-is-in-Brazil-younger-brother, i. e., my younger brother who is in Brazil

Watakushi no sūnde iru ie wa ginkō no soba ni arimasu.

The house in which I live is near the bank.

A noun followed by *no* or *na* (see section 43) may form an adjectival subordinate phrase, e. g., *kono Kōbe-yuki no tegami* (XIV, 48) *this-going-to-Kobe letter, i. e., this letter which is going to Kobe.*

iru be necessary

85. The verb *iru* *be necessary* is a verb of the second class and consequently the *r* appears in the continuative form (see sections 26, 27 and 116). This verb should not be confused with *iru* *be*, a verb of the first class, the continuative stem of which is *i*.

The verb *iru* corresponds more to *be necessary* than *need* and consequently the object needed is followed by *ga* or *wa*. If the person who needs the object is expressed, the person is followed by *ga* or *wa* also. When both the person who needs something and the object needed are expressed, the one emphasized takes *ga* and the other *wa* (see section 5).

Shatsu ga shi-go mai irimasu (IX, 7)

I need four or five shirts.

Watakushi wa kane ga hyaku yen irimasu

I need one hundred yen.

GIVE

86. There are several verbs which express the concept of giving. Different verbs are employed according to the social status of the donor and the recipient. However, the verb

watasu hand over may be used to express the giving of anyone to anyone else, but this verb, as its meaning indicates, does not necessarily imply donation, e. g., **Sentaku mono wo watashite kudasai** (XI, 7) *Please give him the laundry.*

Ageru and, in very polite speech, **sashiageru** are used for the giving of the first person or of the giving of the second person to the third person or the third to the second person. **Ageru** means *raise up* (see section 91) and therefore its use by the first person indicates humility or politeness (compare section 41). If preceded by a gerund **ageru** indicates that the action of the preceding verb is performed in favor of someone else, i. e., for his benefit, and in this usage it is the opposite of **morau** (see section 76).

Nani wo sashiagemashō ka? (XI, 41)

What may I give you?, i. e., What can I do for you?

Kusuri wo agemasu (XIII, 61)

I'll give you some medicine.

Sugu itte mite agemashō (XIII, 40)

I'll try to come soon for your sake.

Hakatte mite agemashō (XIV, 51)

I'll see how much it weighs for you, i. e., I'll weigh it for you.

Kudasaru or **kureru** is used of the giving of the second or third person to the first person (see section 32). **Kudasaru** is more polite than **kureru**.

Ni hon kudasai (VIII, 5)

Please give me two loaves.

watakushi ni kozutsumi wo okutte kureta hito (XI, 37)

the man who sent and gave the package to me, i. e., the man who gave me the package

The verb **negau** *request* (see section 40) may be used as is *please give me, please let me have* in English.

Sukiyaki wo futari mae negaimasu (XI, 43)

We request two portions of sukiyaki, i. e., Please give us two portions of sukiyaki.

Budōshu mo ippon negaimasu (XI, 51)

I request a bottle of beer also, i. e., I'd like a bottle of beer also.

Sangai no hō wo negaimasu (XII, 19)

I'd like to have one on the third floor.

When the person who is giving is in a superior position, the verb **yaru** is used. Thus the father says of his giving to his son **Kane wo okutte yarō to omotte iru tokoro desu** (XIV, 31) *I am thinking of giving him some money by sending, i. e., I am thinking of sending him some money.*

mō

87. Before a numeral **mō** is used to indicate *more, in addition*, e. g., **Mizu wo mō ni hai motte kite kudasai** (XI, 61) *Please bring us two more glasses of water.* (See section 47.)

yo

88. **Yo** is an interjection added to a verb at the end of a sentence to emphasize the truth of the statement.

O-tsuri wa anata e no kokorozashi desu *The change is a tip for you!*

yo (XI, 65)

Ima iremasu yo (XIII, 22)

I'm putting it in now, i. e., Here it goes!

CONDITIONAL

89. The conditional may be formed by placing **nareba** or **naraba** *if it is* after the verb. The negative conditional may be formed in the same manner, except that the negative

form of the verb is used and is followed by **nakereba** or **nai nareba** (see section 57). The noun form of the verb followed by **de nakereba** may also be employed. The word **moshi** *if* may be used or it may be omitted at the beginning of the clause. The *if* clause always precedes the result clause, and the subject of the *if* clause is usually governed by the post-position **ga**.

moshi anata ga sei'yō fū no hoteru ga o-suki	<i>if you would like a western style hotel</i>
nareba (XII, 4)	
moshi anata ga sei'yō fū no yado-ya wo	<i>if you don't like a western style inn</i>
o-konomi de nakereba (XII, 6)	
moshi o-tsukare nareba (XII, 48)	<i>if you are tired</i>
takushi de oide ni nareba (XII, 11)	<i>if you go by taxi</i>
The ending ba may be omitted in naraba giving the word nara <i>if, if it is, in case</i> .	
isshūkan nara (XII, 36)	<i>if one week</i>
sayō-nara (VI, 60)	<i>if it is so (then, unfortunately it must be),</i> <i>i. e., goodbye</i>

Nareba is composed of the perfect of **naru**, that is, **nare** plus the voiced form of **wa**. (**Wa** is written **ha** in the Japanese syllabaries; see section 61.) The conditional of verbs may be formed (in addition to the way shown above) by changing the final **u** of the conclusive form to the perfect ending **e** and adding **ba**, e. g., **ikeba** *if I go*; **yomeba** *if I read*; **mireba** *if I see*; **tabereba** *if I eat*; **sureba** (XIII, 63) *if you do*; **koseba** (XVI, 9) *if one crosses*. However, the conditional of the ending **masu** is **masureba**.

Historically, the perfect termination may be **re** rather than **e**, coming from the verb **aru** *be*, but the development is very obscure (see HGJ, p. 143).

The negative base plus **ba** is used only in **nara(ba)**. In the spoken language this is a somewhat isolated form. In the literary style, however, the conditional is expressed by the negative base and not by the perfect base. The perfect in the literary style expresses a realized or assumed condition which may be rendered by *since, as, when, etc.*, but in the colloquial the perfect plus **ba** serves both uses and the negative base hardly appears in forming the conditional (see HGJ, p. 197-198).

See sections 116 and 117.

POTENTIAL

90. Many second class transitive verbs are made into first class verbs by adding **eru** *get, acquire, be able to* to the base, i. e., to the conclusive form without the final **u** (verbs ending in **tsu** drop the **su**). Verbs so made are intransitive and potential. What in English is the object of a potential verb is in Japanese governed by **ga**. First class verbs in **-eru** have no potential form and to express ability they may be used with **dekiru** (see section 25) or in the passive (see section 92). Nevertheless, **mieru** is formed from the negative stem of **miru** plus **eru**.

toru	<i>take</i>
toreru	<i>be able to take</i>
toreshō (XII, 47)	<i>can take</i>
mairu	<i>go</i>
maireru	<i>be able to go</i>
mareshō (XII, 13)	<i>can probably go</i>
however, miru (first class verb)	<i>see</i>
mieru (XII, 11)	<i>can see</i>
miemasu (XII, 29)	<i>can see</i>

Kanda eki kara noremasu ka? (XV, 15)
 Furo ga toremashō ka? (XII, 47)

Can I take it from the Kanda station?
Can I take a bath?

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

91. Some intransitive verbs of the second class have corresponding transitive verbs of the first class formed by adding *eru get, acquire* to the base (see section 90).

aku	<i>be open (intransitive)</i>
akeru	<i>open (transitive)</i>
Daidokoro wa mada aite imasu ka? (XII, 43)	<i>Is the kitchen still open?</i>
Mado wo akete mo ii n' desu ka? (V, 27)	<i>May I open the window?</i>
shimaru	<i>be closed, shut (intransitive)</i>
shimeru	<i>close, shut (transitive)</i>
Ima wa mō shimatte imasu (XII, 44)	<i>It's already closed.</i>
To wo shimete wa ikemasen (V, 28)	<i>You must not close the door.</i>
agaru	<i>go up</i>
ageru	<i>give (literally, raise to a high personage)</i>
O-agari kudasai (XII, 25)	<i>Please go up.</i>
Kusuri wo agemasu (XIII, 61)	<i>I'll give you medicine.</i>
kakaru	<i>hang (intransitive)</i>
kakeru	<i>hang (transitive)</i>
Hajimete o-me ni kakarimasu (VI, 12)	<i>For the first time I hang on your honorable eyes, i. e., I'm glad to meet you.</i>
Ima o-me ni kakemasu (XII, 23)	<i>Now I'll hang it on your honorable eyes, i. e., Now I'll show it to you.</i>

PASSIVE FORM OF THE VERB

92. The passive voice is formed by adding *areru* to the base (the conclusive without the final u) of both classes of verbs. Verbs ending in *tsu*, however, drop the *su*, and verbs ending in a vowel plus *u* change the *u* to *w* before adding *areru* (compare section 56). This *-areru* is probably the verb *aru be* plus the verb *eru get* (see HGJ, p. 160, 161). These passive verbs may have the same tense endings as their active forms.

kowasu	<i>break</i>
kowasareru	<i>be broken</i>
Kusuri no bin wa kowasaremashita ka? (XIII, 1)	<i>Was the medicine bottle broken?</i>
taberu	<i>eat</i>
taberareru	<i>be eaten</i>
Ano niku wa imōto ni taberaremashita	<i>That meat was eaten by my younger sister.</i>
Sekai ni shirarete imasu (XVI, 35)	<i>It is known throughout the world.</i>

Some grammarians give the passive endings *rareru* for the first class verbs and *reru* for second class verbs, these endings being added to the negative stem.

The passive form has other uses besides expressing passive voice. Probably because of the presence of *eru get, obtain*, it has a potential use also (see HGJ, p. 161). Most of the examples cited below show this potential use because the passive voice is not much used in Japanese and an active construction is usually preferable especially when speaking of inanimate objects.

neru	sleep
nerareru	be able to sleep
Neraremasen deshita (XIII, 44)	I couldn't sleep.
okiru	get up, rise
okirareru	be able to get up
Nedoko kara okiraremasen (XIII, 45)	I can't get out of bed.
Amari takai tatemono wa tateraremasen (XVI, 27)	Very high buildings can't be built.

Mitsukaru *be discovered, be found* is compounded from **miru** *see* and **tsuku** *apply*. **Mitsukeru** is its transitive form (see section 91).

Denwachō ga mitsukaremasen (XIII, 6) *I can't find the phone book.*

The verb **suru** *do* forms its passive from its classical form **su**, thus **sareru**. The passive of **kuru** is **korareru**. In Japanese intransitive verbs may have passive forms and verbs in the passive can have an object governed by **wo**.

Tennin sareru sō desu (XIV, 37) *I hear he was done a transfer, i. e., I hear he was transferred.*

Dō sareta n' deshō ka? (XIII, 6) *How was probably done with it?, i. e., What became of it?*

The person or thing that receives or suffers the action of a passive verb is governed by the postposition **wa** or **ga**, and the person or thing by whom or by which someone receives or suffers the action of the passive verb is governed by the postposition **ni** or **kara**.

Bin wa kowasaremashita (XIII, 1) *The bottle was broken.*

Denwachō ga mitsukaremasen (XIII, 6) *I can't find the telephone book.*

(Watakushi wa) neraremasen deshita *I could not sleep.*

(XIII, 44)

Heishi ga shikan ni miraremashita *The soldier was seen by the officer.*

The passive form may be used without expressing the passive voice or the potential at all, but simply to make a verb more polite and formal. Sansom says (HGJ, p. 163), "This usually is explained as an extension of the 'potential' significance of these forms, it being thought more respectful to say that a superior person is able to do a thing if he chooses than that he actually condescends to do it." When the verb is so used, the subjects and objects are governed by the same postpositions as would govern them if the verb were in the active form, e. g., **Ano yūmei na hito wa kono hon wo kakaremashita**. *That famous man wrote this book.*

Although in English only transitive verbs can be made passive, in Japanese intransitive verbs also may be made passive. The meaning of the verb is then to have something done or get something done to one; e.g., **Watakushi wa tokei wo nusumaremashita**. *I had my watch stolen*. **Nusumu** is *steal*, **nusumareru** *be stolen*, so that the above sentence is literally *I was stolen a watch* (see HGJ, p. 160).

CAUSATIVE FORM OF THE VERB

93. A verb is made causative by affixing **saseru** to the negative stem (see section 56) of verbs of the first class and **seru** to that of verbs of the second class. The person who is made to do or let do something is governed by the postposition **ni**.

Ane San ni denwa wo kakesasete kudasai *Please cause telephoning by my elder sister,*
(XIII, 10) *i. e., Please have my elder sister phone.*

Watakushi ni hanasasete kudasai (XIII, 30) *Please cause talking by me, i. e., Please let me talk.*

A passive causative is formed by the addition of **sareru**, the passive of **suru** (see section

92), to the negative stem, e. g., **nomu drink, nomaseru cause to drink, nomareru be drunk, nomasareru be caused to drink.**

Ane San ni ano kusuri wo nomasarema-shita (XIII, 46) *I was caused to drink that medicine by my elder sister, i. e., I was made to drink that medicine by my elder sister.*

Sansom says of the origin of the causative ending, "There can be little doubt that -su is cognate with the verb su-ru 'to do,' but it is not quite clear how verbs like yukasu have come to bear their present meanings. In the very earliest writings the suffix -su seems to have an honorific and not a causative force." (HGJ, p. 164.)

THE SUFFIX ju

94. The suffix **jū**, usually added to words of native origin, means *through, throughout, in the course of, the whole.*

hitoban-jū (XIII, 12)

throughout the whole night

karada-jū (XIII, 48)

throughout my whole body

no ni

95. **No ni** after verbs in the past form indicates the concessive *although, in spite of*, e. g., **Kaze wo hiite ita no ni (XIII, 59)** *although (in spite of the fact that) you had a cold.*

THE PRESENT TENSE TO INDICATE FUTURE TIME

96. The present tense is often used to indicate an action which is to happen in the future.

Motte o-kaeri ni narimasu ka? (IX, 52)

Do you take it with you? Are you going to take it back with you?, i. e., Will you take it with you?

Raishū made ni wa kari-nui ga dekimasu (X, 59)

The preliminary sewing will be done by next week.

Itsu dekiru ka kiite kudasai (XI, 13)

Please ask when it will be done.

Toranku wo azukete kimasu (XV, 37)

I'll check the trunk.

The present is used where English has the perfect to express an action begun in the past and which is still going on, e. g., **Ni-san ka getsu Burajiru ni imasu (XIV, 36)** *He has been in Brazil for two or three months.*

THE VERB shimau

97. **Shimau** after verbs in the gerundial form indicates the final completion of the action expressed by the gerund, e. g., **Kyō no yōji wa sunde shimaimasu. (XIV, 64)** *The business for to-day is all finished.*

The past of **shimau** is often used after the gerund to indicate a past perfect, e. g., **Ano hito ga kimashita mae ni Matsumoto San wa dekakete shimaimashita** *Before he came, Mr. Matsumoto had left.*

WITHOUT

98. The idea of *without* before verbs in English may be expressed in Japanese by the suffix **zu** added to the negative stem of verbs (see section 56). This form in **-zu** is usually followed by the postposition **ni**.

you

be seasick, be drunk

yowazu ni (XV, 58)	<i>without being seasick</i>
au	<i>meet</i>
awazu ni (XV, 61)	<i>without meeting</i>
ai (continuative stem of au) plus kawaru	
<i>change, transform</i>	
aikawarazu (II, 3)	<i>without change</i>

THE VERB au

99. The verb **au** *meet* requires the thing or person encountered to be governed by the postposition **ni**, e. g., **nami ni wa awazu ni** (XV, 61) *without meeting any waves*.

STEREOTYPED EXPRESSIONS

100. There are some verbal expressions which often are used as postpositions are. Thus, *on, about*, meaning *in reference to* or *concerning* is expressed by **ni tsuite**. As **tsuite** is the gerundial form of **tsuku** meaning both *adhere* and *follow*, **ni tsuite** may also mean *following* (see section 37).

Nippon no koto ni tsuite (XVI, 2)	<i>concerning Japanese things</i>
Tōkiō ni tsuite (XVI, 24)	<i>following Tokio</i>

Two other expressions of this type are to **shite** *concerning, by way of* and **(ni) itaru made** *up to, down to, until*.

omo na sambutsu to shite (XVI, 34)	<i>concerning the principal product, i. e., as its principal product</i>
daigaku ni itaru made (XVI, 46)	<i>up to arrival at the university, i. e., up to the university</i>

THE PREFIX ma

101. The prefix **ma** meaning *truth* is placed before the stem of an adjective (see section 43) to indicate *very* or *truly*. When used with adjectives denoting color, it often means *pure* or *bright*. An initial consonant of a word to which **ma** is prefixed is lengthened. **Ma** is added to the noun **naka** *inside, interior* to mean *the very center*.

masshiro	<i>pure white, snow white</i>
makkuroi	<i>pitch black</i>
mannaka (XVI, 17)	<i>the very center</i>

THE FORMER, THE LATTER

102. When referring to two subjects previously mentioned, it is understood that the first statement made refers to the former one and the second statement to the latter one. Thus it is clear that **mottomo yūmei na no** (XVI, 30) *the most famous one* refers to mountains and not to rivers.

THE SUFFIX rashii

103. The adjectival suffix **rashii** is added to the conclusive form of verbs, the stem of adjectives (see section 43), and to nouns to mean *appearance, likelihood, or probability*. With adjectives it often has the force of the suffix *ish* in English.

asonde iru-rashii (XVI, 52)	<i>most likely play</i>
bakarashii (baka fool plus rashii)	<i>foolish</i>
otoko-rashii	<i>manly</i>

104. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST PERSON	watakushi watashi washi boku (used by young men in familiar speech)	watakushidomo watakushitachi watashidomo watashitachi ware-ware (familiar) bokura bokutachi
SECOND PERSON	anata omae (not very polite) kimi (used by young men in familiar speech to other young men)	anatagata anatatachi kimira kimitachi
THIRD PERSON	ano (kono, sono) kata ano otoko no kata (M) ano onna no kata (F) ano (kono, sono) hito ano otoko no hito (M) ano onna no hito (F) ano ko (youth) ano otoko no ko (M) ano onna no ko (F) ano otoko (M) ano onna (F) ano fujin (F) ano ojōsan (youth) (F) kare (M or F)	ano (kono, sono) katatachi (katagata) ano otoko no katatachi (M) ano onna no katatachi (F) ano (kono, sono) hitotachi ano otoko no hitotachi (M) ano onna no hitotachi (F) karera (M or F) (M and F)

105. DEMONSTRATIVES

ADJECTIVES		
kono kochi(ra) no } <i>this, these</i>	konna kō iu } <i>this kind of</i>	
sono sochi(ra) no } <i>that, those</i>	sonna sō iu } <i>that kind of</i>	
ano achi(ra) no } <i>that, those</i>	anna ā iu } <i>that kind of, such as that</i>	
PRONOUNS	ADVERBS	
kore kochi(ra) } <i>this, this one</i>	kō konna ni } <i>like this, thus</i>	koko kochi(ra) } <i>here</i>
sore sochi(ra) } <i>that, that one</i>	sō sonna ni } <i>like that, thus</i>	soko sochi(ra) } <i>there</i>
are achi(ra) } <i>that, that one</i>	ā anna ni } <i>like that, thus</i>	asoko achi(ra) } <i>there</i>

106. INTERROGATIVE AND INDEFINITE PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND ADVERBS

INTERROGATIVE	INDEFINITE	NEGATIVE OR INCLUSIVE	ADJECTIVAL OR POSSESSIVE
dare <i>who</i>	dare ka <i>someone or other</i> dare de mo <i>anybody, everybody</i>	dare mo (with negative verb) <i>nobody</i>	dare no <i>whose</i>
donata <i>who</i> (polite)	donata ka donata de mo	donata mo	donata no
dô <i>how</i>	dô ka <i>somehow or other</i> dô de mo <i>anyhow</i>	dô mo <i>somehow</i>	dô iu <i>which</i>
doko <i>where</i>	doko ka <i>somewhere or other</i> doko de mo <i>anywhere, everywhere</i>	doko mo (with neg. verb) <i>nowhere</i>	doko no <i>which</i>
dochi(ra) <i>where, which</i>	dochi ka <i>one or the other</i> dochi de mo <i>anywhere, anyone</i>	dochi mo <i>both, (with negative verb)</i> <i>neither</i>	dochira no <i>which</i>
dore <i>which</i>	dore ka <i>one or another, something</i> dore de mo <i>either one, anyone</i>	dore mo <i>everyone, (with negative verb)</i> <i>none</i>	dono <i>which</i> donna <i>what kind of</i>
nani <i>what</i>	nani ka <i>something or other</i> nani de mo <i>anything, everything</i>	nani mo (with negative verb) <i>nothing</i>	nan no <i>what kind of</i>
iku } <i>how many</i> nan }	nani ka <i>something or other</i> iku de mo } <i>any number whatever</i> nan de mo }	nan mo <i>any number</i>	
ikura <i>how much</i>	ikura ka <i>a certain amount</i> ikura de mo <i>any amount whatever</i>	ikura mo <i>any amount</i>	ikura no <i>how much</i>
ikutsu <i>how many</i>	ikutsu de mo <i>any number whatever</i>	ikutsu mo <i>any number</i>	ikutsu no <i>how many</i>
itsu <i>when</i>	itsu ka <i>some time or other</i> itsu de mo <i>any time whatever, all-ways</i>	itsu mo <i>any time, always</i>	itsu no <i>of when, of what date</i>

107. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVE	STEM	ATTRIBUTIVE	PREDICATE
chiisai <i>small</i>	chiisa	chiisai chiisa na	chiisai (affirmative) chiisaku (negative)*
ōkii <i>large</i>	ōki	ōkii ōki na	ōkii (affirmative) ōkiku (negative)*
yoi <i>good</i>	yo	yoi yo na	yoi (affirmative) yoku (negative)*
atsui <i>hot</i>	atsu	atsui atsu na	atsui (affirmative) atsuku (negative)*

* Also used affirmatively as predicate of verbs other than *desu* and *gozaru*.

108. TENSE AND MOOD OF ADJECTIVES

	PRESENT	PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	PAST
AFFIRMATIVE	chiisai <i>small</i>	chiisai {deshō darō chiisakarō	chiisakatta
NEGATIVE	chiisaku {nai arimasen	chiisaku {nai deshō nai darō nakarō arumai †	chiisaku nakatta
AFFIRMATIVE	ōkii <i>large</i>	ōkii {deshō darō ōkikarō	ōkikatta
NEGATIVE	ōkiku {nai arimasen	ōkiku {nai deshō nai darō nakarō arumai	ōkiku nakatta
AFFIRMATIVE	yoi <i>good</i>	yoi {deshō darō yokarō	yokatta
NEGATIVE	yoku {nai arimasen	yoku {nai deshō nai darō nakarō arumai	yoku nakatta
AFFIRMATIVE	atsui <i>hot</i>	atsui {deshō darō atsukarō	atsukatta
NEGATIVE	atsuku {nai arimasen	atsuku {nai deshō nai darō nakarō arumai	atsuku nakatta

† See footnote †, p. 191.

PREDICATE WITH <i>gozaru</i>	ADVERBIAL FORM
chiisō (affirmative or negative)	chiisaku
ōkiū	ōkiku
yō	yoku <i>well</i>
atsū	atsuku

PROBABLE PAST	CONDITIONAL PRESENT	CONDITIONAL PAST	GERUND
chiisakattarō chiisakatta {deshō darō	chiisakereba chiisai nara(ba)	chiisakattara	chiisakute chiisakutte*
chiisaku nakattarō chiisaku nakatta {deshō darō	chiisaku nakereba chiisaku nai nara(ba)	chiisaku {nakattara arimasen deshitara	chiisaku nakute chiisaku nakutte*
ōkikattarō ōkikatta {deshō darō	ōkikereba ōkii nara(ba)	ōkikattara	ōkikute ōkikutte*
ōkiku nakattarō ōkiku nakatta {deshō darō	ōkiku nakereba ōkiku nai nara(ba)	ōkiku {nakattara arimasen deshitara	ōkiku nakute ōkiku nakutte*
yokattarō yokatta {deshō darō	yokereba yoi nara(ba)	yokattara	yokute yokutte*
yoku nakattarō yoku nakatta {deshō darō	yoku nakereba yoku nai nara(ba)	yoku {nakattara arimasen deshitara	yoku nakute yoku nakutte*
atsukattarō atsukatta {deshō darō	atsukereba atsui nara(ba)	atsukattara	atsukute atsukutte*
atsuku nakattarō atsuku nakatta {deshō darō	atsuku nakereba atsuku nai nara(ba)	atsuku {nakattara arimasen deshitara	atsuku nakute atsuku nakutte*

* Colloquial.

109. PLAIN AND POLITE VERBS

	PLAIN OR HUMBLE VERBS	POLITE AND HONORIFIC VERBS
<i>be</i>	iru oru	} o-ide nasaru* irassharu
<i>come</i>	agaru mairu † kuru	} o-ide nasaru † irassharu †
<i>do</i>	itasu † suru	nasaru
<i>drink</i>	itadaku † chōdai suru † nomu	} meshi-agaru agaru
<i>eat</i>	itakadu † chōdai suru † taberu kuu (among friends)	} meshi-agaru agaru
<i>give</i>	ageru yaru (to an inferior)	kudasaru } (to the first person) kureru } o-yari nasaru (not to the first person)
<i>go</i>	mairu † iku	} o-ide nasaru † irassharu †

<i>inquire</i>	tazuneru kiku	} o-tazune nasaru o-kiki nasaru
<i>know</i>	zonjiru † shiru	} {de gozaru go-zonji} de aru desu
<i>meet</i>	o-me ni kakaru † au	o-ai nasaru
<i>receive</i>	itadaku † chōdai suru † morau ukeru (catch) uketoru	} o-morai nasaru §
<i>see or look</i>	haiken suru † miru	} goran nasaru
<i>show</i>	o-me ni kakeru † miseru	} {nasaru (to me) o-mise } kudaseru (to me) haiken saseru (to me)
<i>speak</i>	mōsu mōshi-ageru † hanasu iu	} mōsu ossharu
<i>visit</i>	agaru tazuneru ukagau †	o-tazune nasaru

* The verb forms *ni naru*, *de gozaru*, *de aru*, or *desu* as well as *nasaru* may be used after the noun form of the verb.

† Humble.

‡ Used with *kara* means *come*; used with *e* means *go*.

§ Mostly used to mean *receive as a gift or purchase*. *Uketoru* is used for *receiving otherwise*.

110. NUMERALS

CARDINAL NUMERALS OF CHINESE ORIGIN

1. ichi	11. jū ichi	21. ni jū ichi	33. san jū san
2. ni	12. jū ni	22. ni jū ni	44. shi jū shi
3. san	13. jū san	23. ni jū san	55. go jū go
4. shi (yo or yon)	14. jū shi	24. ni jū shi	66. roku jū roku
5. go	15. jū go	25. ni jū go	78. hichi jū hachi
6. roku	16. jū roku	26. ni jū roku	89. hachi jū ku
7. hichi (or shichi)	17. jū hichi	27. ni jū hichi	
8. hachi	18. jū hachi	28. ni jū hachi	
9. ku	19. jū ku	29. ni jū ku	
10. jū	20. ni jū	30. san jū	40. shi jū (or yon jū)
50. go jū	60. roku jū	70. hichi jū	80. hachi jū
90. ku jū			
100. hyaku	101. hyaku ichi	102. hyaku ni	1000 sen
200. ni hyaku	254. ni hyaku go		2000 ni sen
300. sambyaku			3000 san zen
400. shi hyaku			4000 shi sen
500. go hyaku			5000 go sen
600. roppyaku			6000 roku sen
700. hichi hyaku			7000 hichi sen
800. happyaku			8000 hachi sen
900. ku hyaku			9000 ku sen
			10,000 ichi man
			20,000 ni man
			100,000 jū man
			1,000,000 hyaku man
			100,000,000 oku
			0 rei

CARDINAL NUMBERS OF NATIVE ORIGIN

1. hitotsu 2. futatsu 3. mittsu (or mitsu) 4. yottsu (or yotsu) 5. itsutsu 6. muttsu (or mutsu)
7. nanatsu 8. yattsu (or yatsu) 9. kokonotsu 10. tō

ORDINAL NUMBERS

<i>first</i> ichiban hajime no	ichiban hajime no
<i>second</i> ni bamme	futatsu me
<i>third</i> sam bamme	mittsu me
<i>fourth</i> yo bamme	yottsu me
<i>fifth</i> go bamme	itsutsu me
<i>sixth</i> roku bamme	muttsu me
<i>seventh</i> hichi bamme	nanatsu me
<i>eighth</i> hachi bamme	yattsu me
<i>ninth</i> ku bamme	kokonotsu me
<i>tenth</i> jū bamme	tō me
<i>eleventh</i> jū ichi bamme	
<i>twelfth</i> jū ni bamme	
<i>thirteenth</i> jū sam bamme	
etc.	
<i>twentieth</i> ni jū bamme	

FRACTIONS

$\frac{1}{2}$ hambun	$\frac{3}{4}$ sam bun no shi
$\frac{1}{4}$ shi bun no ichi	$\frac{3}{10}$ san jū bun no san

PERCENTAGE

The Japanese often compute *per ten* instead of *per hundred*. *Ichi wari* is *one per ten*, *ni wari* *two per ten*, etc. A tenth of a *wari* is called a *bu* and it corresponds therefore to per cent. Thus *ichi bu* is 1%, *ni bu* 2%, etc.

111. FREQUENTLY USED NUMERAL AUXILIARIES

chō for things with handles such as knives, tools, etc.	mai for flat things such as shirts, sheets, blankets, etc.
dai for vehicles	nin for people
fuku for whiffs of tobacco or packages of medicine	satsu for books, magazines, etc.
hai glassfuls, cupfuls	sō for boats and ships
hiki for animals	soku for footwear that come in pairs such as boots, shoes, socks, etc.
hon for long narrow objects such as pencils, pens, bottles, etc.	tsui for things that come in pairs such as vases
ken for houses and buildings	wa for birds
ko (ka) for various things having no special numeral auxiliary such as bundles, parcels, etc.	

112. PHONETIC CHANGES OF NUMERAL AND NUMERAL AUXILIARY

	before ch or t **	before f or h* (or w)	before k †	before m or b	before s or sh ‡
ichi one	it	ip	ik		is
san three sen thousand		sam sem		sam sem	
roku six hyaku hundred		rop hyap	rok hyak		
hachi eight	hat		hak (infrequent)		has
jū ten	jit	jip	jik		jis

* The f or h of the auxiliary becomes p, but after san or sen it usually becomes b.

** Before ts, ichi becomes i.

† The k of the auxiliary generally becomes g after san or sen.

‡ The s of the auxiliary usually becomes z, and sh becomes j after san or sen.

113. DAYS OF THE WEEK AND OF THE MONTH

<i>Sunday</i>	Nichiyōbi (sun day)	<i>Thursday</i>	Mokuyōbi (tree day)
<i>Monday</i>	Getsuyōbi (moon day)	<i>Friday</i>	Kinyōbi (metal day)
<i>Tuesday</i>	K(w)ayōbi (fire day)	<i>Saturday</i>	Doyōbi (earth day)
<i>Wednesday</i>	Suiyōbi (water day)		

1st tsuitachi	11th jū ichi nichī	21st ni jū ichi nichī
2nd futsuka	12th jū ni nichī	22nd ni jū ni nichī
3rd mikka	13th jū san nichī	23rd ni jū san nichī
4th yokka	14th jū yokka	24th ni jū yokka
5th itsuka	15th jū go nichī	25th ni jū go nichī
6th muika	16th jū roku nichī	26th ni jū roku nichī
7th nanuka	17th jū hichi nichī	27th ni jū hichi nichī
8th yōka	18th jū hachi nichī	28th ni jū hachi nichī
9th kokonoka	19th jū ku nichī	29th ni jū ku nichī
10th tōka	20th hatsuka or ni jū nichī	30th san jū nichī
		31st san jū ichi nichī

The word *misoka* is used for *the last day of the month* whether it be the thirtieth, thirty-first, twenty-eighth or twenty-ninth. The last day of the year is called *ō-misoka*. The days of the month with the exception of *tsuitachi* are used also to mean *one day, two days, twenty-five days*, etc. Thus *jū ichi nichī* means *eleven days* as well as *the eleventh day*, *futsuka* means *two days* as well as *the second of the month*, and *ni jū go nichī* means either *the twenty-fifth* or *twenty-five days*. *Ichi nichī* is used for *one day*.

Not referring to the day of the month, *the first day, second day*, etc. are *ichi bamme no hi*, *ni bamme no hi*, etc.; *the first month, the second month*, etc. are *ichi bamme no tsuki*, *ni bamme no tsuki*, etc., and *the first year, the second year*, etc. not referring to dates are *ichi bamme no toshi*, *ni bamme no toshi*, etc., e.g., *watakushi no byōki no hichi bamme no hi* *the seventh day of my illness*.

The first year of a year period is usually called *gannen*.

114. MONTHS OF THE YEAR AND PERIODS OF MONTHS

January	Ichi gatsu or Shōgatsu	one month	ikka getsu	or	hito tsuki
February	Ni gatsu	two months	ni ka getsu		futa tsuki
March	San gatsu	three months	san ka getsu		mi tsuki
April	Shi gatsu	four months	shi ka getsu		yo tsuki
May	Go gatsu	five months	go ka getsu		itsu tsuki
June	Roku gatsu	six months	rokka getsu		mu tsuki
July	Hichi gatsu	seven months	hichi ka getsu		nana tsuki
August	Hachi gatsu	eight months	hakka getsu		ya tsuki
September	Ku gatsu	nine months	ku ka getsu		kokono tsuki
October	Jū gatsu	ten months	jikka getsu		tō tsuki
November	Jū ichi gatsu	eleven months	jū ikka getsu		
December	Jū ni gatsu	twelve months	jū ni ka getsu		
		twenty-five months	ni jū go ka getsu		
		etc.			

115. YEAR PERIODS AND PERIODS OF YEARS

Meiji	1868-1912	one year	ichi nen	or	ikka nen
Taishō	1912-1926	two years	ni nen		ni ka nen
Shōwa	1926 to the present	three years	san nen		san ka nen
		twenty-five years	ni jū go nen		ni jū go ka nen
		etc.			

116. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

IRREGULAR VERBS *kuru* AND *suru*

CONCLUSIVE, ATTRIBUTIVE, AND SIMPLE PRESENT	<i>kuru</i>	<i>suru</i>
CONTINUATIVE STEM	<i>ki</i>	<i>shi</i>
GERUND	<i>kite</i>	<i>shite</i>
NEGATIVE STEM	<i>ko</i> or <i>ki</i>	<i>se</i> or <i>shi</i>

FIRST CLASS

CONCLUSIVE, ATTRIBUTIVE, AND SIMPLE PRESENT	<i>-eru</i>	<i>-iru</i>
CONTINUATIVE AND NEGATIVE STEM; NOUN FORM	<i>taberu</i>	<i>miru</i>
GERUND	<i>tabe</i>	<i>mi</i>
	<i>tabete</i>	<i>mite</i>

SECOND CLASS

	*au	**bu	igu	*iu	iku	**nu	*ou	ru	su	tsu	*uu
CONCLUSIVE, ATTRIBUTIVE, AND SIMPLE PRESENT	harau	yobu	nugu	iu	kaku	yomu	omou	haru kaeru (return) shiru noru uru	hanasu	mo/su	suu
CONTINUATIVE STEM	harai	yoi	nugi	ii	kaki	yomi	omoi	nari kaeri shiri nori uri	hanashi	mochi	sui
GERUND	haratte	yonde	nuide	itte	kaite	yonde	onotte	natte kaette shifte notte utte	hanashite	motte	sutte
NEGATIVE STEM	harawa	yoba	nuga	iwa	kaka	yoma	omowa	nara kaera shira nora ura	hanasa	mo/a	suwa

* ** and † indicate that the verbs so marked are related in form; i, e, verbs with a vowel before the u ending are marked with one asterisk because their gerund and negative forms are similarly formed; verbs marked with a double asterisk show a nasal sound in the gerund, etc.

117. TENSE, MOOD, AND VOICE OF VERBS
FIRST CLASS VERBS
ACTIVE VOICE

		taberu		miru	
		AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
PRESENT	GENERAL	taberu	tabe-nai	miru	mi-nai
	PROGRESSIVE	tabete iru	tabete i-nai	mite iru	mite i-nai
	POLITE FORM	tabemasu	tabemasen	mimasu	mimasen
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	PROGRESSIVE	tabete imasu*	tabete imasen	mite imasu*	mite imasen
	GENERAL	tabeyō	tabe-mai†	miyō	mi-mai†
	PROGRESSIVE	taberu deshō†	tabe-nai deshō	miru deshō†	mi-nai deshō
	GENERAL	tabete iru deshō	tabete i-nai deshō	mite iru deshō	mite i-nai deshō
	POLITE FORM	tabemashō**	tabemasu-mai	mimashō**	mimasu-mai**
	PROGRESSIVE	tabemasu deshō	tabemasen deshō	mimasu deshō	mimasen deshō
PAST*	PROGRESSIVE	tabete imashō	tabete imasu-mai	mite imashō	mite imasu-mai
	GENERAL	tabeta	tabe-nakatta	mita	mi-nakatta
	PROGRESSIVE	tabete ita	tabete i-nakatta	mite ita	mite i-nakatta
	POLITE FORM	tabemashita	tabemasen deshita	mimashita	mimasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	PROGRESSIVE	tabete imashita	tabete imasen deshita	mite imashita	mite imasen deshita
	GENERAL	tabetarō	tabe-nakattarō	mitarō	mi-nakattarō
	PROGRESSIVE	tabeta deshō	tabe-nakatta deshō	mita deshō	mi-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	tabete itarō	tabete i-nakattarō	mite itarō	mite i-nakattarō
	PROGRESSIVE	tabete ita deshō	tabetei-nakatta deshō	mite ita deshō	mite i-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	tabemashitarō	tabemasen deshitarō	mimashitarō	mimasen deshitarō
	PROGRESSIVE	tabete imashitarō	tabete imasen deshitarō	mite imashitarō	mite imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	tabereba	tabe-nakereba	mireba	mi-nakereba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	tabete ireba	tabete i-nakereba	mite ireba	mite i-nakereba
			tabemasureba	tabemasen nareba	mimasureba	mimasen nareba
			tabete imasureba	tabete imasen nareba	mite imasureba	mite imasen nareba
			tabetara	tabe-nakattara	mitara	mi-nakattara
CONJUNC- TIVE (gerundial form)	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	tabete itara	tabete i-nakattara	mite itara	mite i-nakattara
			tabemashitara	tabemasen deshitara	mimashitara	mimasen deshitara
			tabete imashitara	tabete imasen deshitara	mite imashitara	mite imasen deshitara
			tabete	tabe-nai de	mite	mi-nai de
IMPERA- TIVE	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	tabete ite	tabete i-nai de	mite ite	mite i-nai de
			tabemashite	tabemasen de	mimashite	mimasen de
			tabete imashite	tabete imasen de	mite imashite	mite imasen de
	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		tabe! tabero! tabena!	taberu na! (to inferiors or intimates)	mi! miro! mina!	miru na!
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		tabete (o)-kure (o)-tabe nasai tabete kudasai o-tabe kudasai	tabe-nai de o-kure tabete wa ike nai tabe-nai de ii tabe-nai de kudasai o-tabe kudasaimesen na	mite (o)-kure goran nasai mite kudasai goran kudasai na	mi-nai de o-kure mite wa ike nai mi-nai de ii mi-nai de kudasai goran kudasaimesen na

* These forms are also used for the perfect tenses; e. g., tabemashita may mean *have eaten*; tabete imasu may mean *have been eating*; tabete imasho probably *have been eating*; will have been eating; tabete imashita had been eating. The past progressive form is often used to indicate the present perfect in the first person; e. g., haratte imashita may mean *have been paying* as well as *had been paying*.

** These forms in -o, -masho and -masumai also may mean *let us* and *let us not* respectively; e. g., tabemasho *let us eat*; tabemasumai *let us not eat*.

† Desho may be substituted throughout the paradigm by daro which, however, is less polite. The forms with desho followed or not by ni may be used to translate *should* or *would* in result clauses after a conditional; e. g., Ano hito ga kane wo motte ireba, kanjo wo harau desho ni. *If he had the money, he would pay the bill*; Ano hito ga kane wo motte itara, kanjo wo haratta desho ni. *If he had had money, he would have paid the bill*.

‡ The suffix mai is added to the conclusive form of second class verbs, but to the continuative form of first class verbs; e. g., Tegami wo kakumai. *I don't think I'll write a letter*; Gohan wo tabemai. *I don't think I'll eat dinner*.

§ The verb miru has the special honorific form goran (see section 109). The corresponding forms of kuru put on are o-kiri nasai, o-kiri kudasai, and o-kiri kudasaimesen na.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS
ACTIVE VOICE

			harAU		yoBU	
			AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
			harau	harawa-nai	yobu	yoba-nai
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	haratte iru	haratte i-nai	yonde iru	yonde i-nai
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	haraimasu	haraimasen	yobimasu	yobimasen
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte imasu*	haratte imasen	yonde imasu	yonde imasen
		GENERAL	harau desho †	harau-mai † harawa-nai desho	yobō yobu desho	yobu-mai yoba-nai desho
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte iru desho	haratte i-nai desho haratte i-mai	yonde iru desho	yonde i-nai desho
		GENERAL	haraimashō** haraimasu desho	haraimasu-mai** haraimasen desho	yobimashō yobimasu desho	yobimasu-mai yobimasen desho
PAST*	SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte imashō	haratte imasu-mai	yonde imashō	yonde imasu-mai
		GENERAL	haratta	harawa-nakatta	yonda	yoba-nakatta
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte ita	haratte i-nakatta	yonde ita	yonde i-nakatta
		GENERAL	haraimashita	haraimasen deshita	yobimashita	yobimasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte imashita	haratte imasen deshita	yonde imashita	yonde imasen deshita
		GENERAL	harattarō haratta desho	harawa-nakattarō harawa-nakatta desho	yonda darō. yonda desho	yoba-nakattarō yoba-nakatta desho
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte itarō haratte ita desho	haratte i-nakattarō haratte i-nakatta desho	yonde itarō yonde ita desho	yonde i-nakattarō yonde i-nakatta desho
		GENERAL	haraimashitarō	haraimasen deshitarō	yobimashitarō	yobimasen deshitarō
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte imashitarō	haratte imasen deshitarō	yonde imashitarō	yonde imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	haraeba	harawa-nakereba	yobeba	yoba-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte ireba	haratte i-nakereba	yonde ireba	yonde i-nakereba
		GENERAL	haraimasureba	haraimasen nareba	yobimasureba	yobimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	haratte imasureba	haratte imasen nareba	yonde imasureba	yonde imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	harattara	harawa-nakattara	yondara	yoba-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte itara	haratte i-nakattara	yonde itara	yonde i-nakattara
		GENERAL	haraimashitara	haraimasen deshitara	yobimashitara	yobimasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	haratte imashitara	haratte imasen deshitara	yonde imashitara	yonde imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	haratte	harawa-nai de harawa-nakute	yonde	yoba-nai de yoba-nakute
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	haratte ite	haratte i-nai de	yonde ite	yonde i-nai de
		GENERAL	haraimashite	haraimasen de	yobimashite	yobimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	haratte imashite	haratte imasen de	yonde imashite	yonde imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		harael harae yoi	haraui nai (to inferior or intimates)	yobel yobe yoi	yobu nai
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		haratte (o)-kure (o)-harai nasai haratte kudasai o-harai kudasai	harawa-nai de o-kure haratte wa ike-nai harawa-nai de ii harawa-nai de kudasai o-harai kudasaimasu na	yonde (o)-kure (o)-yobi nasai yonde kudasai o-yobi kudasai na	yoba-nai de o-kure yonde wa ike-nai yoba-nai de ii yoba-nai de kudasai o-yobi kudasaimasu na

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS—*Continued*
ACTIVE VOICE

			nuGU		IU	
			AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
PRESENT	GENERAL	SIMPLE FORM	nugu	nuga-nai	iu	iwa-nai
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide iru	nuide i-nai	itte iru	itte i-nai
	GENERAL	POLITE FORM	nugimasu	nugimasen	imasu	imasen
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imasu	nuide imasen	itte imasu	itte imasen
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	GENERAL	SIMPLE FORM	nugō nugu deshō	nugu-mai nuga-nai deshō	iō iu deshō	iu-mai iwa-nai deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide iru deshō	nuide i-nai deshō nuide i-mai	itte iru deshō	itte i-nai deshō itte i-mai
	GENERAL	POLITE FORM	nugimashō nugimasu deshō	nugimasu-mai nugimasen deshō	imashō imasu deshō	imasu-mai imasen deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imashō	nuide imasu-mai	itte imashō	itte imasu-mai
PAST*	GENERAL	SIMPLE FORM	nuida	nuga-nakatta	itta	iwa-nakatta
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide ita	nuide i-nakatta	itte ita	itte i-nakatta
	GENERAL	POLITE FORM	nugimashita	nugimasen deshita	imashita	imasen deshita
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imashita	nuide imasen deshita	itte imashita	itte imasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	GENERAL	SIMPLE FORM	nuida darō nuida deshō	nuga-nakattarō nuga-nakatta deshō	ittarō itta deshō	iwa-nakattarō iwa-nakatta deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide itarō nuide ita deshō	nuide i-nakattarō nuide i-nakatta deshō	itte itarō itte ita deshō	itte i-nakattarō itte i-nakatta deshō
	GENERAL	POLITE FORM	nugimashitarō	nugimasen deshitarō	imashitarō	imasen deshitarō
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imashitarō	nuide imasen deshitarō	itte imashitarō	itte imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	nugeba	nuga-nakereba	ieba	iwa-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	nuide ireba	nuide i-nakereba	itte ireba	itte i-nakereba
		GENERAL	nugimasureba	nugimasen nareba	iimasureba	iimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imasureba	nuide imasen nareba	itte imasureba	itte imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	nuidara	nuga-nakattara	ittara	iwa-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	nuide itara	nuide i-nakattara	itte itara	itte i-nakattara
		GENERAL	nugimashitara	nugimasen deshitara	imashitara	imasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imashitara	nuide imasen deshitara	itte imashitara	itte imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	nuide	nuga-nai de nuga-nakute	itte	iwa-nai de iwa-nakute
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	nuide ite	nuide i-nai de	itte ite	itte i-nai de
		GENERAL	nugimashite	nugimasen de	iimashite	iimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	nuide imashite	nuide imasen de	itte imashite	itte imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		nuge! nuge yo!	nugu na!	ie! ie yo!	iu na!
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		nuide (o)-kure (o)-nugi nasai nuide kudasai o-nugi kudasai	nuga-nai de o-kure nuide wa ike-nai nuga-nai de ii nuga-nai de kudasai o-nugi kudasaimasu na	itte (o)-kure (o)-ii nasai itte kudasai o-ii kudasai	iwa-nai de o-kure itte wa ike-nai iwa-nai de ii iwa-nai de kudasai o-ii kudasaimasu na

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS—Continued
ACTIVE VOICE

			kaKU		yoMU	
			AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kaku	kaka-nai	yomu	yoma-nai
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite iru	kaite i-nai	yonde iru	yonde i-nai
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimasu	kakimasen	yomimasu	yomimasen
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imasu	kaite imasen	yonde imasu	yonde imasen
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kakō kaku deshō	kaku-mai kaka-nai deshō	yomō yomu deshō	yomu-mai yoma-nai deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite iru deshō	kaite i-nai deshō kaite i-mai	yonde iru deshō	yonde i-nai deshō yonde i-mai
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimashō kakimasu deshō	kakimasu-nai kakimasen deshō	yomimashō yomimasu deshō	yomimasu-mai yomimasen deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imashō	kaite imasu-mai	yonde imashō	yonde imasu-mai
PAST*	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kaita	kaka-nakatta	yonda	yoma-nakatta
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite ita	kaite i-nakatta	yonde ita	yonde i-nakatta
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimashita	kakimasen deshita	yomimashita	yomimasen deshita
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imashita	kaite imasen deshita	yonde imashita	yonde imasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kaitarō kaita deshō	kaka-nakattarō kaka-nakatta deshō	yondarō yonda deshō	yoma-nakattarō yoma-nakatta deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite itarō kaite ita deshō	kaite i-nakattarō kaite i-nakatta deshō	yonde itarō yonde ita deshō	yonde i-nakattarō yonde i-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimashitarō	kakimasen deshitarō	yomimashitarō	yomimasen deshitarō
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imashitarō	kaite imasen deshitarō	yonde imashitarō	yonde imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kakeba	kaka-nakereba	yoneba	yoma-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	kaite ireba	kaite i-nakereba	yonde ireba	yonde i-nakereba
		GENERAL	kakimasureba	kakimassen nareba	yomimasureba	yomimassen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imasureba	kaite imasen nareba	yonde imasureba	yonde imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kaitara	kaka-nakattara	yondara	yoma-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite itara	kaite i-nakattara	yonde itara	yonde i-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimashitara	kakimassen deshitara	yomimashitara	yomimassen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imashitara	kaite imasen deshitara	yonde imashitara	yonde imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kaite	kaka-nai de kaka-nakute	yonde	yoma-nai de yoma-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite ite	kaite i-nai de	yonde ite	yonde i-nai de
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kakimashite	kakimassen de	yomimashite	yomimassen de
		PROGRESSIVE	kaite imashite	kaite imasen de	yonde imashite	yonde imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		kake! kake yo! kaki na!	kaku na!	yome! yome yo!	yomu na!
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		kaite (o)-kure (o)-kaki nasai kaite kudasai o-kaki kudasai	kaka-nai de o-kure kaite wa ike-nai kaka-nai de ii kaka-nai de kudasai o-kaki kudasaimasu na	yonde (o)-kure (o)-yomi nasai yonde kudasai o-yomi kudasai	yoma-nai de o-kure yonde wa ike-nai yoma-nai de ii yoma-nai de kudasai o-yomi kudasaimasu na

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS—Continued
ACTIVE VOICE

			shiNU		omOU	
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
			shinu	shina-nai	omou	omowa-nai
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	shinde iru	shinde i-nai	omotte iru	omotte i-nai
			shinimasu	shinimasen	omoimasu	omoimasen
			shinde imasu	shinde imasen	omotte imasu	omotte imasen
			shinō shinu deshō	shinu-mai shina-nai deshō	omō omou deshō	omou-mai omowa-nai deshō
PAST*	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	shinde iru deshō	shinde i-nai deshō shinde i-mai	omotte iru deshō	omotte i-nai deshō omotte i-mai
			shinimashō shinimasu deshō	shinimasu-mai shinimasen deshō	omoimashō omoimasu deshō	omoimasu-mai omoimasen deshō
			shinde imashō	shinde imasu-mai	omotte imashō	omotte imasu-mai
			shinda shinde ita	shina-nakatta shinde i-nakatta	omotta omotte ita	omowa-nakatta omotte i-nakatta
PROBABLE PAST	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	shinimashita	shinimasen deshita	omoimashita	omoimasen deshita
			shinde imashita	shinde imasen deshita	omotte imashita	omotte imasen deshita
			shinda darō shinda deshō	shina-nakattarō shina-nakatta deshō	omottarō omotta deshō	omowa-nakattarō omowa-nakatta deshō
			shinde itarō shinde ita deshō	shinde i-nakattarō shinde i-nakatta deshō	omotte itarō omotte ita deshō	omotte i-nakattarō omotte i-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	shinimashitarō	shinimasen deshitarō	omoimashitarō	omoimasen deshitarō
			shinde imashitarō	shinde imasen deshitarō	omotte imashitarō	omotte imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	shineba	shina-nakereba	omoeba	omowa-nakereba
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde ireba	shinde i-nakereba	omotte ireba	omotte i-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	shinimasureba	shimasen nareba	omoimasureba	omoimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde imasureba	shinde imasen nareba	omotte imasureba	omotte imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	shindara	shina-nakattara	omottara	omowa-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde itara	shinde i-nakattara	omotte itara	omotte i-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	shinimashitara	shimasen deshitara	omoimashitara	omoimasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde imashitara	shinde imasen deshitara	omotte imashitara	omotte imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	shinde	shina-nai de shina-nakute	omotte	omowa-nai de omowa-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde ite	shinde i-nai de	omotte ite	omotte i-nai de
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	shinimashite	shinimasen de	omoimashite	omoimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	shinde imashite	shinde imasen de	omotte imashite	omotte imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		shine! shine yo!	shinu nai	omoel! omoel yo!	omou nai
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		shinde (o)-kure (o)-shini nasai shinde kudasai o-shini kudasai	shina-nai de o-kure shinde wa ike-nai shina-nai de ii shina-nai de kudasai o-shini kudasaimasu na	omotte (o)-kure (o)-omoi nasai omotte kudasai o-omoi kudasai	omowa-nai de o-kure omotte wa ike-nai omowa-nai de ii omowa-nai de kudasai o-omoi kudasaimasu na

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS—*Continued*
ACTIVE VOICE

		naRU		hanaSU	
		AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
PRESENT	GENERAL	naru	nara-nai	hanasu	hanasa-nai
	PROGRESSIVE	natte iru	natte i-nai	hanashite iru	hanashite i-nai
	POLITE FORM	narimasu	narimasen	hanashimasu	hanashimasen
	PROGRESSIVE	natte imasu	natte imasen	hanashite imasu	hanashite imasen
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	GENERAL	narō naru deshō	naru-mai nara-nai deshō	hanasō hanasu deshō	hanasu-mai hanasa-nai deshō
	PROGRESSIVE	natte iru deshō	natte i-nai deshō natte i-mai	hanashite iru deshō	hanashite i-nai deshō hanashite i-mai
	POLITE FORM	narimashō narimasu deshō	narimasu-mai narimasen deshō	hanashimashō hanashimasu deshō	hanashimasu-mai hanashimasen deshō
	PROGRESSIVE	natte imashō	natte imasu-mai	hanashite imashō	hanashite imasu-mai
PAST*	GENERAL	natta	nara-nakatta	hanashita	hanasa-nakatta
	PROGRESSIVE	natte ita	natte i-nakatta	hanashite ita	hanashite i-nakatta
	POLITE FORM	narimashita	narimasen deshita	hanashimashita	hanashimasen deshita
	PROGRESSIVE	natte imashita	natte imasen deshita	hanashite imashita	hanashite imasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	GENERAL	nattarō natta deshō	nara-nakattarō nara-nakatta deshō	hanashitarō hanashita deshō	hanasa-nakattarō hanasa-nakatta deshō
	PROGRESSIVE	natte itarō natte ita deshō	natte i-nakattarō natte i-nakatta deshō	hanashite itarō hanashite ita deshō	hanashite i-nakattarō hanashite i-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	narimashitarō	narimasen deshitarō	hanashimashitarō	hanashimasen deshitarō
	PROGRESSIVE	natte imashitarō	natte imasen deshitarō	hanashite imashitarō	hanashite imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	nareba	nara-nakereba	hanaseba	hanasa-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	natte ireba	natte i-nakereba	hanashite ireba	hanashite i-nakereba
		GENERAL	narimasureba	narimasen nareba	hanashimasureba	hanashimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	natte imasureba	natte imasen nareba	hanashite imasureba	hanashite imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	nattara	nara-nakattara	hanashitara	hanasa-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	natte itara	natte i-nakattara	hanashite itara	hanashite i-nakattara
		GENERAL	narimashitara	narimasen deshitara	hanashimashitara	hanashimasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	natte imashitara	natte imasen deshitara	hanashite imashitara	hanashite imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	natte	nara-nai de nara-nakute	hanashite	hanasa-nai de hanasa-nakute
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	natte ite	natte i-nai de	hanashite ite	hanashite i-nai de
		GENERAL	narimashite	narimasen de	hanashimashite	hanashimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	natte imashite	natte imasen de	hanashite imashite	hanashite imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		nare! nare yo!	naru na!	hanase! hanase yo!	hanasu na!
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)		natte (o)-kure (o)-nari nasai natte kudasai o-nari kudasai	nara-nai de o-kure natte wa ike-nai nara-nai de ii nara-nai de kudasai o-nari kudasaimasu na	hanashite (o)-kure (o)-hanashi nasai hanashite kudasai o-hanashi kudasai	hanasa-nai de o-kure hanashite wa ike-nai hanasa-nai de ii hanasa-nai de kudasai o-hanashi kudasai- masu na

VERBS OF THE SECOND CLASS—*Continued*
ACTIVE VOICE

			moTSU		suU	
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
			motu	mota-nai	suu	suwa-nai
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte iru	motte i-nai	sutte iru	sutte i-nai
			mochimasu	mochimasen	suimasu	suimasen
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte imasu	motte imasen	sutte imasu	sutte imasen
			motō	motsu-mai	suō	suu-mai
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motu deshō	mota-nai deshō	suu deshō	suwa-nai deshō
			motte iru deshō	motte i-nai deshō	sutte iru deshō	sutte i-nai deshō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	mochimashō	mochimasu-mai	suimashō	suimasu-mai
			mochimasu deshō	mochimasen deshō	suimasu deshō	suimasen deshō
PAST*	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte imashō	motte imasu-mai	sutte imashō	sutte imasu-mai
			motta	mota-nakatta	sutta	suwa-nakatta
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte ita	motte i-nakatta	sutte ita	sutte i-nakatta
			mochimashita	mochimasen deshita	suimashita	suimasen deshita
PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte imashita	motte imasen deshita	sutte imashita	sutte imasen deshita
			mottarō	mota-nakattarō	suttarō	suwa-nakattarō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motta deshō	mota-nakatta deshō	sutta deshō	suwa-nakatta deshō
			motte itarō	motte i-nakattarō	sutte itarō	sutte i-nakattarō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte ita deshō	motte i-nakatta deshō	sutte ita deshō	sutte i-nakatta deshō
			mochimashitarō	mochimasen deshitarō	suimashitarō	suimasen deshitarō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	motte imashitarō	motte imasen deshitarō	sutte imashitarō	sutte imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	moteba	mota-nakereba	sueba	suwa-nakereba
		PROGRESSIVE	motte ireba	motte i-nakereba	sutte ireba	sutte i-nakereba
		GENERAL	mochimasureba	mochimasen nareba	suimasureba	suimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	motte imasureba	motte imasen nareba	sutte imasureba	sutte imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	mottara	mota-nakattara	suttara	suwa-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	motte itara	motte i-nakattara	sutte itara	sutte i-nakattara
		GENERAL	mochimashitara	mochimasen deshitara	suimashitara	suimasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	motte imashitara	motte imasen deshitara	sutte imashitara	sutte imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	motte	mota-nai de mota-nakute	sutte	suwa-nai de suwa-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	motte ite	motte i-nai de	sutte ite	sutte i-nai de
		GENERAL	mochimashite	mochimasen de	suimashite	suimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	motte imashite	motte imasen de	sutte imashite	sutte imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		mote! mote yol	motsu nai	sue! sue yol	suu nai
			motte (o)-kure (o)-mochi nasai motte kudasai o-mochi kudasai	mota-nai de o-kure motte wa ike-nai mota-nai de ii mota-nai de kudasai o-mochi kudasaimasu na	sutte (o)-kure (o)-sui nasai sutte kudasai o-sui kudasai	suwa-nai de o-kure sutte wa ike-nai suwa-nai de ii suwa-nai de kudasai o-sui kudasaimasu na
	POLITE FORM (from least to most polite)					

PASSIVE VOICE
(POTENTIAL AND POLITE ACTIVE)

			taberareru		mirareru		
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	
		PROGRESSIVE	taberareru	taberare-nai	mirareru	mirare-nai	
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete iru	taberarete i-nai	mirarete iru	mirarete i-nai	
		PROGRESSIVE	taberaremasu	taberaremasen	miraremasu	miraremasen	
	PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete imasu	taberarete imasen	mirarete imasu	mirarete imasen
			PROGRESSIVE	taberareyō taberareru deshō	taberare-mai taberare-nai deshō	mirareyō mirareru deshō	mirare-mai mirare-nai deshō
PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete iru deshō	taberarete i-nai deshō taberarete i-mai	mirarete iru deshō	mirarete i-nai deshō mirarete i-mai	
		PROGRESSIVE	taberaremasu deshō	taberaremasu-mai taberaremasen deshō	miraremasu miraremasu deshō	miraremasu-mai miraremasen deshō	
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete imashō	taberarete imasu-mai	mirarete imashō	mirarete imasu-mai	
		PROGRESSIVE	taberareta	taberare-nakatta	mirareta	mirare-nakatta	
	PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete ita	taberarete i-nakatta	mirarete ita	mirarete i-nakatta
			PROGRESSIVE	taberaremasu imashita	taberaremasen deshita	miraremasu imashita	miraremasen deshita
FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete imasu	taberarete imasen	mirarete imasu	mirarete imasen	
		PROGRESSIVE	taberareyō taberareru deshō	taberare-mai taberare-nai deshō	mirareyō mirareru deshō	mirare-mai mirare-nai deshō	

PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberaretarō taberareta deshō	taberare-nakattarō taberare-nakatta deshō	miraretarō mirareta deshō	mirare-nakattarō mirare-nakatta deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete itarō taberarete ita deshō	taberarete i-nakattarō taberarete i-nakatta deshō	mirarete itarō mirarete ita deshō	mirarete i-nakattarō mirarete i-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberaremashtarō	taberaremasen deshitarō	miraremashtarō	miraremasen deshitarō
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete imashitarō	taberarete imasen deshitarō	mirarete imashitarō	mirarete imasen deshitarō
PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberareba	taberare-nakereba	mirareba	mirare-nakereba
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete ireba	taberarete i-nakereba	mirarete ireba	mirarete i-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberaremasureba	taberaremasennareba	miraremasureba	miraremasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete imasureba	taberarete imasen nareba	mirarete imasureba	mirarete imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberaretara	taberare-nakattara	miraretara	mirare-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete itara	taberarete i-nakattara	mirarete itara	mirarete i-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberaremashitara	taberaremasen deshitara	miraremashitara	miraremasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete imashitara	taberarete imasen deshitara	mirarete imashitara	mirarete imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	taberarete	taberare-nai de taberare-nakute	mirarete	mirare-nai de mirare-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete ite	taberarete i-nai de	mirarete ite	mirarete i-nai de
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	taberaremasHITE	taberaremasen de	miraremasHITE	miraremasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	taberarete imashite	taberarete imasen de	mirarete imashite	mirarete imasen de

PASSIVE VOICE
(POTENTIAL AND POLITE ACTIVE)

				harawareru*	
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE
		PROGRESSIVE	harawareru	haraware-nai	
		GENERAL	harawarete iru	harawarete i-nai	
		PROGRESSIVE	harawaremasu	harawaremasen	
	POLITE FORM		harawarete imasu	harawarete imasen	
			harawareyō harawareru deshō	haraware-mai haraware-nai deshō	
			harawarete iru deshō	harawarete i-mai harawarete i-nai deshō	
			harawaremashō harawaremasu deshō	harawaremasu-mai harawaremasen deshō	
PAST	SIMPLE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	harawarete-imashō	harawarete imasu-mai	
		GENERAL	harawareta	haraware-nakatta	
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete ita	harawarete i-nakatta	
		GENERAL	harawaremashita	harawaremasen deshita	
	POLITE FORM		harawarete imashita	harawarete imasen deshita	

PROBABLE PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	harawaretarō harawareta deshō	haraware-nakattarō haraware-nakatta deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete itarō harawarete ita deshō	harawarete i-nakattarō harawarete i-nakatta deshō
PRESENT CONDITIONAL	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	harawaremashitarō	harawaremasen deshitarō
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete imashitarō	harawarete imasen deshitarō
PRESENT CONDITIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	harawarereba	haraware-nakereba
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete ireba	harawarete i-nakereba
PRESENT CONDITIONAL	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	harawaremasureba	harawaremasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete imasureba	harawarete imasen nareba
PAST CONDITIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	harawaretara	haraware-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete itara	harawarete i-nakattara
PAST CONDITIONAL	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	harawaremashitara	harawaremasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete imashitara	harawarete imasen deshitara
CONJUNCTIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	harawarete	haraware-nai de haraware-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete ite	harawarete i-nai de
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	harawaremashite	harawaremasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	harawarete imashite	harawarete imasen de

* The passive forms of the preceding model verbs are yobareru, nugareru, iwareru, kakareru, yomareru, shinareru, omowareru, narareru, hanasareru, motareru, and suwareru. Their various forms are made in the same manner as those of harawareru.

IRREGULAR VERBS **kuru** AND **suru**
ACTIVE VOICE

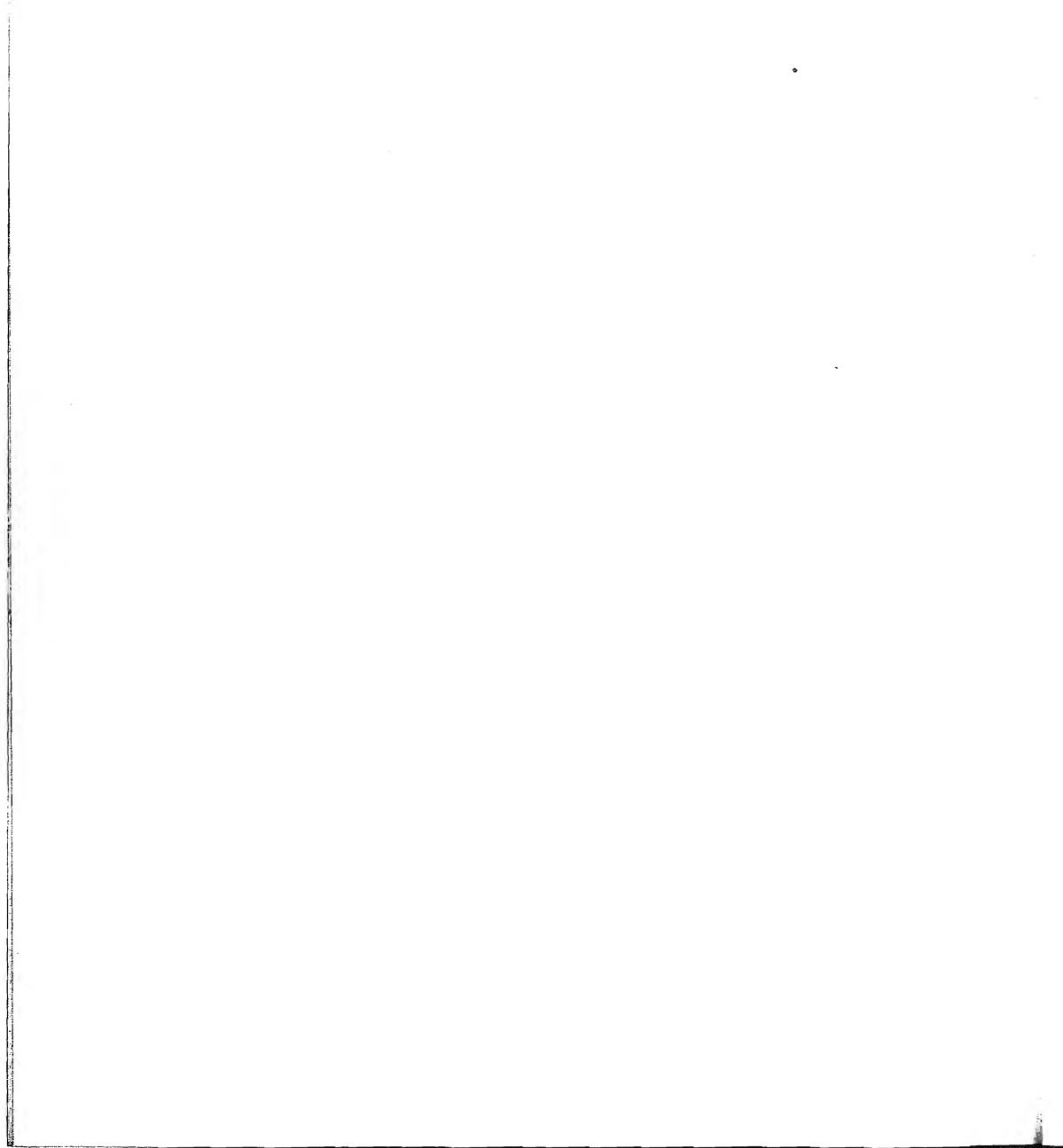
			kuru		suru	
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
			kuru	ko-nai	suru	shi-nai
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kite iru	kite i-nai	shite iru	shite i-nai
		PROGRESSIVE	kimasu	kimasen	shimasu	shimasen
	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kite imasu	kite imasen	shite imasu	shite imasen
		PROGRESSIVE	kiyō kuru deshō	kuru-mai ko-nai deshō	shiyō suru deshō	suru-mai shi-nai deshō
PAST	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kite iru deshō	kite i-nai deshō	shite iru deshō	shite i-nai deshō
		PROGRESSIVE	kimashō	kimasu-mai	shimashō	shimasu-mai
	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kite imashō	kite imasu-mai	shite imashō	shite imasu-mai
		PROGRESSIVE	kita	ko-nakatta	shita	shi-nakatta
PROBABLE PAST	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kite ita	kite i-nakatta	shite ita	shite i-nakatta
		PROGRESSIVE	kimashita	kimasen deshita	shimashita	shimasen deshita
	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kite imashita	kite imasen deshita	shite imashita	shite imasen deshita
		PROGRESSIVE	kitarō kita deshō	ko-nakattarō ko-nakatta deshō	shitarō shita deshō	shi-nakattarō se-nakattarō shi-nakatta deshō se-nakatta deshō
	POLITE FORM	PROGRESSIVE	kite itarō kite ita deshō	kite i-nakattarō kite i-nakatta deshō	shite itarō shite ita deshō	shite i-nakattarō shite i-nakatta deshō
		GENERAL	kimashitarō	kimasen deshitarō	shimashitarō	shimasen deshitarō
		PROGRESSIVE	kite imashitarō	kite imasen deshitarō	shite imashitarō	shite imasen deshitarō

PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kureba	ko-nakereba	sureba	shi-nakereba
		PROGRESSIVE	kite ireba	kite i-nakereba	shite ireba	shite i-nakereba
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kimasureba	kimasen nareba	shimasureba	shimasen nareba
		PROGRESSIVE	kite imasureba	kite imasen nareba	shite imasureba	shite imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kitara	ko-nakattara	shitara	shi-nakattara se-nakattara
		PROGRESSIVE	kite itara	kite i-nakattara	shite itara	shite i-nakattara
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kimashitara	kimasen deshitara	shimashitara	shimasen deshitara
		PROGRESSIVE	kite imashitara	kite imasen deshitara	shite imashitara	shite imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL	kite	ko-nai de ko-nakute	shite	shi-nai de se-nai de shi-nakute se-nakute
		PROGRESSIVE	kite ite	kite i-nai de	shite ite	shite i-nai de
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL	kimashite	kimasen de	shimashite	shimasen de
		PROGRESSIVE	kite imashite	kite imasen de	shite imashite	shite imasen de
IMPERA- TIVE	ARMY COM- MAND OR LOW LAN- GUAGE		kol koi!	kuru nai	se! seyo!	suru nai!
			kite (o)-kure (o)-ki nasai kite kudasai o-ki kudasai o-ide kudasai	ko-nai de o-kure kite wa ike-nai ko-nai de ii ko-nai de kudasai o-ki kudasaimasu na o-ide kudasaimasu na	shite (o)-kure (o)-shi nasai shite kudasai o-shi kudasai o-nasatte kudasai	shi-nai de o-kure se-nai de o-kure shite wa ike-nai shi-nai de ii se-nai de ii shi-nai de kudasai se-nai de kudasai o-shi kudasaimasu na o-nasatte kudasaima- su na

PASSIVE VOICE
(POTENTIAL AND POLITE ACTIVE)

			korareru		sareru	
PRESENT	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
			korareru	korare-nai	sareru	sare-nai
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	korarete iru	korarete i-nai	sarete iru	sarete i-nai
			koraremasu	koraremasen	saremasu	saremasen
			korarete imasu	korarete imasen	sarete imasu	sarete imasen
			korareyō korareru deshō	korare-mai korare-nai deshō	sareyō sareru deshō	sare-mai sare-nai deshō
PROBABLE PRESENT AND FUTURE	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	korarete iru deshō	korarete i-mai korarete i-nai deshō	sarete iru deshō	sarete i-mai sarete i-nai deshō
			koraremasu deshō	koraremasu-mai koraremasen deshō	saremasu deshō	saremasu-mai saremasen deshō
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	korarete imashō	korarete imasu-mai	sarete imashō	sarete imasu-mai
			korareta	korare-nakatta	sareta	sare-nakatta
PAST	SIMPLE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	korarete ita	korarete i-nakatta	sarete ita	sarete i-nakatta
			koraremashta	koraremasen deshta	saremashta	saremasen deshta
	POLITE FORM	GENERAL PROGRESSIVE	korarete imashita	korarete imasen deshta	sarete imashita	sarete imasen deshta

PROBABLE PAST	GENERAL	koraretarō korareta deshō	korare-nakattarō korare-nakatta deshō	saretarō sareta deshō	sare-nakattarō sare-nakatta deshō
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete itarō korarete ita deshō	korarete i-nakattarō korarete i-nakatta deshō	sarete itarō sarete ita deshō	sarete i-nakattarō sarete i-nakatta deshō
	GENERAL	korarenashitarō	koraremasendeshtarō	saremashtarō	saremasen deshtarō
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete imashitarō	korarete imasen deshtarō	sarete imashitarō	sarete imasen deshtarō
PRESENT CONDI- TIONAL	GENERAL	korarereba	korare-nakereba	sarereba	sare-nakereba
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete ireba	korarete i-nakereba	sarete ireba	sarete i-nakereba
	GENERAL	koraremasureba	koraremasen nareba	saremasureba	saremasen nareba
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete inasureba	korarete imasen nareba	sarete inasureba	sarete imasen nareba
PAST CONDI- TIONAL	GENERAL	koraretara	korare-nakattara	saretara	sare-nakattara
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete itara	korarete i-nakattara	sarete itara	sarete i-nakattara
	GENERAL	korarenashitara	koraremasen deshitara	saremashitara	saremasen deshitara
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete imashitara	korarete imasen deshitara	sarete imashitara	sarete imasen deshitara
CONJUNC- TIVE	GENERAL	korarete	korare-nai de korare-nakute	sarete	sare-nai de sare-nakute
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete ite	korarete i-nai de	sarete ite	sarete i-nai de
	GENERAL	koraremasHITE	koraremasen de	saremasHITE	saremasen de
	PROGRESSIVE	korarete imashite	koraremasen de usen de	sarete imashite	sarete imasen de



APPENDIX

KATAKANA SYLLABARY



KATAKANA SYLLABARY

Although the Japanese usually use the Chinese characters in writing, they all know this syllabary. Japanese is usually written from top to bottom and from right to left. The words are written by syllables and not by letters. Note that *fu* is in column **H**; *ch* or *chi* in **T**; and **J** or **Ji** in columns **D** and **Z**.

However, spelling is not completely phonetic. The following are the more important of the irregularities:

1. **tsu** ツ may be used to indicate that the initial consonant of the following syllable is doubled, in which case it is often written small and slightly to the right; e. g., *matte* マッテ. Compare *futatsu* フタツ.
2. Long vowels are usually made by placing **u** ウ (sometimes **wa** or **fu**) after the vowel, e. g., *teppō gun* テッポウガン or by a dash after the lengthened sound, e. g., *ie* イー.
3. Long *o* (ō) is sometimes written *au*, e. g., *dō* ドウ.
4. After **k** or **g**, **e** plus **u** or plus **fu** are read *yō*, e. g., *ke* plus **u** is pronounced *kyō*.
5. There is a special letter for **n** or **m** when either occurs at the end of a word or syllable; e. g., *sutensho* ステンショ ken ケン *sambun* サンブン.
6. A consonant followed by **y** is written with two characters, e. g., *byu* is written *bi* plus *yu*, and *kyō* is written *ki* plus *yo*. Before *yū* a consonant in the *i* line plus **u** may be used.
7. The postposition *wa* is written ヲ (*ha*) and the postposition (*w*)*o* is written ヲ (*wo*).
8. The letters **a**, **o**, **u** after **ch**, **j**, or **sh** are usually written *ya*, *yo*, *yu*, e. g., *sha* is written *shi ya*.

With a knowledge of these rules, words and sentences can be written which will be understood by all Japanese. The spelling may not be absolutely correct, for as Sansom says (HGJ, p. 49) "... the correct *kana* spelling of many compound sounds is a matter of considerable difficulty, and indeed is often the subject of controversy." However, if the sounds are written as shown, the words will be recognized.

A study of the chart and the rules should enable the student also to read notes written in *katakana*.

EXAMPLES

1. hon	ホン	6. tokei	トケイ	11. jidōsha	ジドウシャ
2. tama	タマ	7. empitsu	エンピツ		
3. kami	カミ	8. kōhī	コーヒー	12. jōbu strength	ジョブ
4. fune	フネ	9. ikura	イクラ	13. chūbu tube	チュウブ
5. takai	タカイ	10. gyūnyū	ギョウニウ	14. jū	ジュ

The numbers are very easy to learn and will be most useful.

NUMBERS

1. 一	10. 十	21. 二十	30. 三十	100. 百	八千二百六十五	一萬	百八十六萬三千七百六十六
2. 二		31. 三十一	60. 六十	100. 百		10,000	
3. 三		32. 三十二	70. 七十	100. 百			
4. 四	12. 十二	33. 三十三	80. 八十	100. 百			
5. 五		34. 三十四	90. 九十	500. 五百			
6. 六		35. 三十五		500. 五百			
7. 七	14. 十四	40. 四十		1,000. 千	8,265	200,000	
8. 八		45. 四十五					
9. 九	20. 二十	50. 五十				1,000,000	
10. 十							1,863,786

WRITING CHART

Vowels	B	D	G	H	K	M	N	P	R	S	T	V	W	Y	Z
a	パ	タ	カ	ハ	カ	マ	ナ	バ	ラ	サ	タ		ワ	ヤ	ザ
e	ベ	テ	ゲ	ヘ	ケ	メ	ネ	ベ	レ	セ	テ		ヰ		ゼ
i	ピ	チ	ギ	ヒ	キ	ミ	ニ	ヒ	リ	シ	チ		ヰ		ジ
o	ポ	ト	コ	ホ	コ	モ	ノ	ポ	ロ	ソ	ト		ヲ	ヨ	ゾ
u	フ	ツ	ク	フ	ク	ム	ヌ	フ	ル	ズ	ツ	ヰ		ユ	ズ
												FINAL FORM			

This chart shows the order in which the strokes of the katakana syllabary are made. The strokes are numbered in the order made and the number is placed where the stroke begins. All strokes are made from top to bottom except final *n* or *m* and *shi* and *ji* which are made from bottom to top. Arrows have been placed in these three characters to indicate the direction of the stroke. The shape **フ** is made as one stroke.

ABBREVIATIONS

<i>adj.</i> adjective	<i>n.f.</i> noun form
<i>adv.</i> adverb, adverbial form	<i>neg.</i> negative
<i>caus.</i> causative	<i>num. aux.</i> numeral auxiliary
<i>c. f.</i> continuative form	<i>pl.</i> plural
<i>cond.</i> conditional	<i>post.</i> postposition
<i>des.</i> desiderative	<i>pot.</i> potential
<i>f.</i> form	<i>pres.</i> present
<i>fut.</i> future	<i>prob. pres.</i> probable present
<i>ger.</i> gerundial form	<i>pron.</i> pronoun
<i>hon.</i> honorific	<i>sg.</i> singular
<i>imp.</i> imperative	<i>var.</i> variant
<i>interj.</i> interjection	<i>v. i.</i> intransitive verb
<i>irreg.</i> irregular	<i>v. t.</i> transitive verb
<i>n.</i> noun	

JAPANESE-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

All the words of the lessons and exercises are given here with their meanings and their etymology (where this will help the student learn the word or aid him to understand Japanese word formation). An accent mark indicates that the syllable over which it appears has higher pitch. Words with a preceding asterisk have level pitch throughout. The pitch of other words is not given. Homonyms represented in writing by different characters are listed separately. The Roman numerals and Arabic numerals in parentheses refer to lessons and lines respectively.

A

ā (X, 24) oh! good heavens!
 abunai (XIII, 4) dangerous
 achira (VII, 44) that, there,
 over there
 āgari (VI, 9) *n. f.* of agaru
 agarimasu (XII, 50) *pres.* of
 agaru
 agaru go up, come up, enter,
 be offered, be completed
 agemashō (XI, 28) *prob. pres.*
 of ageru
 agemasu (XIII, 61) *pres.* of
 ageru
 ageru offer, give (to a supe-
 rior), raise; see sashiageru
 agomuki face up
 *aida (XI, 36) interval; be-
 tween, among, during,
 while; kono — recently
 *aikawarazu (II, 3) as usual,
 without change
 *ainiku (X, 10) unfortunately
 aite (XII, 43) *ger.* of aku
 *Ajiya (XVI, 4) Asia
 *akabō (XV, 32) porter, red-
 cap

*akarui bright
 akaru-sō (XII, 35) bright-
 looking; see akarui
 *akeru *v. t.* open
 akete (V, 27) *ger.* of akeru
 āki (X, 26) autumn
 *aku *v. i.* open, be vacant
 *Amanoya (XII, 8) *name of a*
 hotel
 āmari (VI, 29) too, too much;
 very (with negative form
 of verb); see taihen
 āmbāi (XIII, 42) condition,
 state
 *Amerika (VI, 17) America,
 the United States
 Amerika-jin (II, 16) Ameri-
 can (person)
 ammari *var.* of amari
 anāta (II, 5) *sg.* you
 *anatagata (II, 30) *pl.* you
 *ane (XIII, 10) elder sister
 *ano (II, 12) *adj.* that, those
 (distant from the person
 spoken to)
 anō I say, if you please
 arai (XV, 61) rough, rude, wild

Arasuka Alaska
 aratte (V, 33) *ger.* of arau
 *arau *verb* wash
 *are (II, 27) *pron.* that, those
 (distant from the person
 spoken to)
 ari (XVI, 13) *c. f.* of aru
 arigatō (I, 3) thank you; —
 gozaimashita thank you
 arimasen (I, 27) *pres. neg.* of
 aru; am not, is not, are not
 arimashita (XI, 36) *past* of
 aru
 arimashō (IX, 13) *prob. pres.*
 of aru
 arimasu (VI, 43) *pres.* of aru
 āru (VIII, 10) be, have, there
 is, there are
 aruite (XI, 14) *ger.* of aruku
 arūku *verb* walk
 Aruzenchin (XIV, 37) Argen-
 tina
 āsa (I, 32) morning
 *asahan (III, 1) breakfast
 *asobu play, enjoy oneself
 *asoko (VIII, 8) *adv.* there,
 that place

asonde (XVI, 52) *ger.* of asobu
 asú (VIII, 18) tomorrow; — no asa tomorrow morning
 atarashii (VIII, 37) new, fresh
 atarashikute (XII, 5) *ger.* of atarashii
 atsúii hot, warm
 *atsukai (XV, 47) treatment, dealing
 *atsusa heat
 atsu-sugiru (XII, 54) too hot; see atsúii
 áu meet, see
 awazu (XV, 61) without meeting; see áu
 azúkêru deposit, entrust
 azukete (XIV, 22) *ger.* of azukeru

B

bakari (XV, 52) only, just, about
 *ban (I, 36) evening
 bán (VIII, 64) number
 *banchi (IX, 59) house number, street number
 bángô (XIII, 18) number, mark, numerical order
 *bantô (IX, 35) clerk, salesman
 basu (IX, 8) bus
 *Beikoku (XI, 36) America, United States
 Beikokú-jin (VIII, 12) American (person)
 -beki (XV, 52) should, ought to
 benjô (V, 35) washroom, W. C., latrine
 Bentendôri *name of a street in Yokohama*
 Berugi Belgium
 bēsu-bōru (XVI, 49) baseball
 -biki (VIII, 41) *sonant form* of hiki
 bín (XIII, 1) bottle, flask

bīru (XI, 50) beer
 *Biwa-ko (XVI, 32) Lake Biwa
 *bōshi (X, 18) hat, cap, head-gear
 Bosuton Boston
 bōtsu-botsu (XIV, 26) so, so; little by little, leisurely; — to slowly
 bu percent, part, rate
 budōshu (XI, 51) wine, grape wine
 Buenosu Airesu Buenos Aires
 Búkkýô (XVI, 36) Buddhism
 bun part; shi — no san three quarters; hyaku — no ichi one hundredth, one per cent
 Buraun (VI, 10) Brown
 Burajiru (XIV, 36) Brazil
 byōbu folding screen; — (w)o tatemawasu set up a screen around something
 *byōki (XIII, 36) illness, disease

C

*cha (III, 9) tea
 *cha-iro (X, 11) light brown color, tan
 chaku *num. aux.* suits of clothing
 chigatte *ger.* of chigau
 chigau differ
 chiúsái (VI, 36) small, little
 chíisaku (VI, 41) *adv. and neg. form* of chiisai
 chikái (VI, 59) near, early
 chikki (XV, 32) check
 -chín (VIII, 68) charge, fare
 chō (IX, 19) street, city block
 chokin (XIV, 19) *n.* savings, deposit
 *chokki (X, 58) vest, waistcoat
 chōme (IX, 56) combination of chō and me, an ordinal suffix

Chōsen (XVI, 12) Korea
 *chōtto (IX, 46) a little, just a minute, hey there!
 chū-gákkō (XVI, 45) high school, middle school
 chūmon (X, 42) *n.* order

D

dá (XI, 64) am, is, are; *simple pres.* of desu
 dai *prefix* largeness, greatness; — sánsei (XI, 21) complete agreement
 dái (I, 0) order, succession; an ordinal prefix; — ichi first
 dái (VIII, 62) *num. aux.* for vehicles, chairs, tables
 daibutsu the great statue of Buddha
 *daidokoro (XII, 43) kitchen
 *daigaku (XIV, 41) university, college
 dake (X, 38) only, alone, no more
 damé (XI, 56) no good, uselessness, impossibility
 danna sama master, sir
 dāre (II, 8) who; — ka somebody
 dashi (XIV, 45) *c. f.* of dasu
 dashimashita (XIV, 29) *past* of dasu
 dashite (XIII, 54) *ger.* of dasu
 dasu put out, take out, send, publish, begin to do, post
 dāsu (VII, 46) dozen
 de (IV, 3) *post.* by means of, in, at, on, with, for
 de *c. f.* of both desu and deru
 de (XI, 49) and, and so; — wa if that's the case
 dekake (VII, 33) *neg. f.* of de-kakeru
 dekakemashō (VII, 31) *prob. pres.* of dekakeru
 *dekakeru go out, set out

deki (XI, 46) *neg. stem* of dekiru
 dekiagarimashita (X, 63) *past* of dekiagaru
 *dekiagaru be completed, be ready
 dekimasen (IV, 30) *neg. pres.* of dekiru
 dekimashita (IV, 34) *past* of dekiru
 dekimasu (IV, 33) *pres.* of dekiru
 dekiru (XI, 13) be able, can, be done, be ready, be completed, be skilled in, produce
 demasu (XV, 6) *pres.* of deru
 dé mo (IV, 18) even; de mo — de mo either — or
 *dempō (XIV, 63) telegram, wire, cable, radiogram; — (w)o utsu *verb* wire, send a telegram
 dénki (XIV, 35) electricity, electric light
 dénsa (VIII, 60) street-car, trolley, electric car, tram
 denshín (XIV, 63) telegraph, telegram
 dénwa (XIII, 10) telephone, phone
 denwachō. (XIII, 9) telephone directory
 depāto (IX, 1) department store
 déru (XIV, 42) come out, go out, appear, leave, be graduated from
 déshita (III, 16) *past* of desu
 deshō (VII, 21) *prob. pres.* of desu
 désu (I, 5) *contraction* of de arimasu; be; — kara therefore, in that case
 *do (V, 22) time, degree, measure; ichi — once, ni — twice
 dō (XIII, 42) how, what; —

iu what kind of, what sort of, who
 dóchira (VI, 21) which (of two), where
 Doitsu Germany
 dóko (IV, 9) where; — no which
 dokú (X, 10) poison; o-ki-no-doku Sama I'm very sorry for you
 dōnata (VI, 3) *sg.* who
 donatagata (XI, 15) *pl.* who
 dōnna (VIII, 6) what kind of, what sort of
 dōno (IX, 4) which (of more than two), what
 dōno-gurai (IX, 11) how far, how long, how much, how many, how large, how deep, how high, etc.
 doru (XIV, 4) dollar
 Doyōbi (VIII, 17) Sunday
 dōzo (V, 37) please

E

e (V, 12) *post.* to, in, into, on
 ē yes, oh yes
 *ebi (VIII, 40) shrimp
 *Eigo (IV, 37) English (language)
 Eikoku (XI, 17) England
 éki (XV, 17) train station, depot
 *empitsu (I, 22) pencil
 erebētā (IX, 36) elevator

F

fú (XVI, 21) urban prefecture
 fú (XII, 30) style, appearance, manner, custom, air
 *fude (I, 17) (writing) brush
 Fúji-san (XVI, 31) Mount Fuji, Fujiyama; see -san
 fukai deep, intense, thick
 fukaku (XIII, 57) *adv. and neg. f.* of fukai
 fukú (X, 45) clothes, suit
 fun (XII, 13) minute

funá-chin (XV, 63) compound of fune and chin; boat fare; passage fare
 fúne (XV, 57) ship, boat
 funkazan volcano
 furanku franc
 Furansu (XI, 17) France
 furó (XII, 51) bath, bathtub
 furóba (XII, 49) bathroom
 furugi (XV, 51) old clothes; see furui and ki *n. f.* of kiru
 furúi (XII, 8) old, aged, ancient
 fusagaru fill, shut, be closed, be stopped up, be engaged, be occupied
 fusagatte (XIII, 18) *ger.* of fusagaru
 futári (VIII, 47) two persons, a couple, a pair
 futátsú (VII, 44) two
 fūto-bōru football
 *futsū (XIV, 54) ordinary, normal, regular, common
 fuyú (X, 30) winter

G

ga (I, 26) *post.* used like wa, but emphasizing the subject; as for
 gai *sonant form* of kai
 *gaikoku (XVI, 54) foreign country, foreign land; — go foreign language; — jin foreigner
 *gakkō (VII, 14) school; — wo deru be graduated from school
 -gawa (XVI, 32) *sonant form* of kawa river
 génki (II, 3) health; spirits; — na healthy
 genkín (XIV, 5) cash, ready money
 Getsuyōbi (VIII, 15) Monday

gín (VII, 40) <i>sonant f.</i> of kin	gozáimasu (VI, 4) <i>pres.</i> of gozaru	*hajime (VIII, 3) beginning, first, opening
ginka (XIV, 16) silver coin	gōzen (VII, 23) A.M., the forenoon, morning	hajimeru <i>v. t.</i> begin, commence
*ginkō (XIV, 7) bank; Dai Ichi — First Bank	go-zōnji (XII, 2) <i>hon.</i> and <i>n. f.</i> of zōnjiru or zonzuru	hajimete (VI, 12) <i>ger.</i> of hajimeru
Ginza a main street in Tokio	know, be acquainted with; you know	hakāru measure, gauge, weigh
gīshi (XIV, 35) engineer	-gumi (X, 53) <i>sonant form</i> of kumi class, group, pack	hakatte (XIII, 55) <i>ger.</i> of hakaru
gō (I, 37) language	*gunjin military man, soldier, sailor	haki-dāshite (XIII, 58) <i>c. f.</i> of haku spew, vomit, and <i>ger.</i> of dasu; expel, send forth, vomit
go- (XIII, 39) <i>an honorific prefix</i>	gunjintachi (XI, 15) <i>pl.</i> military men; soldiers and sailors, soldiers, sailors	hakikaete (XII, 25) <i>c. f.</i> of haku put on and <i>ger.</i> of kaeru change
*go (VII, 3) five	*gurai (VII, 36) <i>sonant form</i> of kurai; about (referring to duration of time)	*hako (VI, 51) <i>n.</i> box; <i>aux. num.</i> boxfuls
*gō (XV, 35) number, an ordinal suffix	Gurando Hoteru (XII, 5) Grand Hotel	haku put on (shoes, boots, trousers), wear
goban (X, 25) checked, checker-board	gyūniku (VII, 37) beef	*hakurai (X, 31) imported
gōgo (VII, 24) afternoon; P.M.; kono — this afternoon	*gyūnyū (III, 7) milk	*hamaki (XI, 60) cigar
gōhan (III, 6) rice, meal, breakfast, dinner, supper		*hāmbún (VII, 60) <i>n.</i> half
go-issō (IX, 4) <i>hon.</i> of issō; together with you		hāmu (III, 3) ham
go-kazoku (VIII, 44) <i>hon.</i> of kazoku; your family		hān (VII, 24) half-past, half
*gomen (VI, 1) <i>n.</i> pardon, excuse		hana nose
*goran (IX, 38) <i>hon.</i> you see		hanā (XII, 28) flower
gōro about (in point of time)		Hanako (VI, 49) <i>a girl's given name</i>
kono — recent (XV, 47); see gurai		hanasasete (XIII, 30) <i>caus. ger.</i> of hanasu
gorufu (XVI, 51) golf		hānashi (XIII, 21) <i>c. f.</i> of hanasu
go-shinsatsu (XIII, 37) <i>hon.</i> of shinsatsu; a medical examination (for you)		hanashita (XI, 32) <i>past</i> of hanasu
go-shujin (VI, 1) <i>hon.</i> of shujin master of your house, your husband, your employer		hanashitai (IV, 1) <i>des.</i> of hanasu; want to speak, want to say
-gōto (XIII, 62) each, every		hanashitaku (IV, 5) <i>des. neg.</i> of hanasu; do not want to speak, do not want to say
go-tsugō (XIII, 39) <i>hon.</i> of tsugō; your convenience		hanashite (V, 6) <i>ger.</i> of hanasu
gozaimasen (VI, 35) <i>neg. pres.</i> of gozaru		hanāsu (IV, 37) speak, say, converse, chat
gozaimashita (VIII, 18) <i>past</i> of gozaru		*hantō (XVI, 12) peninsula
gozaimashite (IX, 42) <i>ger.</i> of gozaru		hara- (XIV, 50) <i>neg. stem</i> of haru
gozaimashō (VIII, 8) <i>prob. pres.</i> of gozaru		

H

hā (XII, 19) *interj.* well, I see, yes, indeed
hachī (VII, 4) eight
hadē-sugiru (X, 50) *composed* of hade gaiety, showiness and sugiru; too showy, too gaudy
*hagaki (XIV, 46) postcard
hāi (I, 19) yes, no (in response to a negative question)
hāi *num. aux.* for cupfuls and glassfuls
*haien (XIII, 60) pneumonia, grippe
hairi (X, 21) *c. f.* of hairu
hairimasu (XVI, 11) *pres.* of hairu
hāiru enter, get into
haite (X, 6) *ger.* of haku
haitte (V, 40) *ger.* of hairu
hajimaru *v. i.* begin, commence

haratte (XI, 65) *ger.* of harau
 *harau (XV, 52) *verb* pay
 haru *verb* affix, stick, paste
 háru (X, 30) spring
 *hashi (XIII, 4) edge
 háshi (XI, 45) chopstick
 hashí bridge
 hássun (IX, 49) *combination*
 of hachi and sun; eight
 inches
 hatte (XIV, 55) *ger.* of haru
 hayái quick, fast, early,
 prompt
 háyaku (VII, 48) *adv. form* of
 hayai; quickly, fast, soon;
 iki ga — naru get out of
 breath
 hayaru be early
 *hazu (XIII, 3) should, ought-
 to, be bound to, be ex-
 pected to
 heishi (XI, 17) soldier
 *hen (XIII, 50) part, side,
 neighborhood
 heyá (XII, 26) room, apart-
 ment
 hi (VIII, 13) day, time, date,
 sun
 hichí (VII, 4) *var.* of shichi;
 seven
 *hidari (IX, 36) left
 *higáshí (IX, 24) east
 *hige (XV, 2) beard, whiskers
 hiite (XIII, 59) *ger.* of hiku
 hiki (VIII, 23) *num. aux.* for
 animals, fishes, and insects
 hikidashi drawer; composed of
 hiku pull and dasu take out
 hikóki (IV, 25) airplane
 hikōyūbin (XIV, 52) airmail
 hiku draw, pull, attract; kaze
 (w)o — catch a cold
 hikúi (VI, 47) short, low
 hikuku (VI, 48) *adv.* and *neg.*
 of hikui
 hima leisure time — desu be
 free, have leisure
 Hiraderuhiya Philadelphia

hirói wide, broad
 hiro-sugiru (X, 7) *stem* of
 hiroi and sugiru; too wide
 hiruhan (III, 5) lunch
 *hito (II, 12) person; kono
 —, sono —, ano — he, she
 hito- one
 hitóban (XII, 36) one night,
 all night, overnight
 hitóban-jū (XIII, 12) through-
 out the whole night
 hitoma (XII, 16) *combination*
 of hito one and ma a *num.*
aux. for rooms
 hitóri (VIII, 46) one person;
 — no single, alone, only;
 — de alone, by one's self,
 voluntarily
 hitótachi (II, 32) people;
 kono —, sono —, ano —:
 they
 hitótsu (VII, 6) one
 *hitsuyō (XV, 51) necessity,
 need; — na necessary, re-
 quired
 hó (IX, 24) side, direction,
 part
 *hōchō (XI, 47) kitchen-
 knife, table-knife
 *hodo (VI, 48) extent, de-
 gree, limit, as, like
 *hoka (X, 54) some other
 place; — ni (de) elsewhere;
 — no other, another (dif-
 ferent one)
 *hoken (XIV, 60) insurance;
 — tsukeru insure; — ni
 hairu be insured; — kakeru
 take out insurance
 Hokkaidō (XVI, 19) *the*
*northern island of the Jap-
 anese homeland*
 homéru *verb* praise, com-
 mend, admire
 homete (VIII, 21) *ger.* of
 homeru
 hōn (I, 9) book, origin; —
 -ya bookstore

hon *num. aux.* for long nar-
 row objects, such as pen-
 cils, pens, bottles, trees, etc.
 hondōri main street
 hōngoku (XVI, 10) one's own
 country, the fatherland;
 composed of hon origin
 and koku nation
 Hōnshū (XVI, 17) *the cen-
 tral island of the Japanese
 homeland*
 Horutogaru Portugal
 hoshí (VI, 37) want, desire,
 care for
 hōteru (XII, 4) hotel
 hotōndo (XVI, 6) almost, ap-
 proximately
 hyakú (VII, 8) hundred, one
 hundred
 hyappiki (VIII, 43) *contrac-
 tion* of hyaku and hiki; one
 hundred 'animals,' one
 hundred 'fishes'

I

i- (XII, 21) *neg. stem.* of iru
 ichí (VII, 3) one; dai — first
 ichiban (VI, 38) number one,
 first, most, best (used to
 form superlative)
 *ichi-do (V, 22) once, one
 time; mō — once more
 Ichigatsu January
 ide (VI, 59) o-ide *hon. ger.* of
 iru, iku, kuru, etc.; you
 are, you go, you come; etc.
 ii (V, 34) good, pleasant,
 proper, all right
 *iie (I, 27) *adv.* no; yes (in re-
 sponse to a negative ques-
 tion)
 iimasu (X, 30) *pres.* of iu
 ika- (VII, 20) *neg. stem.* of
 iku
 ikága (I, 2) how, what
 ikemasen (V, 29) *pot. pres.* of
 iku; cannot go (used to
 express prohibition)

iki (XIII, 57) breath, respiration	*ireru put in, insert, let in, admit	itashimasu (VI, 13) pres. of itasu
ikimasén (IX, 2) pres. of iku	irete (XIII, 20) ger. of ireru	*itasu do, bring about, serve
ikimashō (VII, 13) prob. pres. of iku	irimasu (IX, 7) pres. of iru need	itchaku (X, 41) contraction of ichi and chaku; one suit
ikiru verb live, be saved, revive	irō (X, 11) color, sexual passion; — (w)o suru engage in sexual intercourse	itchōme (IX, 62) contraction of ichi and chōme; first block, first street
ikita (VIII, 52) past of ikiru live, animate	*iro-iro (XVI, 48) various, several, all kinds	itōko (VIII, 25) cousin
ikitai-des. of iku; want to go	*iru (XI, 7) be, there is, there are, live, inhabit, stay	itsu (IX, 54) when, at what time; — ka some time or other; — mo always
ikkin (VII, 39) contraction of ichi and kin; one kin	iru, be necessary, need, want	itsūtsu (VII, 6) five
ikk(w)a (I, 0) contraction of ichi and k(w)a; one lesson, one section, one department	iru-rashii (XVI, 52) seem to be	itte (V, 16) ger. of iku
iku (IX, 1) go, proceed, frequent, attend	*isha (XIII, 10) physician, doctor	itte (V, 23) ger. of iu
ikura (VII, 37) how much, how many, how far, how long	isogimasu (IV, 21) pres. of isogu	*iu (XVI, 41) verb. (pronounced yū) say, tell, speak
ikutsu (X, 2) how many, so many	isōgu (IV, 45) hurry, hasten	iya adv. no, nay
ima (IV, 43) now, the present; — kara from now on, now (referring to the future)	isoide (V, 47) ger. of isogu	
imasen (V, 4) neg. f. of iru	issai (VII, 19) contraction of ichi and sai; one year old	J
imashita (V, 13) past of iru	issen (VIII, 33) contraction of ichi and sen; one thousand; one sen	*ja (I, 27) a contraction of de wa; used after nouns and pronouns before aru or gozaru in the negative
imasu (V, 10) pres. of iru	*issho (IV, 6) ni together, together with, with, in company with	*ja (XI, 64) well, well then; see de wa
imi (XVI, 42) n. meaning, import	isshūkan (VIII, 12) contraction of ichi and shūkan; one week, the week	jagaimo (VII, 54) white potato
imōtō (VII, 14) younger sister	issoku (X, 1) contraction of ichi and soku; one pair (of footwear)	jaku sonant form of shaku
ippai (XI, 58) contraction of ichi and hai; full, one glassful, one cupful	*isu (I, 13) chair	*jama (XII, 40) hindrance, impediment; — suru interfere with
ippon (XI, 52) contraction of ichi and hon	ita (XI, 14) past of iru	*ji (VII, 22) o'clock, hour (in point of time); see jikan
irasshaimashita (XI, 41) past of irassharu	itái (XIII, 50) painful, sore	jidōsha (IV, 31) automobile, auto
irasshaimasu (VI, 3) pres. of irassharu	itāmu verb feel a pain, pain, hurt, ache	jikan (VII, 36) hours time, hour (extent of time), time; — goto (XIII, 62) every hour
irasshāru hon. come, go, be, enter, be at home, be welcome	itande (XIII, 49) ger. of itamu	jikk(w)a (X, 0) contraction of ju and k(w)a; dai — tenth lesson
iremasu (XIII, 22) pres. of ireru	itāru (XVI, 46) go, come; — made up to, down to, until	jimusho office, place of business
	itashimashita (VI, 8) past of itasu	-jin (II, 16) person, man
	itashimashō (VI, 11) prob. pres. of itasu	jingū a Shinto shrine

*jinjō (XVI, 45) ordinary, common, elementary
 *jinkō (XVI, 7) population
 *jinrikisha (VIII, 62) rickshaw
 jippun (VII, 49) contraction of jū and fun; ten minutes
 *Jirō (II, 5) a man's given name
 jishin (XV, 51) one's own self
 jishin (XVI, 27) earthquake
 jissen (VII, 39) contraction of jū and sen; ten sen
 jitchōme (VII, 29) contraction of jū and chōme; tenth block
 *jochū (XII, 50) maidservant, housemaid
 jōtō first class
 -jū (XIII, 12) through, throughout, in the course of
 jū (VII, 4) ten
 jūdō (XVI, 50) Japanese art of self-defense
 jū go (XV, 0) fifteen
 jūn (XII, 30) pure, genuine, unmixed, sterling, unalloyed
 jū ni (XII, 0) twelve
 jūnsa (IX, 13) policeman
 jū rokk(w)a (XVI, 0) sixteenth lesson
 jū san (XIII, 0) thirteen
 jū shi (XIV, 0) fourteen

K

kā (I, 2) an interrogative particle placed after the verb to make the sentence a question
 ka or
 ka getsu (XIV, 36) num. aux. for months
 *kaban (XV, 32) valise, suitcase
 kado (IX, 18) corner, angle
 kaera- (VII, 25) neg. stem of kaeru return

kaeri (VIII, 60) n. f. of kaeru return
 kaerimasu (X, 15) pres. of kaeru return
 *kaeru (verb of the first class) change, exchange; genkin ni — cash
 káeru (VII, 15) v. i. (verb of the second class) return, come back, go back, go home
 kaete (XIV, 16) ger. of kaeru change
 *kagen (XII, 52) degree, extent, measure, adjustment
 Kagetsu (XI, 35) name of a restaurant (literally Flower-Moon)
 kai (XI, 7) story, floor; ni — upstairs
 kaigun navy, fleet; — no naval
 kaikyō channel, strait, sound
 kaimashō (VII, 65) prob. pres. of kau
 *kaimono (VII, 12) n. purchase; — suru go shopping
 kaitai (IV, 25) des. of kau; want to buy
 kaitaku (IV, 26) neg. des. of kau; do not want to buy
 kaite (V, 31) ger. of kaku
 kaji conflagration, fire
 *kakari (X, 20) n. charge, duty, business
 kakarimashō (VII, 34) prob. pres. of kakaru
 kakarimasu (VI, 12) pres. of kakaru
 kakaru v. i. hang, be hanging, depend on, cost, take (time), need, require, be called up
 kakemashō (IX, 38) prob. pres. of kakeru
 kakemasu (IV, 49) pres. of kakeru
 kakéru v. t. hang, sit (hang

the legs); see suwaru; denwa (w)o — telephone
 kakesasete (XIII, 11) caus. of kakeru
 kakete (XIV, 60) ger. of kakeru
 kakimasen (I, 45) pres. neg. of kaku
 kakimashita (III, 32) past of kaku
 kakimasu (I, 44) pres. of kaku
 kakitai (IV, 20) des. of kaku
 *kakitome (XIV, 46) registration, registered letter
 kaku write, spell
 kamaimasen (X, 42) pres. neg. of kamau
 Kamakura a city in Japan
 *kamáu verb mind, trouble oneself about, care about, take notice of
 kámbi (XVI, 47) perfection, completion
 kamí (I, 17) paper
 *kampan (XV, 60) deck (of a ship)
 *kan interval, period, duration, in the space of
 Kanada Canada
 kánai (VI, 10) (my) wife
 kánari (VII, 32) adv. quite, fairly
 *Kanda (IX, 61) a district of Tokio
 *kane (X, 63) money, cash, gold, sum of money
 kángae (XI, 30) n. thought, idea
 kánjō (XI, 62) n. account, bill, computation; — suru calculate
 kara- (XV, 3) neg. stem of karu
 kára (IV, 42) because, since, after; from, out of, through, at the hands of

karā (IX, 47) shirt-collar, collar	kazoemasu (VII, 8) <i>pres.</i> of kazoeru	kimashita (VIII, 22) <i>past</i> of kuru
*karada (XIII, 48) body, physique	kazōēru (VII, 1) count, reckon, calculate	kimasu (XV, 38) <i>pres.</i> of kuru
kāre-kore (XVI, 7) approximately, this and that, one thing and another	kāzoku (VIII, 44) family, one's folks	kimben (XVI, 48) diligence, hard work
Kariforniya California	keiki business (affairs)	kimono <i>composed of the c. f.</i> of kiru and mono; clothes, garments, kimono
kari-nui (X, 59) <i>composed of</i> kari <i>temporary</i> and the <i>n. f.</i> of nuu; basting, tacking; — suru baste, try, fit (a coat) on	Keijō <i>capital of Korea</i>	*Kimura (XIV, 24) <i>a Japanese family name</i>
karite (XIII, 9) <i>ger.</i> of kariru	kékkō, (X, 61) splendid, good, fine; — na excellent, marvelous, delicious, beautiful	kin (VII, 39) 1.32 pounds
*kariru borrow, have on loan, hire, rent (a house, land), lease	*kekkon (VI, 45) marriage, matrimony; — suru wed, be married to, get married, marry	kínjo (VII, 27) neighborhood, vicinity
karu <i>verb</i> cut, clip, crop	*kembutsu (VI, 27) sightseeing; a visit; — suru do the sights, go sightseeing	kinō (IV, 34) yesterday
kashi (VI, 49) confectionery, cake, sweets, candy	kemme (VIII, 67) <i>combination of ken and me, an ordinal suffix</i>	kínu (X, 53) silk, silk fabric; — no silken, silk
kashikomarimáshita (V, 7) all right, willingly (acceding to a request)	kén <i>num. aux.</i> house, door	Kinyōbi (VIII, 9) Friday
*kasu lend, give credit	ken prefecture	*kippu (XV, 37) ticket
kata (XIII, 48) shoulder	kéredomo (IV, 26) but, although	kirashite (X, 10) <i>ger.</i> of kirasu
katá (XI, 38) person; kono —, sono —, ano — he, she	késa (VIII, 40) this morning	kirasu run out of, be short of, be out of stock
katákana (V, 31) <i>one of the Japanese syllabaries</i>	késhiki (XVI, 53) scenery, landscape	kire <i>num. aux.</i> for slices of bread, meat, etc.
kata-michi (XV, 24) one-way, single (ticket)	kesu extinguish, put out	kirei (na) (VI, 33) beautiful
katsudō movie, cinema, film	ki (X, 10) spirit, mind, feelings; see doku	Kirisuto-kyō (XVI, 36) Christianity, Christian religion
katte (XV, 2) <i>ger.</i> of karu	ki <i>c. f.</i> of kuru	kiru put on, wear
*kau (IV, 29) <i>verb</i> buy, purchase	ki <i>c. f.</i> of kiru	kiru <i>verb</i> cut, break off
*kawa (VII, 26) <i>neg. stem</i> of kau	kí (XII, 29) tree, wood	kiseru pipe (for smoking); — wo suu smoke a pipe
kawa (XVI, 31) river, stream, brook	kífun (XIII, 47) feeling, humor; — ni naru feel like, have a mind to	kishā (XV, 1) railway train
kawáite (XI, 50) <i>ger.</i> of kawaku	kiite (IX, 13) <i>ger.</i> of kiku	*kita (IX, 26) <i>n.</i> north
kawaku be thirsty, feel thirsty; dry, be dry	kíito (XVI, 34) raw silk	kite (V, 12) <i>ger.</i> of kuru
*kawase (XIV, 30) money-order, exchange	kíji (IX, 42) quality, material; plain, pure	*kitte (XIV, 47) postage-stamp, check
*kaze (XIII, 59) wind, breeze, draught; cold (disease); — (w)o hiku catch cold	*kikae (XII, 51) <i>c. f.</i> of kikaeru	ko- <i>neg. stem</i> of kuru
	kikaeru change clothes	*ko (VII, 18) child; a <i>diminutive prefix</i> ; onna no — girl; otoko no — boy
	kiki (IX, 21) <i>c. f.</i> of kiku	Kóbe (VI, 30) <i>a city in Japan</i>
	*kiku ask a question, inquire; hear, listen to	Kōbe-yuki (XIV, 48) Kobe bound, bound for Kobe
		*kochira (VII, 55) this place, here, this way, this, this one
		kodomo child, children

kogane change (in the sense of small sum of money); see <i>tsuri</i>	koppu drinking glass, tumbler	* <i>kureru</i> (XII, 42) give, let (a person) have
kogitte (XIV, 5) cheque, check	* <i>kore</i> (I, 18) <i>pron.</i> this, these; — <i>kara</i> now, from now on	<i>kureta</i> (XI, 38) <i>past</i> of <i>kureru</i>
kōhī (III, 4) coffee	korosu kill, murder, slaughter	<i>kūro</i> (X, 24) <i>stem</i> of <i>kuroi</i>
* <i>koko</i> (V, 12) here, this place; — no this	koseba (XVI, 9) <i>cond.</i> of kosu	<i>kurōi</i> (X, 1) black, dark
kokōnotsu (VII, 7) nine	koshi (XV, 43) <i>n. f.</i> of kosu	<i>kūru irreg.</i> come, come up, come down, approach, be derived from
kokōrōmōchī (XII, 26) feeling, sensation, mood, spirits	koshiraeru <i>verb</i> manufacture, make, get ready	* <i>kuruma</i> (VIII, 68) rickshaw, wagon, cart, vehicle, automobile; <i>kuruma-ya</i> (VIII, 68) rickshaw man, rickshaw station
* <i>kokorozashi</i> (XI, 66) a kind offer, gift, kindness, gratuity	koshiraete (X, 56) <i>ger.</i> of <i>koshiraeru</i>	* <i>kusuri</i> (XIII, 61) medicine, drug
koku (XVI, 52) nation, country	kosu <i>verb</i> cross, pass, go across	<i>kutsū</i> (X, 1) shoes, boots
* <i>kokumin</i> (XVI, 48) nation, people, nationality	kotō (IV, 28) thing, matter (abstract), affair, fact, occurrence, case; <i>anata no</i> — about you	<i>kutsūshita</i> (X, 65) socks, stockings, hosiery; see <i>kutsu</i> and <i>shita</i> under
kokyū breath, respiration	kōtō (XVI, 46) high-class, higher; — no advanced, high	<i>-k(w)a</i> (II, 0) lesson, section, department
* <i>komāru</i> be suffering	kotōbā (XVI, 41) word, speech, language, term, phrase, dialect	<i>Kwagetsu</i> (XI, 35) <i>var.</i> of <i>Kagetsu</i>
Komatsu (XI, 55) <i>name of a restaurant</i> (literally small pine)	kowasare mashita (XIII, 1) <i>past</i> of <i>kowasu</i>	<i>k(w)ayōbi</i> (VIII, 16) Tuesday
komatte (XIII, 49) <i>ger.</i> of <i>komaru</i>	kowāsu break, break down, destroy, impair	* <i>kyaku</i> (X, 22) customer, guest, visitor, passenger
kōmban (II, 1) this evening	kozutsumi (XI, 37) parcel, package; see <i>ko</i> and <i>zutsumi</i>	<i>kyō</i> (VIII, 34) today, this day
kome uncooked rice	* <i>ku</i> (VII, 4) nine	* <i>Kyobashi</i> (IX, 16) a district in Tokyo
kōn (X, 51) navy-blue, dark blue	* <i>kuchi</i> (XIII, 54) mouth	<i>Kyōbashi-yuki</i> (IX, 31) <i>Kyobashi-bound</i> , bound for <i>Kyobashi</i>
kōndo (XIII, 58) this time, now, lately; — no present, next, recent	<i>kuchi-hige</i> mustache	* <i>kyōiku</i> (XVI, 40) education, instruction, training, bringing up; — no educational; — <i>suru verb</i> educate
* <i>konna</i> (XIII, 4) such, like this; — <i>ni</i> like this, thus, in this way, so, so much	kudaru <i>hon.</i> of <i>oriru</i> ; come down, get down, descend	<i>kyōku</i> (XIV, 29) office, bureau
konnen this year	kudasāi (V, 16) <i>imp.</i> of <i>kudasaru</i> please, please give me	<i>Kyōto</i> (XVI, 25) <i>a city in Japan</i>
kōnnichi (I, 1) today, this day	kudasaimasen (XIV, 16) <i>pres. neg.</i> of <i>kudasaru</i>	<i>k(y)u</i> (VII, 4) <i>var.</i> of <i>ku</i> nine
* <i>kone</i> (II, 28) <i>adj.</i> this, these	kudasaru give, confer on, be so kind as to, condescend	<i>kyūji</i> (XI, 61) waiter, waitress, bell-boy, page, office boy, servant; — <i>suru</i> wait on at table, serve at dinner
* <i>kono-goro</i> (XV, 63) now, at present, nowadays; lately	* <i>kuni</i> (XVI, 16) nation, country, land, territory	<i>Kyūkyō</i> Catholic religion
konōmī (XII, 7) <i>n.</i> liking, fondness, wish; — no favorite	* <i>kurai</i> (IX, 13) <i>surd form</i> of <i>gurai</i>	
konominasu (XVI, 49) <i>pres.</i> of <i>konomu</i>		
konōmu <i>verb</i> like, be fond of, be partial to		

***kyūkō** (XV, 24) express train, fast train; — **suru** hasten, hurry, go post-haste

Kyūshū (XVI, 18) *one of the islands of Japan proper*

M

ma- *prefix* pure, genuine, just, right, due

-ma (XII, 16) *aux. num.* room, chamber, apartment, space

mā (XIV, 24) Well, I say, come, just do! oh, my!

machi (VI, 6) *c. f.* of **matsu**

machī (VIII, 27) town, city, street

māda (XII, 43) still, yet, moreover, only

māde (VII, 34) until, till, before, by, to, up to, down to, as far as; — **ni** by, not later than

mādo (V, 27) window

mae (XI, 43) *num. aux.* helping, portion

māe (VII, 49) front; — **no** front, fore, former; — **ni** ago, since, before, formerly

***magaru** *v. i.* bend, curve, be bent, turn, make a turn

magatte (IX, 18) *ger.* of **magaru**

mageru *v. t.* bend, lean (forward, backward); **koshi** (w)o — bend the legs, bend over

magete *ger.* of **mageru**

***mai** (I, 32) every, each

mai *num. aux.* for flat thin objects, such as paper, dishes, blankets

***maido** (X, 39) each time, constantly; — **arigatō** I am greatly indebted to you

mairemashō (XII, 13) *prob. pres. pot.* of **mairu**

mairimashita (VI, 53) *past* of **mairu**

mairimashō (VIII, 18) *prob. pres.* of **mairu**

mairimasu (XI, 63) *pres.* of **mairu**

māiru *humble* go, come, call

makeru reduce in price, make cheaper, be defeated

makete (VIII, 53) *ger.* of **makeru**

maki-tabako cigarette

mān (VIII, 40) ten thousand

manabimasen (I, 43) *pres. neg.* of **manabu**

manabimasu (I, 40) *pres.* of **manabu**

manabu study, take lessons in

Manira manila

***mannaka** (XVI, 17) *n.* middle, center, heart; — **no** middle, central; see **ma-** and **naka**

maru *a word of unknown origin always added to names of ships*

***marui** (VI, 53) round, circular

massūgu (IX, 33) straight, direct, straight on; — **na** straight; — **ni** in a straight line; see **ma-** and **sugu**

***mata** (VI, 59) again, too, moreover

mata- (VII, 15) *neg. stem* of **matsu**

matase (VI, 8) *n. f. caus.* of **matsu**

matawa (IX, 52) or, either . . . or; see **mata** and **wa**

matchi match

mātsu wait, wait for, expect

***Matsumoto** (II, 9) *a family name*

matte (V, 41) *ger.* of **matsu**

***mawasu** (IV, 31) drive (a vehicle), turn, spin, refer, transfer

***me** (XII, 29) eye, vision

-me (VIII, 67) *an ordinal suffix*

Meiji year period from 1868 to 1912

Mekishiko Mexico

mén (XII, 27) *n.* face, features, surface, front

ménseki (XVI, 5) area, square measure

meshī (XI, 24) food, meal, cooked rice, livelihood

***michi** (XII, 20) road, street, highway, thoroughfare

miemasu (XII, 29) *pot. pres.* of **miru**

miéru (XII, 11) can see, be seen, be visible, seem, appear, look as if

miete (XIII, 60) *ger.* of **mieru**

***migi** (IX, 25) right (direction); — **no** right, above-mentioned

***mihon** (X, 47) sample, specimen, pattern

mijikái short, brief

mijikaku (XV, 3) *adv. form* of **mijikai**

mimasen (III, 20) *pres. neg.* of **miru**

mimashita (III, 17) *past* of **miru**

mimashō (IX, 14) *prob. pres.* of **miru**

mimasu *pres.* of **miru**

miná (II, 19) all, everybody, everything; — **de** in all, all together

***minami** (IX, 25) south; — **no** southern; — **ni** in the south, to the south

Minámí-Ámerika (XIV, 42) South America

míru see, look at, try

misé (VIII, 7) shop, store

miséru show, display, let (a person) see

misete (IX, 40) *ger.* of **miseru**
mite (V, 3) *ger.* of **miru**; —
morau receive a visit
***mitsu-gumi** (X, 53) suit of
 western clothes, a set of
 three
mitsukarimasen (XIII, 6)
pres. of **mitsukaru**
***mitsukaru** *v. i.* be discovered,
 be found (out)
***mitsukeru** *v. t.* find (out),
 discover, perceive
mittsú (VII, 6) three
miukemasu (XV, 42) *pres.* of
miukeru
miukeru look, appear (to be),
 see
miya Shinto shrine
miyako capital city
***mizu** (XI, 61) cold water;
 see **o-yu**
mizúumi (XVI, 32) lake,
 pond
***mo** (III, 41) *post.* also
 either; . . . **mo** . . . **mo** both
 . . . and; not . . . either,
 neither . . . nor
mo even, if
***mō** (VIII, 41) already, yet;
 now; another, more, again;
 —**sukoshi** a little more
***mochikomu** bring in, carry
 in, take to
mochikonde (XV, 34) *ger.* of
mochikomu
Mokuyōbi (VIII, 16) Thurs-
 day
monō (X, 20) thing (con-
 crete), object, matter; see
tatemono and **kimono**; per-
 son, fellow; **kakari no** —
 person in charge; see **koto**
moraimashō (VII, 57) *prob.*
pres. of **morau**
moraitai (X, 45) *des.* of
morau
morattara (IX, 54) *cond.* of
morau

moratte (X, 41) *ger.* of **morau**
***morau** (VII, 60) get, have,
 receive, take, have (some-
 thing) done, have (a per-
 son) do
mōshi-mōshi (XIII, 13) hello!,
 are you there?, I say there,
 excuse me
mōshimasu (VI, 5) *pres.* of
mōsu
mōsu *verb* say, tell, speak to,
 declare, name
Motomachi (VIII, 63) *name*
of a street in Tokio
mōtsu have, hold, own, pos-
 sess, maintain
motte (V, 10) *ger.* of **motsu**;
motte iku take (literally,
 go having); **motte kuru**
 bring (literally, come hav-
 ing)
mōtto (VI, 36) more, some
 more, further
mōttomo (XVI, 30) most,
 extremely
mugiwará (X, 26) straw;
mugiwara-bōshi straw hat
muite (IX, 24) *ger.* of **muku**
mukatte (XII, 21) *ger.* of
mukau; toward, against
***mukau** *verb* face, front, be
 opposite, look out on, op-
 pose
mukeru *verb* face, turn, aim,
 point, direct
mukete *ger.* of **mukeru**
muku *verb* face, turn, look,
 be suitable for
muné (XIII, 48) chest,
 breast, bosom, feelings
mūri (XIII, 60) unreasona-
 bleness, strain, force; — **na**
 unjust, strenuous; — **ni**
 forcibly, unreasonably
***musuko** (VI, 44) son, boy
musūmé (VI, 44) daughter,
 girl, young woman
muttsú (VII, 7) six

muzukashii hard, difficult,
 troublesome, laborious
muzukashiku (XV, 53) *adj.*
 and *neg. f.* of **muzukashii**
myōgō-jitsu (XV, 13) day
 after tomorrow
myōgō-nichi day after to-
 morrow

N

n' (XIII, 7) *contracted form*
of mono
na name, given name, fame
na (VI, 33) *post. which relates*
two nouns
nadákái (XVI, 31) famous,
 well-known
nado (XVI, 37) and so forth,
 and the like, et cetera
nagái (VI, 57) long
nagara (XVI, 2) while, as, at
 the same time that, during
nágasa (IX, 48) length
Nagasaki (XIV, 56) *city in*
Japan
Nagasaki-yuki (XV, 5) bound
 for Nagasaki
nagashi bath service (wash-
 ing of people by the bath
 attendant); scullery, sink
nái (VII, 20) is not, are not,
 has (have) not, be lacking,
 be missing, there is no . . .
naka (XIV, 58) inside, in-
 terior, midway; — **ni** with-
 in, inside; — **de** within,
 between, among; **naka-**
naka very, considerably,
 quite
nakáōré-bōshi (X, 24) soft
 hat, felt hat
nakatta (XV, 53) *past* of **nai**;
 was not, were not
nakereba (VII, 25) *cond.* of
nai; if not, if there is not,
 if there are not
nakute (VIII, 60) *ger.* of **nai**;
 not, not being

***namae** (VIII, 13) name; see
 na name and mae front
námi (XV, 61) wave, surf
nán (VII, 22) *var.* of nani;
 what; how many; — **ji**
 what time; when; — **no**
 what kind of; — **nen** how
 many years; — **nichi** how
 many days; — **to** what
nanátsu (VII, 7) seven, seven
 years old
náni (I, 14) what, which,
 whatever
náni ka (IV, 14) something,
 anything, some, any
náni mo (III, 15) nothing
(with negative verb) no
 ***Nan-yo** (XVI, 14) South
 Seas
naorimashō (XIII, 64) *prob.*
pres. of naoru
naōru *v. i.* get well, be cured
(of a disease), be mended,
 be repaired, be fixed
naoshite (X, 41) *ger.* of naosu
naosu *v. t.* mend, repair, cure,
 restore, correct
nara (XII, 36) if, provided,
 in case, if it is
nara- *neg. stem* of naru
naraba *var.* of nareba
narau learn, be taught, take
 lessons in
nareba (XII, 4) *cond. stem* of
 naru *plus* ba (wa); if, if it
 is, since, as
narimassen (VII, 15) *pres.*
neg. of naru
narimáshita (VI, 19) *past* of
 naru
narimashō (XII, 40) *prob.*
pres. of naru
narimásu (IX, 53) *pres.* of
 naru
naritatsu consist of, be com-
 posed of, be effected
 ***naritatte** (XVI, 16) *ger.* of
 naritatsu

náru (VIII, 26) become, be,
 get, come to, change into,
 elapse
nasai (I, 49) *imp.* of násaru;
 do
nasáru do, perform, accom-
 plish
natsú (X, 30) summer
natta (XIII, 60) *past.* of naru
natte (XII, 51) *ger.* of naru
náze (IV, 39) why, how, for
 what reason
ne cost, price
né (VIII, 61) isn't that right?,
 you see, doesn't it?, don't
 you, I believe, I dare say,
 etc.
 ***nedan** (IX, 43) cost, price,
 terms
nedókō (XIII, 45) bed, cot,
 berth, bunk
negái (VI, 13) *n. f.* of negau;
 entreaty, petition, request,
 desire, wish
negaimasu (XI, 52) *pres.* of
 negau
negáu *verb* request, beg, be-
 seech, petition, desire, wish,
 hope for
nemuru *verb* sleep, fall asleep
nén (VIII, 31) year; — **ni**
 yearly, per annum
neraremasen (XIII, 44) *pres.*
neg. pass. (pot.) of neru
neru lie down, go to bed, go
 to sleep
netsú (XIII, 55) tempera-
 ture, fever, heat, mania, fad
ní (VII, 3) two
 ***ni** (III, 28) *post.* at, on, to,
 in, into, from, for, in ex-
 change for
 ***niai** (X, 55) *n. f.* of niau
niáu match well, benefit, suit,
 become, be in keeping with
 ***nichi** (VIII, 34) day; —
 gogo; afternoon; — **nichi**
 everyday, day after day

Nichi-Bei Japanese-Ameri-
 can
Nichiyōbi (VIII, 15) Sunday
Nigatsu (VIII, 31) February
nigekomimasu *pres.* of nige-
 komu
nigekomu *composed of c. f.* of
 nigeru flee, run away and
 komu be full; run into,
 take refuge in
Nihon (IV, 3) *var.* of Nippon
 Japan; — **go** Japanese lan-
 guage; — **no** *adj.* Japanese
Nihon-fū (XII, 30) Japanese
 style
Nikkō *city in Japan*
nikú (III, 13) meat, flesh
nikusashi (XI, 46) *n.* fork
nikú-ya (VII, 34) butcher-
 shop, butcher
nímotsu (XII, 41) baggage,
 luggage, load, burden, per-
 sonal effects
 ***nin** (VIII, 44) *num. aux.*
 person, people
 ***ninjin** (VII, 50) carrot
Nippōn (I, 37) *var.* of Nihon
 Japan; — **go**: Japanese
 language; — **no** Japanese
Nippōn-jin (II, 19) *n.* Japa-
 nese (person)
Nippon-Kai (XVI, 9) Sea of
 Japan
ni-san (XIV, 36) two or
 three
 ***nishi** (IX, 26) west; — **no**
 western, west
niru resemble, look like, take
 after
niru boil, cook
nite (XVI, 39) *ger.* of niru
 resemble
 ***niwa** (XII, 27) garden,
 courtyard; — **shi** gardener
 ***no** (III, 17) *post.* enables the
 preceding noun to function
 as an adjective or indicates
 that it is the possessor;

- makes a pronoun of a preceding adjective; one; 's, of, in, at, on
- no de (XIII, 44) because, on account of, owing to
- nódo (XI, 50) throat, gullet; — no guttural, jugular
- nokóru remain, be left over, be left behind, stay
- nokotte (XV, 28) *ger.* of nokoru
- nomasaremashita (XIII, 46) *caus. past* of nomu; caused to drink, had drunk, had taken (by mouth)
- nomimasu (III, 4) *pres.* of nomu
- nomitai (IV, 17) *des.* of nomu
- nomitaku (IV, 19) *des. neg.* of nomu
- nómu drink, taste, swallow; smoke (cigarette or cigar); see suu
- nónde (XIII, 62) *ger.* of nomu
- noremásu (XV, 15) *pot. pres.* of noru
- nori (IX, 32) *n. f.* of noru
- nori (XI, 11) starch, paste
- norikáeru composed of *c. f.* of noru and kaeru change; change trains, cars, transfer
- norikaetara (IX, 20) *cond.* of norikaeru
- noru ride, get into, get on, go on board
- Noruwēi Norway
- nottara (IX, 16) *cond.* of noru
- *nozomi (X, 22) *n. f.* of nozomu; desire, hope
- nozómu *verb* desire, care for, hope, hope for
- nugu take off (articles of clothing)
- nuguu *verb* wipe, mop
- núi (X, 60) *n. f.* of nuu
- núu *verb* sew, stitch
- nutte *ger.* of nuu
- Nyū Yōku (IV, 10) New York
- O
- o- (VI, 33) *honorific prefix*
- Ō-Bei (XVI, 38) Europe and America; — no occidental, western
- *o-cha (III, 9) tea
- *ōfuku (XV, 22) return trip, round trip, going and coming; — suru go and come back, carry on correspondence with, keep company with
- o-hayō (XIV, 1) composed of o and the form of hayai used with gozaru; good morning (literally, [it is] early)
- o-ide (VI, 18) *hon. c. f.* of kuru, iku and iru
- oishii (VII, 58) tasty, good to the taste, palatable
- oishiku (VI, 54) *adv. and neg. f.* of oishii
- oishiū (VII, 59) form of oishii used with gozaru
- oite (XIII, 4) *ger.* of oku put
- okásan (VI, 26) composed of o, kā, and san; mother
- Okayama city in Japan
- ōkii (VI, 36) big, large, great, loud
- ōkiku (VI, 41) *adv. and neg. f.* of ōkii
- ōkikute (XII, 34) *ger.* of ōkii
- okimashō (X, 61) *prob. pres. (fut.)* of oku put
- okimásu (VIII, 54) *pres.* of oku put
- o-ki-no-doku (X, 10) I am very sorry (literally, spirit poison)
- okiraremasen (XIII, 45) *pass. (pot.) pres.* of okiru
- *okíru get up, rise, get out of bed, awake
- *ōkisa (IX, 48) size, dimensions, magnitude, volume; see ōkii and -sa
- okitai (X, 42) *des.* of oku
- ōkiū (XII, 6) form of ōkii used with gozaru
- okosan (VI, 42) composed of o, ko and san; children
- oku one hundred million
- oku put, place, leave; deposit; allow
- okureru be late, be behind schedule; lose (time), go slow
- okuri-dashi (XIV, 45) *c. f.* of okuridasu
- okurídásu *c. f.* of okuru plus dasu send out, forward; see off
- okurimasen (III, 46) *pres. neg.* of okuru
- okurimashita (III, 44) *past* of okuru
- okurimasu *pres.* of okuru
- okuritai (XIV, 56) *des.* of okuru
- *okuru send, forward, see off, escort
- okusama (VI, 20) madam, wife, married lady; Mrs.; see okusan
- okusan (VIII, 36) composed of ōku interior and san; (your, his) wife
- okutta (XI, 4) *past* of okuru
- okutte (IX, 54) *ger.* of okuru
- ō-misoka last day of the year; New Year's Eve
- ómo (XVI, 34) principal, chief, surface, face, front
- omoi heavy, weighty, serious
- omoimasu (X, 50) *pres.* of omou
- omou
- omosa weight
- omōshirōi composed of omo face and shiroi; funny, queer, interesting
- omoshiro-sō (XIV, 39) com-

posed of stem of omoshiroi and sō
 omo-sugiru (XIV, 49) composed of omoi and sugiru
 omotte (XIV, 31) *ger.* of omou
 omōu think, think of, think about, judge, believe, intend, hope, fear
 omowaremasu (XIII, 61) *pres.* of omowareru
 omowareru *pass. f.* of omou; seem, appear, impress (a person) as
 onāji (X, 8) same, identical; — ni equally
 o-naka *n.* (XI, 58) stomach, belly, inside
 onna (II, 12) woman, female; — no women's, feminine; — no benjo women's toilet
 onna no hitō (II, 12) woman; kono —, sono —, ano — she; see hito
 onna no hitotachi (II, 34) women; kono —, sono —, ano — they (women); see hitotachi
 orimasu (X, 11) *pres.* of oru
 orīru go down, come down, descend, alight, disembark
 orite (X, 65) *c. f.* of oriru
 Ōsaka (VI, 30) a city in Japan
 *oshieru teach, impart, show, give lessons in
 oshiete (IX, 60) *ger.* of oshieru
 osoi late, slow
 osōreru fear, be afraid of
 osorete (XV, 61) *ger.* of osoreru
 Ōsutorariya Australia
 otōkō (II, 26) male, man; — no man's, gentlemen's, masculine; — no benjo men's toilet

otoko no hitō (II, 26) man; kono —, sono —, ano — he
 otoko no hitotachi (II, 32) men; kono —, sono —, ano — they (men)
 otōsan (VI, 26) father
 ototo *var.* of otōto
 otōtō (XIV, 33) *var.* of ototo; younger brother
 *ototoi (XI, 55) day before yesterday
 o-tsuri; see tsuri
 oya parent, parents
 oyogimasu *pres.* of oyogu
 oyogu *verb* swim, sail
 o-yu hot water, hot bath

P

pān (VIII, 1) bread
 pān-ya (VII, 64) baker, bakery
 Pari Paris
 *pen (I, 7) pen
 Penshirubania Pennsylvania
 pin *n.* pin, hairpin
 pondo pound, £

R

rai- *prefix* next
 raigetsu (XIV, 37) next month
 raimen next year
 *raishū (X, 59) next week
 -rashii (XVI, 52) *suffix* seem, appear, likely to, like, -ly
 rei zero
 *renshū (V, 31) exercise, practice, training; — suru *verb* practice, drill
 *ri (IX, 13) ri (3.927 kilometers)
 rikūgun (VI, 17) military service, army; — no army, military
 rokkin (VII, 53) contraction of roku and kin
 Rokki-zan Rocky Mountains
 rokk(w)a (VI, 0) contraction

of roku and kwa; six lessons; dai — sixth lesson
 rokū (VII, 3) six
 Rondon London
 roppiki (VIII, 38) contraction of roku and hiki
 roppyaku (XIII, 13) contraction of roku and hyaku
 Rōshya (XVI, 10) Russia; — no Russian
 *ryōhō (X, 37) both, both sides, both directions; — no both, in two ways
 *ryoken (XV, 49) passport
 *ryōkin (XIII, 20) fee, charge, fare, rate
 ryokō travelling; — suru *verb* travel, make a trip
 ryōri cooking, cuisine; — suru *verb* cook; — nin *n.* cook
 ryōriya (XI, 27) restaurant

S

-sa a suffix which makes a noun from an adjective
 sā (XI, 39) come now, well, ah
 sahodo (IX, 43) *adv.* so, so much, very
 *sai (VII, 18) *num. aux.* year, age, years
 saji (XI, 47) teaspoon; ōkii — tablespoon
 saji-zutsu (XIII, 62) spoonful
 *sakana (III, 6) fish
 *sakana-ya (VIII, 6) fish-store, fish dealer, fish monger
 *sake (XI, 49) (alcoholic) liquor, rice wine; — ni you get drunk
 saki front, tip; — no previous, former; — ni forward, ahead; massugu — ni straight ahead
 sakūban (XIII, 11) last night

sakunen last year
Samá (VI, 10) *var.* of **San**;
 Mr., Messrs., Master,
 Miss, Mrs.
samá (X, 10) *same as* **Sama**;
 a title of respect, often
 used with names of occupa-
 tions and relatives of the
 second or third person
sambámmé (XIV, 22) *con-*
traction of **san**, **ban**, and
me; third
***sambun** (VII, 61) *contrac-*
tion of **san** and **bun**; third
***sambutsu** (XVI, 34) pro-
 duct, production, result
sámbyaku (VIII, 63) *contrac-*
tion of **san** and **hyaku**;
 three hundred
***sampo** (XVI, 1) *n.* walk,
 stroll; — (w)o **suru** take a
 walk
sámpu (XVI, 20) *contraction*
of **san** and **fu**; the three
 chief urban prefectures
samúi cold, chilly
***San** (II, 5) *var.* of **Sama**;
 Mr., Miss, Mrs.
san *var.* of **sama**
***san** (III, 0) three; — **chōme**
 third street
-san mountain
***sangai** (XII, 19) *contraction*
of **san** and **kai**; third floor
sangen (XVI, 20) *contraction*
of **san** and **ken** prefecture
***sansei** (XI, 21) agreement,
 approval; — **suru** *verb*
 agree, approve of, support,
 vote for
***sareru** (XIV, 37) *pres. pass.*
of **suru**
sareta (XIII, 7) *past. pass.* of
suru
sashiagemashō (XI, 42) *prob.*
pres. (fut.) of **sashiageru**
***sashiageru** offer, give (to a
 superior); life up; see **ageru**

sashímí (VIII, 49) raw fish
 slices
sáte (VII, 22) well, so, but,
 now, however
***satsu** (XI, 64) *aux. num.*
 volume, copy (of books or
 magazines); note (money)
Saun Paulo São Paulo
sawara- (XIII, 52) *neg. stem*
of **sawaru**
***sawaru** *verb* touch, feel
***sayō** (X, 47) so, yes, indeed
sayonára (I, 48) goodbye, so
 long; (literally, if so . . .
 [must be]; see **sayō** and
nara)
sayōnara *var.* of **sayonara**
séi (VI, 47) stature, height;
 — **no takasa** height
séido (XVI, 40) system. or-
 ganization, institution
***Seireki** (VIII, 33) A.D., the
 Christian era
seito student, scholar
séiyō (XII, 4) *n.* the West,
 the Occident; — **no occi-**
dental, western
sekái (XVI, 35) world, earth;
 — **no international**
sékken (XII, 48) soap; **sen-**
taku — laundry soap
semái (X, 8) narrow, limited,
 cramped
sembiki (VIII, 41) *combina-*
tion of **sen** and **hiki**
sén (VII, 43) 1/100 of a
 yen
sen thousand
sengetsu last month
sensei teacher, instructor
***senshū** (XI, 4) last week
***sentaku** (XI, 4) *n.* washing;
 — **mono** wash (articles to
 be washed or already
 washed); — **suru** *verb*
 wash, do washing
sentaku ya (XI, 10) laundry
 (place), laundry-man, laun-

dress, washerman, washer-
 woman
sha (XV, 35) vehicle, car,
 wagon
sháke (VIII, 37) salmon
***shaku** (IX, 48) Japanese
 measure approximately a
 foot (10 sun = 1 shaku):
 .33140 yards
***shashin** (VI, 24) photo-
 graph, picture; — **ya** pho-
 tographer's shop
shashinki camera
***shashō** (IX, 28) conductor,
 guard
shátsu (IX, 39) shirt
shi (XVI, 2) *c. f.* of **suru**
shi (XII, 28) and, besides,
 moreover
shí (VII, 3) four
shiai *n.* match, game; **jūdō no**
 — judo match; — **suru**
 play a match
shibai play, drama, theater,
 fake
shibáráku (XIV, 24) for a
 while, for a spell
***Shiberiya** (XVI, 10) Siberia
shichí (VIII, 1) *var.* of **hichi**;
 seven
shi-go (IX, 7) four or five
***shigoto** (XIV, 39) *n.* work,
 toil, business, job
***shika** (XV, 28) only, but, no
 more than, barely
Shikago Chicago
shikákú (VI, 51) square
shikán (VI, 18) military offi-
 cer
shikáshi (VII, 43) but, how-
 ever
***shikata** (X, 13) way, method,
 remedy
***shiki** (X, 28) the four seasons
Shikóku (XVI, 18) *one of the*
islands of Japan proper
shima (IX, 39) stripes; — **no**
 striped

<p>shimā (XVI, 16) island</p> <p>shimāguni (XVI, 5) composed of <i>shima</i> island and <i>kuni</i>; island country</p> <p>shimaimasu (XIV, 65) <i>pres.</i> of <i>shimau</i></p> <p>shimashita (V, 21) <i>past</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>shimāsu (I, 32) <i>pres.</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>*shimau finish, conclude</p> <p>shimaru <i>v. i.</i> be shut, be closed</p> <p>shimatte (XII, 45) <i>ger.</i> of <i>shimaru</i></p> <p>*shimbun (I, 15) newspaper</p> <p>shimēru <i>v. t.</i> shut, close</p> <p>shimete (V, 29) <i>ger.</i> of <i>shimeru</i></p> <p>shimpo (XVI, 39) <i>n.</i> progress, advance, improvement; — <i>suru</i> progress, advance</p> <p>Shīna (XVI, 13) China; — <i>no</i> Chinese</p> <p>Shinagawa a district in <i>Tokio</i></p> <p>shinamono article, goods, wares</p> <p>Shinā-jin (II, 21) Chinese person</p> <p>Shinānō-gawa (XVI, 32) the Shinano river; see -gawa</p> <p>*shindai (XII, 31) bed, couch, sleeping berth; — <i>shasleeping</i> car</p> <p>Shinkyō Protestant religion</p> <p>*shinsatsu (XIII, 37) medical examination, diagnosis; — <i>suru</i> examine a patient</p> <p>*shinshitsu (XII, 16) bedroom, stateroom</p> <p>Shintō (XVI, 37) Shintoism, the Shinto religion</p> <p>shinu die, pass away</p> <p>shirarete (XVI, 35) <i>pass. ger.</i> of <i>shiru</i></p> <p>shiraseru <i>caus.</i> of <i>shiru</i>; inform, let know, report</p> <p>shirasete <i>caus. ger.</i> of <i>shiru</i>; see <i>shiraseru</i></p>	<p>shirimasēn (XII, 3) <i>pres. neg.</i> of <i>shiru</i></p> <p>shiro (X, 24) <i>stem</i> of <i>shiroi</i></p> <p>shirōi white, blank</p> <p>shiru know</p> <p>*shita (X, 65) lower part, downstairs, first floor, under, below, beneath</p> <p>shita (XIII, 60) <i>past</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>shita (XIII, 54) tongue</p> <p>shitai (IV, 12) <i>des.</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>shitaku (IV, 13) <i>des. neg.</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>shitara <i>cond.</i> of <i>suru</i>; <i>ni-san</i> <i>nichi</i> — after two or three days</p> <p>*shite (V, 8) <i>ger.</i> of <i>suru</i></p> <p>shitsūrei (V, 21) discourtesy, impoliteness, rudeness; — <i>suru</i> beg pardon</p> <p>shitte <i>ger.</i> of <i>shiru</i></p> <p>shizuka (XII, 20) — <i>na</i> still, quiet, silent; — <i>ni adv.</i> still, calmly, quietly</p> <p>shō-gakkō (XVI, 45) elementary school</p> <p>*Shōgatsu (VIII, 36) January, the new year</p> <p>shōji sliding screen</p> <p>*shōkai (VI, 11) introduction, presentation; — <i>suru</i> introduce, present, recommend</p> <p>shōkin specie, cash</p> <p>*shoku (XI, 23) food, eating, meal, fare</p> <p>shokūgyō (XIV, 35) occupation, profession</p> <p>shōsū (XVI, 51) a small number, minority</p> <p>*Shōwa (VIII, 29) year period from 1926 to the present</p> <p>shū master, employer, chief, the Lord</p> <p>shū (XVI, 6) state, country, province, continent</p> <p>shū week</p>	<p>shufu mistress of the house, housewife, landlady</p> <p>shūfu (XVI, 22) capital city, metropolis; — <i>no</i> metropolitan</p> <p>shūjin (VI, 1) composed of <i>shu</i> and <i>jin</i>; master of the house, husband, landlord</p> <p>shūkan (XV, 45) week, week's extent; see <i>shū</i> week and <i>kan</i> extent</p> <p>shūkyō (XVI, 36) religion, creed</p> <p>shu-to-shite (XVI, 36) mainly, chiefly; see <i>shu</i>, <i>to</i> and <i>shite</i></p> <p>sō (I, 25) thus, so; — <i>desu</i> that's right, so it is</p> <p>sō <i>num. aux.</i> for ships and boats</p> <p>sō <i>num. aux.</i> for folding screens</p> <p>-sō (XII, 35) looking, appearing, seeming; — <i>desu</i> people say, it is said, I hear that, it seems</p> <p>sōba (XIII, 3) side, vicinity; — <i>no</i> neighboring; — <i>ni</i> by the side of, alongside, beside</p> <p>*sochira (VII, 43) there, that, those</p> <p>*sode (IX, 48) sleeve</p> <p>*soko (VIII, 36) that place, there; — <i>no</i> that, that one; — <i>ni</i> (de) in that place, there</p> <p>soku (X, 1) <i>num. aux.</i> for pairs of footwear</p> <p>sōkutatsu (XIV, 52) express delivery, special delivery, urgent</p> <p>sonna such, like that, that sort of; — <i>ni</i> in that way</p> <p>*sono (II, 26) <i>adj.</i> that, those (near the person spoken to); — <i>uchi</i> among the rest, of the number; — <i>ue</i> moreover, besides</p>
--	---	--

*sore (II, 24) *pron.* that, that one, those (near the person spoken to); — *de wa* in that case, then; — *kara* after that, since then
soru verb shave
soshite (III, 4) and (connecting clauses)
sōshite var. of *soshite*
sotte (XV, 3) *ger.* of *soru*
su, do; see *suru*
sugūru (X, 50) exceed, pass, be over, be more than; pass by, pass through, elapse
sūgu (VI, 6) soon, at once, immediately, in a moment
**sui*ei (XVI, 50) swimming, bathing; — *suru verb* swim, bathe
*sūi*hei (XI, 17) sailor, seaman
**suika* (VII, 58) watermelon
**suimono* (XI, 44) soup
Suiyōbi (VIII, 16) Wednesday
sukī (VIII, 49) *n.* liking, fondness; — *desu verb* like, be fond of; *dai* — *n.* love; *dai* — *desu verb* love, be enamoured of; — *na* likeable, enjoyable
sukimassen (VIII, 51) *pres. neg.* of *suku* like
sukimāshita (XI, 19) *past* of *suku* become empty; *onaka ga* — I am hungry (my stomach got empty)
sukiyaki (XI, 43) *sukiyaki* (beef slices cooked in Japanese fashion)
suku verb like, love, be fond of
suku become empty, become vacant
sukōshi (IV, 38) little, few, somewhat; — *mo* not in the least
Sumisu (VII, 12) Smith
sumitai (IV, 7) *des.* of *sumu* want to live

sumitaku (IV, 11) *des. neg.* of *sumu*
**sumō* (XVI, 50) *n.* wrestling, wrestling-match
**sumpō* (X, 58) measure, dimensions; — (w) *o toru* take one's measure for clothes
sūmu verb live, dwell, reside, occupy
sumu verb end, finish, be completed
sun (IX, 49) about 1.19 inches (the Japanese inch)
sūnde (V, 43) *ger.* of *sumu* dwell
sunde (XIV, 64) *ger.* of *sumu* end, finish
Supein Spain; — *go* Spanish language; — *no* Spanish
sūreba (XIII, 63) *cond.* of *suru*
**suru* (IV, 43) *verb* do, try, act, make, cost
**suteru* (X, 27) throw away, cast aside
sutte (XIII, 57) *ger.* of *suu*
**suu verb* suck, draw in, inhale; smoke (pipe or cigar)
suwaritai (IV, 22) *des.* of *suwaru*
suwaritaku (IV, 24) *des. neg.* of *suwaru*
**suwaru* (IV, 47) sit down (Japanese fashion, i. e., squat), see *kakeru*
suwatte (V, 30) *ger.* of *suwaru*

T

tāba (VII, 51) bundle, bunch, faggot
**tabako* (XI, 59) tobacco, cigarette; — *ya* cigar store
tabemasen (III, 15) *pres. neg.* of *taberu*
tabemāshita (III, 14) *past* of *taberu*
tabemasu (III, 2) *pres.* of *taberu*

tabemōno food
tabēru (IV, 34) eat, have to eat
tābeta (XI, 56) *past* of *taberu*
tabetai (IV, 14) *des.* of *taberu*
tabetaku (IV, 16) *des. neg.* of *taberu*
tābete (V, 1) *ger.* of *taberu*
tabeyō (XI, 20) *fut.* of *taberu*
tābun (IX, 57) probably, perhaps, maybe
tachimasu (XV, 10) *pres.* of *tatsu*
tachitai (IV, 22) *des.* of *tatsu*
tada free of charge, gratis
Tāhēiyō (XVI, 4) Pacific Ocean (*tai* is the surd form of *dai* large)
**taihen* (VI, 57) very, serious, awful; — *ni* very, exceedingly
Taiseiyō Atlantic Ocean; — *no* Atlantic
tāishita (XV, 66) many, much, a great deal (*tai* is the surd form of *dai* large)
Taishō year period from 1912 to 1925 inclusive
tāisō (VIII, 8) great many, good deal, a lot of, very much
**Taiwan* (XVI, 13) Formosa
Taiyō Maru S. S. Oceanic
Takagi (XIII, 24) *family name*
takai tall, high, eminent, expensive
Takāhashi (II, 5) *family name*
takaku (IX, 43) *adv.* and *neg.* form of *takai*
Takashima (IX, 6) *a family name*; — *ya* (IX, 11) Takashima's store
take bamboo
takeyabu bamboo grove, clump of bamboos
takō (VII, 56) *form* of *takai* used with *gozaru*

* taku (VI, 1) house, home, residence	* tenugui (XII, 49) <i>composed of te and the n. f. of nuguu</i>	<i>plural; composed of tomo and dachi, the sonant form of tachi</i>
takusán (V, 18) a large quantity; — no much, many, abundant; — ni plentifully	* to (I, 13) <i>post and (connecting nouns and pronouns), with; if, when; that, as</i>	* tonari (VIII, 20) <i>n. neighbor; — no next-door, neighboring</i>
takushí (XII, 11) taxi, taxicab	* to (V, 28) door	tonde (VII, 9) <i>ger. of tobu</i>
tamágo (III, 3) egg	tō the said	toranku (XV, 37) trunk, suitcase, valise
tamé (XVI, 27) good, advantage, profit; — ni because of, on account of, to, in order to, for the sake of, for	tō (VII, 7) ten	toremashō (XII, 47) <i>prob. pres. pot. of toru</i>
Tanaka a family name	tō (XV, 24) class, grade; ittō first class; san tō third class	tori bird, fowl, chicken
Tarō a man's given name	tōbi-irō (X, 11) brown	tori (X, 37) <i>n. f. of toru</i>
tāshika (X, 4) I think, I suppose, if I am not mistaken	tobitai (IV, 27) <i>des. of tobu</i>	tōri (XII, 30) road, street, as, like, in the manner of; see tōru
tashite (XII, 55) <i>ger. of tasu</i>	* tobu (IV, 28) <i>verb fly, jump, skip, hop</i>	* tori-atsukai (XV, 47) treatment, dealing, handling; see tori-atsukau
* tasu <i>verb add</i>	todokemashō (IX, 52) <i>prob. pres. (fut.) of todokeru</i>	tori-atsukau <i>verb treat, deal with, transact</i>
tasú (XVI, 54) a large number, majority; — no many, a number of	todókéru forward, send, report, notify	* torihiki (XIV, 7) transactions, dealings; — suru <i>verb do business with, deal with, have an account with</i>
tatémono (XII, 12) building, architecture	* tōfu (XI, 44) bean-curd	toritai (XV, 2) <i>des. of toru</i>
tateraremasen (XVI, 28) <i>pass. neg. of tateru</i>	* tōi (VI, 28) far, distant	toriúchí (X, 25) fowling, shooting; — bōshi cap
tatéru <i>verb build, erect, establish, set up</i>	* tokai (XVI, 24) city, town; — no urban	tōru take, hold, get, receive, engage, buy
tātsu (IV, 44) <i>verb stand, stand up, come forward, depart</i>	* tokei (X, 40) watch, clock	tōru go through, pass through, get through
tatte (V, 5) <i>ger. of tatsu</i>	tokí (X, 64) time, occasion, opportunity	tsugí (V, 31) next, following
té (V, 10) <i>n. hand</i>	* Tōkiō (IV, 10) Tokio	* tsugō (XIII, 39) convenience, circumstances, arrangement
* tegami (I, 11) <i>composed of te and the sonant form of kami; letter(epistle)</i>	tokkyū (XV, 8) limited express train	* tsuide (VIII, 11) next, secondly; — ni incidentally, by the way, while, when
teishaba railway station, depot	* tokoro (VII, 30) place, locality, one's house, thing, thing that, what, time, while, occasion, but, on the contrary	tsuite (V, 38) <i>ger. of tsuku</i>
teki drop, drops of liquid	* toko-ya (XV, 1) barber, hair-dresser, barber shop	follow; concerning, about, following; — iku follow (there); — kuru follow (here)
teki enemy, foe	tōku (VI, 32) <i>adv. and neg. f. of tōi</i>	tsukare (XII, 48) <i>n. f. of tsukareru</i>
Tekisasu (XVI, 6) Texas	tomari (XII, 38) <i>n. f. of tomaru</i>	tsukárete (XII, 46) <i>ger. of tsukareru</i>
tempura fried shrimp	tomarimasen (XV, 17)	
* tenisu (XVI, 50) tennis	* tomaru <i>v. i. lodge, stop, stop at, stop in</i>	
ténki (XVI, 1) weather	tomeru <i>v. t. give lodging, put (a person) up, stop</i>	
* tennin (XIV, 37) change of post; — suru <i>verb change one's position, transfer (position)</i>	tómo (X, 37) both, together with, as well as	
	* tomodachi (III, 24) friend, companion; <i>originally a</i>	

tsukaréru get tired, grow weary, become fatigued
 *tsukau (XI, 46) *verb* use, handle, employ
 tsuke- (XI, 11) *neg. stem* of tsukeru
 tsukemasu (X, 53) *pres.* of tsukeru
 tsukéru attach, sew on, apply, put in, put on
 tsukete (XI, 10) *ger.* of tsukeru
 tsukí (VIII, 3) month, moon; — ni per month
 tsukimashita (VIII, 40) *past* of tsuku
 tsukimashō (IX, 55) *prob. pres. (fut.)* of tsuku
 tsukimasu (XV, 11) *pres.* of tsuku
 ts kú arrive, accompany, wait on, follow
 *tsukue (I, 13) desk, table
 *tsumetai (XII, 54) cold, chilly, freezing
 *tsumori (IX, 2) intention, thought, purpose
 *tsureru be attended by, take with, bring with
 tsurete (V, 35) *ger.* of tsureru; accompanying; — iku: take (conduct); — kuru bring (a person)
 *tsuri (X, 17) change (remainder from money given); see kogane
 tsutsumi bundle, package
 tsutsúmu *verb* wrap, pack goods
 tsutsunde (X, 14) *ger.* of tsutsumu
 tsuzuite (XVI, 10) *ger.* of tsuzuku
 tsuzuku *verb* continue, follow, appear in succession, be adjacent to

U

uchí (VI, 35) house, home; among, during, within, while; — ni (de) inside, indoors
 uchikin (X, 61) deposit (money paid on account)
 uchimashitara (XIV, 64) *cond.* of utsu
 udé (XIII, 48) arm, skill
 *ue (XV, 28) upper part, upside, surface; — no upper, higher, more than; besides, in addition to; after, on, when, since; sono — moreover, besides
 Ueda (XVI, 1) a family name
 *umareru be born
 umarete (VIII, 26) *ger.* of umareru
 úmi (XV, 55) sea, ocean
 *unagi eel; — ya eel restaurant
 unagi-meshi (XI, 24) *composed* of unagi and meshi; eel and rice
 *undō (XVI, 49) physical exercise, athletic sports, motion; — suru move, be in motion, take exercise
 urá (X, 53) *n.* lining, reverse side, inside
 urágákí (XIV, 10) *composed* of ura and the *n. f.* of kaku; endorsement
 urikiremashita (XV, 29)
 urikírérú *composed* of *c. f.* of uru and kireru cut well, be cut off, be out of stock (compare kuru cut) be sold out
 *uriko (X, 27) *composed* of *n. f.* of uru and ko child; salesman, saleswoman, shop-boy, shop-girl
 urimashita (VIII, 41) *past* of uru
 *uru sell

*ushiro (IX, 26) back, rear; — ni (de, e) behind, at the rear of
 utarimashita *past pass.* of utsu
 utte (X, 18) *ger.* of uru
 *utsu strike, beat, wound, hit, shoot; dempō (w)o — send a wire; niwa ni mizu (w)o — water the garden; go (w)o — play the game of go
 utsumuki face down
 *uwagi (X, 58) coat, jacket; *compare* ue and ki, the *n. f.* of kuru wear
 uwázōri (XII, 23) slippers, indoor sandals; see ue and zōri

W

*wa (I, 18) *post.* indicating that the preceding word is the logical subject of the sentence; may be translated by *as for*
 *waishatsu (IX, 39) white shirt
 wakarimasén (V, 19) *pres. neg.* of waku
 wakarimashita (XVI, 44) *past* of waku
 wakáru *verb* understand, be clear, recognize, distinguish, divide
 wari per ten (instead of percent)
 warúi (XIII, 37) bad, immoral, malicious, roguish
 wasure- (XI, 47) *neg. stem* of wasureru
 wasureru forget, dismiss from the mind
 *watakushi (II, 9) I; — no mine, my
 watákúshídomo (II, 31) we; — no our, ours
 watáshídomo (VI, 45) *var.* of watakushidomo

watashimashita (III, 29) <i>past</i> of watasu	yawarákái (XI, 57) soft, tender, limp	yomimashita (III, 22) <i>past</i> of yomu
watashimasu <i>pres.</i> of watasu	yén (VII, 39) yen (Japanese standard of money)	yomimásu (I, 38) <i>pres.</i> of yomu
watashite (XI, 8) <i>ger.</i> of watasu	yo (VII, 24) four	yomitaku (IV, 39) <i>des. neg.</i> of yomu
watasu hand over, give, pass over, carry across	yo (XI, 66) <i>a particle added to verbs to give emphasis</i> ; I say, I tell you	yômu (IV, 41) <i>verb</i> read, peruse, recite
*(w)o (I, 32) <i>post.</i> usually indicates the preceding word as the object of the verb; has no English equivalent	yô (XI, 11) manner, way; — na like, as; — ni so as to, in order to, to	yôn (XV, 23) four
	yô n. ocean, sea; — no foreign	yonde (V, 19) <i>ger.</i> of yomu
	yobi (VI, 6) <i>n. f.</i> of yobu	yonde <i>ger.</i> of yobu
	*yobu call, hail, summon, send for	yorí (VI, 30) than, from, since, out of, in
	*yôfuku (X, 41) composed of yô foreign and fuku; foreign clothes, occidental dress; — ya tailor, tailor shop	Yôroppa Europe
	yogoreru become dirty, be soiled	*yoroshii (IV, 18) good, all right
	yogorete (XI, 7) <i>ger.</i> of yogoreru	*yoroshiku (VI, 13) <i>adv. form</i> of yoroshii; well, properly; Dôzo — o-negai itashimasu Pleased to meet you (literally, Please think well of me, I beg you); Matsumoto San ni — Best regards to Mr. Matsumoto
	yôí (XVI, 53) <i>adj.</i> good, fine, agreeable, fitting, desirable, all right	yoroshiû (VII, 62) <i>form</i> of yoroshii used with gozaru
	*yôji (XIII, 35) business affairs, errand, engagement	yoru turn, twist
	yôka (VIII, 36) eighth day; eight days	yôshoku western food
	yokatta (XV, 58) <i>adj. past</i> of yoi	yôsu (XIII, 36) state of affairs, condition, circumstances, symptom
	yokka four days, the fourth day	yottari four persons
	*yoko (XIII, 56) <i>n.</i> side, flank; — no cross, side-long; — ni across, sideways, horizontally	yotte <i>ger.</i> of yoru
	yokochô (XI, 28) composed of yoko and chô; side street	yotte accordingly, on account of, in response to
	*Yokohama (XV, 45) <i>city in Japan</i>	yôttsú (VII, 6) four
	yôku (X, 55) <i>adv. form</i> of yoi; well, right, ably; often, much, usually	yôu get seasick, get drunk
	yomimasen (III, 23) <i>neg. pres.</i> of yomu	yowazu (XV, 58) <i>neg. stem</i> of you
		*yu (XII, 52) hot water, hot bath, bath-house, hot spring
		yûbín (XIV, 30) mail, post; — -bako post-box, letter box (bako is the sonant form of hako); — kyoku post office
		Yudaya Judea; — no Jewish; — jin Jew

Y

-ya (VII, 30) *suffix* store, house, merchant

ya (XII, 29) and so forth, and

yabu bamboo thicket, grove

yado house, home, lodgings; — chin hotel bill; — chô; hotel register book

*yado-ya (XII, 7) inn, hotel, tavern

yamá (XVI, 29) mountain, peak

*Yamada (XIII, 27) *a family name*

*Yamamoto *a family name*

*yao-ya (VII, 48) grocer, grocery shop

yarô (XIV, 31) *fut.* of yaru

yaru give (to an intimate or inferior), present, perform, hold (a meeting), do

*yasai (III, 13) vegetable

yasashii easy, simple

yasashikatta (XV, 49) *adj. past* of yasashii

yasûi (VII, 54) cheap, moderately priced

yasui easy, simple

yasumi (I, 49) *n. f.* of yasumu

rest, vacation

yasumu *verb* rest, repose, lay off, be absent from, cut (class)

yatte (XIV, 26) *ger.* of yaru

yattsú (VII, 7) eight

Yudaya-kyō Jewish religion	Z	zen <i>sonant form of sen</i>
*yūhan (III, 8) supper, dinner	-zan <i>sonant form of san</i>	zonji (XII, 2) <i>n. f. of</i>
*yukata (XII, 49) bath robe, dressing gown	zashiki (XII, 16) parlor, room, apartment	zonjiru
-yuki (IX, 28) <i>n. f. of yuku</i> ; bound, destined for	*zasshi (I, 15) magazine, journal	zonjiru <i>verb; colloquial form of</i>
yukimashō (VII, 48) <i>prob. pres. (fut.) of yuku</i>	zéhi (XI, 35) by all means, without fail, certainly	zonzuru (zuru is the sonant form of suru); know, be acquainted with
yukitai (IX, 15) <i>des. of yuku</i>	*zeikan (XV, 47) custom-house, customs	zubōn (X, 58) trousers, pants
yukkūri (V, 22) deliberately, slowly, gently; — suru <i>verb</i> take one's time	*zeikin (XV, 52) tax, duty, charge	*zubonshita (X, 65) <i>composed of zubon and shita</i> under; drawers, underwear
*yuku (VI, 32) <i>var. of iku</i> go	zēmbu (XII, 27) all, the whole; — no all, entire; — de in full, in toto, altogether	-zun <i>sonant form of sun</i>
*yūmei (XI, 26) famous, notorious		-zūtsu (VII, 9) by, apiece, per
		zutsū (XIII, 44) headache
		-zutsumi <i>sonant form of tsutsumi</i>

ENGLISH-JAPANESE DICTIONARY

A
A. D. Seireki
able: be — dekiru
about goro
abuse *n. muri*
accompany tsuku
add tasu
after kara, ue
afternoon gogo, nichigogo
again mata
agreement sansei
ah sā
airmail hikōyūbin
airplane hikōki
Alaska Arasuka
all mina, zembu; in — mina de
all right kashikomarimashita
almost hotondo
alone hitori de
already mō
also mo
although keredomo
America Amerika, Beikoku
American Amerika-jin, Beikoku-jin

among aida, uchi
and soshite, shi, to; — so de; — so forth nado, ya
anything nani ka
approximately kare-kore
area menseki
Argentina Aruzenchin
arm ude
army rikugun
arrive tsuku
article (goods, thing) shina-mono
as hodo, to; — for ga, wa
Asia Ajiya
ask (inquire) kiku; (request) negau
at de, ni
Atlantic Ocean Taiseiyō
attach tsukeru
Australia Ōsutorariya
automobile jidōsha
autumn aki

B
back *n. senaka*
bad warui

baker pan-ya
bamboo take; — grove take-yabu
bank ginkō
barber toko-ya
baseball bēsu-bōru
bath furo, — robe yukata, — room furoba, — service nagashi
bathe suiei suru
be aru, desu, iru, naru
bean-curd tōfu
beard hige
beautiful kirei (na)
because kara, no de; — of tame
become naru
bed nedoko, shindai; — room shinshitsu
become naru
beef gyūniku
beer biru
before mae (ni)
begin *v. i. hajimaru; v. t. hajimeru; — to ... -dasu*
beginning hajime

behind ushiro	butcher niku-ya; — shop	samui; (disease) kaze;
Belgium Berugi	niku-ya	catch — kaze wo hiku
bend magaru, mageru	buy kau	collar karā
beside (no) soba (ni)	by de, made, zutsu; — means	color iro
besides sono ue	of de; — the way tsuide	come kuru, mairu; — up
between aida, naka de	ni	agaru
bill <i>n.</i> kanjō		completed: be — dekiru,
bird tori		dekiagaru
black kuroi	C	completion kambi
blue aoi; navy — kon	cake kashi	concerning tsuite
boat fare funa-chin	California Kariforuniya	condition ambai, yōsu
body karada	call yobu	conductor shashō
book hon; — store hon-ya	camera shashin-ki	consist naritatsu
born: be — umareru	can <i>verb</i> dekiru	continent shū
borrow kariru	candy kashi	continue tsuzuku
both ryōhō, tomo; — ... and	capital (city) shufu	convenience tsugō
mo ... mo ...	carrot ninjin	cooking ryōri
bottle bin	cash <i>n.</i> genkin; <i>verb</i> genkin ni	corner kado
bound (for) -yuki	kaeru	cost <i>verb</i> kakaru
box hako	certainly zehi	count <i>verb</i> kazoeru
boy otoko no ko	chair isu	country kuni, -koku
Brazil Burajiru	change <i>n.</i> kogane, tsuri; <i>verb</i>	cousin itoko
bread pan	kaeru; — clothes kikaeru	cross (over) kosu
break kowasu	channel kaikyō	cure <i>verb</i> naosu
breakfast asahan	charge: — money ryōkin;	custom fū
breath iki, kokyū	person in — kakari	customer kyaku
bridge hashi	cheap yasui	customs zeikan
bright akarui; — looking	check <i>n.</i> kitte, kogitte; <i>verb</i>	cut <i>verb</i> (crop) karu; kiru
akaru-sō (na)	chikki suru	
bring motte kuru; — in	checked (design) goban	D
mochikomu	chest mune	dangerous abunai
brother: older — ani; young-	child ko, kodomo, okosan	daughter musume
er — otōto	China Shina	day hi, nichii; — after tomor-
brown tobi-iro	Chinese (person) Shina-jin	row myōgo-nichi, myōgo-
Buddha's Great Statue Dai-	chopstick hashi	jitsu; — before yesterday
butsu	Christian religion Kirisuto-	ototoi, issakujitsu
Buddhism Bukkyō	kyō	dealings torihiki
Buenos Aires Buenos Airesu	cigar hamaki	deck (of ship) kampan
build <i>verb</i> tateru	cigarette maki-tabako, ta-	deep fukai
building tatemono; <i>num. aux.</i>	bako	degree do, kagen
ken	city machi	department store depāto
bunch taba	class (kind) tō; first — ittō	deposit <i>n.</i> chokin; (advance
bus basu	clerk bantō	payment) uchikin; <i>verb</i>
business (affairs) yōji	clock tokei	azukeru
busy: be — (telephone con-	close shimeru	descend kudaru, oriru
nection) fusagaru; <i>adj.</i> iso-	clothes fuku, yōfuku, ki-	desire <i>n.</i> nozomi; <i>verb</i> no-
gashii	mono; old — furugi	zomu, hoshii desu
but keredomo, shikashi, ga	coffee kōhi	desirous hoshii
	cold tsumetai; (weather)	

desk tsukue
die shinu
difficult muzukashii
direction hō
disease byōki
do itasu, nasaru, suru, yaru
doctor isha
dollar doru
door to
downstairs shita
dozen dāsu
drink *verb* nomu
drive mawasu
drop *n.* teki
drunk: get — you
during aida

E

each -goto
early hayai
earthquake jishin
east higashi
easy yasashii
eat taberu, agaru
edge hashi
education kyōiku
eel unagi; — and rice unagi-meshi
egg tamago
eight hachi, yattsu; — inches hassun
either: — ... or de mo ... de mo
electricity denki
elementary jinjō
elevator erebētā
endorsement uragaki
engineer gishi
England Eikoku
English (language) Eigo
enjoy oneself asobu
enter hairu, agaru
et cetera nado
Europe Yōroppa; — and America Ō-Bei
even *adv.* de mo
evening ban; this — komban
every mai, -goto

examination shinsatsu
exceed sugiru
exercise *n.* (lesson) renshū;
(physical) undō
expensive takai
extent hodo
eye me

F

face *verb* mukau, muku,
mukeru, men suru
fact koto
family kazoku
famous nadakai, yūmei
far tōi; as — as itaru
fare chin
fast *adj.* hayai
father otōsan
favorite konomi no
fear *verb* osoreru
February Nigatsu
fee ryōkin
feminine onna no
fever netsu
few sukoshi (no)
fifteen jū go
find *v. t.* mitsukeru; *v. i.* mitsukaru
finish dekiru, dekiagaru, shi-mau, sumu
fire (conflagration) kaji
first dai ichi, hajime no, ichi-ban
fish sakana; raw — slices sashimi; — seller sakana-ya; — store sakana-ya
five go, itsutsu
floor (story) kai; third — sangai
flower hana
fly *verb* tobu
follow tsuite iku, tsuite kuru, tsuzuku
following tsugi
food shokumotsu, tabemono, meshi
football fūto-bōru
foreign land gaikoku

forget wasureru
fork nikusashi
Formosa Taiwan
four yo, yon, yottsu, shi; —
or five shi-go
fourteen jū shi
France Furansu
free (time) hima
fresh atarashii
Friday Kinyōbi
friend tomodachi
from kara, ni; — now on ima kara
full ippai

G

garden niwa
Germany Doitsu
get: — on noru, — out of breath iki ga hayaku naru, — up okiru, — well naoru
girl onna no ko, musume
give (to a superior) ageru; (to an inferior) yaru; (to me) kudasaru, kureru; (hand over) watasu
glass koppu
glassful hai
go iku, yuku, mairu; — out dekakeru, deru; — through tōru; — up agaru
golf gorufu
good ii, yoi, yoroshii; — morning o-hayō; no — dame
goodbye sayonara
Grand Hotel Gurando Hōteru
graduated: be — from deru
gratis tada
grocer yao-ya

H

half hambun, han
ham hamu
hand *n.* te; *verb* watasu
hat bōshi; felt — nakaore-bōshi; straw — mugiwara-bōshi

have aru, gozaru, motsu
 he (kono, sono, ano) otoko no
 hito, otoko no kata
 headache zutsū
 health genki
 hear kiku
 heavy omoi
 hello moshi-moshi
 help *verb* tasukeru; **it can't be**
 —ed shikata ga nai
 here kochira, koko
 high (advanced) kōtō
 hindrance jama
 hit *verb* utsu
 hot atsui; too — atsu-sugiru
 hotel hōteru, yado-ya
 hour ji, jikan; every — jikan-
 goto
 house ie, taku, uchi
 how do, do iu, ikaga; about
 — much dono gurai, (cost)
 ikura; — many iku, ikutsu,
 nan
 hundred hyaku
 hurry *verb* isogu
 hurt *verb* itamu

I

I watakushi, watashi
 idea kangae
 if moshi, nara
 illness byōki
 immediately sugu
 imported hakurai
 in de, ni, naka ni
 industrious kimben na
 inhale iki wo suu
 insert ireru
 inside naka, uchi (de, ni)
 insurance hoken
 intend tsumori desu
 interesting omoshiroi
 interval aida, -kan
 into e, ni, no naka e
 introduce shōkai suru
 island shima; — **country**
 shimaguni

J

jacket uwagi
 January Shōgatsu, Ichigatsu
 Japan Nihon, Nippon
 Japanese Nihon no; (person)
 Nihon-jin, Nippon-jin;
 (language) Nihon go, Nip-
 pon go; — American Nichi-
 Bei
 Jewish Yudaya no; (person)
 Yudaya-jin

K

kill korosu
 kimono kimono
 kitchen daidokoro
 knife hōchō
 know shiru, zanjiru
 Korea Chōsen

L

lady of the house shufu
 lake mizuumi
 language go
 large ōkii, dai-
 late osoi; be — okureru
 latrine benjo
 laundress sentaku-ya
 learn narau
 leave *v. i.* deru, dekakeru
 left (direction) hidari
 lend kasu
 length nagasa
 lesson gakk(w)a, -k(w)a
 letter tegami; — box yūbin-
 bako
 lie (down) neru
 like *verb* konomu, suku
 lining ura
 little *adj.* chiisai; *adv.* sukoshi;
 — by — botsu-botsu
 live *adj.* ikita; *verb* sumu
 London Rondon
 long nagai
 loud (flashy) hade na
 love *verb* dai suki desu
 low hikui

luggage nimotsu
 lunch hiruhan

M

madam okusama
 magazine zasshi
 mail yūbin
 mainland hongoku
 male otoko
 man otoko, -jin, -ya
 Manila Manira
 manufacture koshiraeru
 many takusan no
 marry kekkon suru
 master of the house shujin
 match matchi
 meal gohan
 meaning imi
 measurement sumpō; take —
 sumpō wo toru
 meat niku
 medicine kusuri
 meet au
 merchant -ya
 Mexico Mekishiko
 middle mannaka
 military man gunjin
 milk gyūnyū
 mind *verb* (trouble oneself)
 kamau
 mine *pron.* watakushi no
 minute fun; ten. — s jippun;
 just a — chotto
 Miss San, Sama
 missing: be — nakusuru
 Monday Getsuyōbi
 money kane; — order kawase
 month tsuki; last — sengetsu;
 next — raigetsu
 more motto, mō; a little —
 mō sukoshi
 morning asa, gozen; this —
 kesa
 most ichiban, mottomo
 mother okāsan
 mountain yama, -san
 mouth kuchi
 movie katsudō

Mr. San, Sama
Mrs. San, Sama
mustache kuchi-hige
my watakushi no

N

name na, namae
narrow semai
nation kuni, koku
naval kaigun no
navy kaigun
near chikai
necessary hitsuyō na; be —
iru
need *verb* iru
neighbor tonari
neighborhood kinjo
neither: — . . . nor mo . . . mo
new atarashii
newspaper shimbun
New Year's Eve o-misoka
New York Nyū Yōku
next tsugi, rai-
night ban; last night sakuban;
one — hitoban; throughout
the — hitoban-jū
nine ku, kokonotsu
no iie, iya, hai
north kita
Norway Noruwēi
nose hana
nothing nani mo (with nega-
tive verb)
now ima, ima kara
number ban, bangō, gō, dai-;
large — tasū; small —
shōsū

O

Occident Seiyō, Ō-Bei
occidental seiyō no; (person)
seiyō-jin
occupation shokugyō
occupied: be — (filled up)
fusagaru
ocean umi
o'clock ji
of no

offer ageru, sashiageru; be
—ed agaru
office jimusho, -kyoku
officer (military) shikan
often yoku
oh ā
old furui; (age) toshiyori
on de, e, ni
once ichi do; — more mō
ichi do
one ichi, hitotsu, hito
only bakari, dake, shika
open *v. t.* akeru; *v. i.* aku
or matawa, ka
order (for goods) chūmon
ordinary futsū
Orient Tōyō
Oriental tōyō no; (person)
tōyō-jin
other (different one) hoka no
ought to hazu, -beki
our watakushidomo no, wa-
tashidomo no

P

Pacific Ocean Taiheiyō
package tsutsumi, kozutsumi
pain *verb* itamu
painful itai
pair soku; one — issoku
paper kami
pardon gomen, shitsurei
parents oya
Paris Pari
parlor zashiki
part (section) hen
pass over kosu
passport ryoken
paste *verb* haru
pay *verb* harau
pen pen
pencil empitsu
peninsula hantō
Pennsylvania Penshirubania
people hitotachi; (citizens)
kokumin; two — futari
percent bu; one — hyaku
bun no ichi; (per ten) wari

perhaps tabun
person hito, kata, mono, -jin,
-sha; one — hitori
personal jishin no
Philadelphia Hiraderuhiya
Philippines Hirippin
photograph shashin
pin pin
pipe (smoking) kiseru
place tokoro
plain *adj.* kiji
play *verb* asobu
pleasant kokoromochi no, ii
please dōzo, kudasai; — give
me kudasai
pleased to meet you dōzo
yoroshiku o-negai itashim-
asu
pneumonia haien
poison doku
policeman junsu
population jinkō
porter akabō
Portugal Horutogaru
post office yūbin-kyoku
postcard hagaki
potato (white) jagaimo
praise *verb* homeru
prefecture fu
present *adj.* kondo no
price ne, nedan
principal *adj.* ōmo na; —ly
shu-to-shite
probably tabun, tashika
product sambutsu
progress *n.* shimpo; *verb*
shimpo suru
publish dasu
pure ma-, jun-
put oku; — on haku, kaburu,
kiru

Q

quality kiji
quickly hayaku
quiet shizuka na
quite kanari

R		
read yomu	shō-gakkō; high — chū-gakkō	six roku, muttsu; —teen jū roku
ready: be — dekiru, dekia-garu	screen: folding — byobu; sliding — shōji	size ōkisa
really <i>interj.</i> ne	Sea of Japan Nippon-Kai	sleep nemuru, neru
receive morau	seasick: get — you	sleeve sode
recent kono goro; —ly kono aida	seasons shiki	slippers uwazōri
reduce (in price) makeru	see miru	slow osoi, yukkuri
registered kakitome	seem mieru, miukeru; — to be iru-rashii; it —s sō desu; —ing -sō	small chiisai
regular futsū	sell uru	smoke <i>verb</i> nomu, suu
religion shūkyō	sen sen; one — issen; ten — jissen	so <i>adj.</i> sayō, sō; <i>adv.</i> sahodo; <i>interj.</i> sate; so, so botsu-botsu
remain (be left over) nokoru	send okuru, todokeru; — out dasu, okuridasu	soap sekken
repair naosu	servant (maid) jochū	soil <i>verb</i> yogoreru
request <i>n.</i> negai; <i>verb</i> negau	seven hichi, shichi, nanatsu	soldier heishi, heitai
resemble niru	several iro-iro	something nani ka
rest <i>n.</i> yasumi; <i>verb</i> yasumu	sew nuu; preliminary —ing kari-nui	son musuko
restaurant ryōriya	shave <i>verb</i> soru	soon sugu
return <i>v. i.</i> kaeru	she (kono, sono, ano) onna no hito, (kono, sono, ano) onna no kata	sore <i>adj.</i> itai
rice (cooked) gohan; (uncooked) kome	ship fune	sorry: I am — o-ki-no-doku sama
rickshaw jinrikisha, kuruma; —man, —station kurumaya	shirt shatsu; white — wai-shatsu	soup suimono
ride <i>verb</i> noru	shoe kutsu	south minami; — America Minami-Amerika
right (direction) migi	shoot <i>verb</i> utsu	South Seas Nan-yō
river kawa	shopping: go — kaimono ni iku	Spain Supein
road michi, tōri	short (in stature) hikui, (in length) mijikai	speak hanasu
Rocky Mountains Rokki-zan	should hazu, -beki, hazu-beki	special delivery sokutatsu
room heya	shoulder kata	splendid kekkō na
rough arai	show <i>verb</i> miseru	spoon saji; —ful saji-zutsu; table — ōkii saji
round marui; — trip ōfuku	shrimp ebi	sport undō
rudeness shitsurei	Siberia Shiberiya	spring haru
run out (of stock) kirasu	side hō, yoko	square shikaku
run (away to) nigekomu	sightseeing kembutsu; go — kembutsu suru	squat suwaru
Russia Roshya	silk kinu; raw — kiito; —en kinu no	stamp (postage) kitte
	sister: elder — ane; younger — imōto	stand <i>verb</i> tatsu
	sit kakeru, suwaru	starch <i>n.</i> nori
S		state (geographical) shū
sailor suihei		stateroom shinshitsu
salesgirl uriko		station (railway) teishaba; eki
salmon shake		stature sei
same onaji		stock: be out of — urikireru
sample mihon		stocking kutsushita
São Paulo Saun Pauro		stomach o-naka, hara
Saturday Doyōbi		stop tomaru, tomeru
say <i>verb</i> iu, hanasu, mōsu		store mise, -ya
scenery keshiki		
school gakkō; elementary —		

straight (directly) massugu
street tōri, chō; first — it-
chōme; main — hondōri;
side — yokochō; — car
densha
stripe shima
student seito
study manabu, benkyō suru
style fū
such konna, sonna
suit fuku, yōfuku; *aux. num.*
chaku; one — itchaku
suitcase kaban
summer natsu
Sunday Nichiyōbi
supper yūhan
swim *verb* oyogu
system seido

T

table taberu, tsukue
tailor yōfuku-ya, shita-ya
take (carry) motteiku; (seize)
toru; — out dasu
tall takai
tan cha-iro
tasty oishii
tax zeikin
taxicab takushi
tea cha, o-cha
teach oshieru
teacher sensei
telegram denshin, dempō
telegraph *verb* dempō wo utsu
telephone *n.* denwa; — di-
rectory denwachō; *verb*
denwa wo kakeru
tell iu
temperature kagen
ten jū, tō; — thousand man
tender yawarakai
tennis tenisu
Texas Tekisasu
than yori
thank you arigatō (gozai-
masu) (gozaimashita)
that sono, sore, sochira, ano,
are, achira

theater shibai
there soko, asoko; sochira,
achira; — is ga aru; ga
gozaru
therefore desu kara, sore de
wa
they (kono, sono, ano) hito-
tachi
thing koto, mono
think *verb* omou, omowareru
third (of a series) sambamme;
(fraction) sambun
thirsty: become — nodo ga
kawaku
thirteen jū san
this kono, koko no, kochira,
kore
those sono, ano, soko no,
sore, are, ano
thousand sen
three san, mittsu; — quarters
shi bun no san
throat nodo
through kara; —out -jū
throw away suteru
Thursday Mokuyōbi
thus sō, konna ni
ticket kippu
time toki, ji, jikan, do; long
— shibaraku; many —s
maido; one — ichi do;
two —s ni do
tip kokorozashi
tired: be — tsukareru
to e, ni; up — itaru; itaru
made
tobacco tabako
today kyō, konnichi
together issho ni
tomorrow asa, asu
tongue shita
too (excessive) amari; (also)
mo
top ue; on — of no ue ni
touch ataru, sawaru
train (railroad) kisha; ex-
press — kyūkō; limited —
tokkyū

transact tori-atsukai
transfer *n.* tennin; *v. t.* tennin
suru; (change cars) nori-
kaeru
travel ryokō suru
treatment atsukai, tori-atsu-
kai
tree ki
trousers zubon
trunk toranku
try miru
Tuesday K(w)ayōbi
turn *v. i.* magaru
twelve jū ni
two ni, futatsu; — people
futari; — or three ni-san

U

under no shita ni
under-drawers zubonshita
understand wakarū
unfortunately ainiku
United States Amerika, Bei-
koku
university daigaku
until itaru made, made
upstairs ni kai
use *verb* tsukau
usual: as — aikawarazu

V

various iro-iro
vegetable yasai
very taihen, taishita, taisō,
naka-naka; (with negative
verb) amari
vest chokki
volcano funkazan
vomit haku
vote: — for sansei suru

W

wait matsu
waiter kyūji
walk *n.* sampo; *verb* aruku;
take a — sampo wo suru
want ga hoshii, -tai
warm atatakai

wash <i>n.</i> sentaku; <i>verb</i> arau, sentaku suru	west nishi	wish <i>verb.</i> -tai, negau, ga iru
washroom benjo	what nani, nan, dō; — kind of donna, dō iu	with de, issho, to
water mizu; hot — o-yu; — a garden niwa ni mizu wo utsu	when itsu, nan ji; toki	woman onna, onna no hito, onna no kata
watermelon suika	where doko, dochira	word kotoba
wave nami	which dono, dochira, doko, no	work <i>n.</i> shigoto; <i>verb</i> hataraku
way (manner) shikata, yō;	while aida, nagara	world sekai
one — kata-michi	white shiroi	wrap <i>verb</i> tsutsumu
we watakushidomo, watashi-domo	who dare, donata; <i>pl.</i> donatagata	wrestling sumō
wear haku, kaburu, kiru	why naze	write kaku .
weather tenki	wide hiroi	
Wednesday Suiyōbi	wife: (my) kanai; (your or his) okusan, okusama	Y
week shūkan, shū; last — senshū; next — raishū; one — isshūkan	willingly (acceding to a request) kashikomarimashita	year nen; last — sakunen; next — rainen; one — old issai
weigh hakaru	wind <i>n.</i> kaze	yes hai, ē, iie
well <i>adv.</i> yoku, yoroshiku	window mado	yesterday kinō
well <i>interj.</i> mā, ja, hā, sā, sate	wine budōshu	yet mada
	winter fuyu	you <i>sg.</i> anata; <i>pl.</i> anatagata
	wipe nugu	young wakai

INDEX

Numbers refer to sections of the grammar.

A
 accompaniment, 46
 adjectives, 21, 43, 47, 78, 101, 103, 105, 106, 107, 108
 adverbs, 14, 28, 106
after, 44, 80
agaru, 41
 age, 58
 alternative questions, 24
and, 15, 83
 articles, 2
aru, 8, 31, 71
 attributive form of the verb, 25, 26, 72
au, 99

B
 base of the verb, 30, 56, 90
because, 29, 44
before, 80
begin, 27
beki, 68
better, 59
bring, 37

C
 capability, 25, 90, 92
 causative form of the verb, 93
come and *go* with the gerundial form of the verb, 37
 comparison of adjectives and adverbs, 47
 compound words, 61
 conclusive form of the verb, 26
 conditional, 57, 89
 continuative form of the verb, 14, 18, 21, 26, 40, 44, 56, 74, 85
 coordination and subordination, 44
 correlatives, 24

D
dake, 79
dasu, 27
 dates, 70, 113, 114, 115
 days of the week, 67
de (postposition), 14, 22, 39
 demonstratives, 2, 10, 73
 desire, 14, 21
 direct discourse, 75

E
e, 14, 33

F
 family relationships, 38
 former and latter, 102
 future, 54, 96

G
ga, 5, 21, 58, 59, 84, 85, 89, 90, 92
 gerundial form of the verb, 28, 30, 31, 32, 35, 36, 44, 66, 71, 74, 76, 80, 81, 97
give, 86
go, 37
gohan, 17

H
hai and *ie*, 82
hazu, 68
 honorifics, 30, 32, 38, 66, 86

I
 indefinite pronouns, 23, 106
 intention, 72
 interrogative pronouns and adjectives, 73, 106
iru (be necessary), 85
iru, 31, 71

J
ja, 6, 39
-jū, 94

K
ka, 1, 23, 24, 106
kakaru and *kakeru*, 42
kan (suffix), 62
kara (postposition), 29, 45, 92
kuru, 26, 27, 30, 37, 56, 116, 117

M
ma- (prefix), 101
made, 51
masu, 7
miru, 66
mo (postposition), 12, 19, 83
mō, 87
morau, 76
must, 57

N
na, 43
nagara, 80
 names, 9
naru, 38, 43, 69
ne, 48
 negative of *-masu*, 8, 18
 negative pronouns, 19, 106
 negative stem of the verb, 32, 54, 56, 57, 93, 98
negau, 40, 86
ni, 14, 28, 92, 93, 98, 99
no, 13, 43, 55, 73, 84
no ni, 95
 nouns, 4, 43
 noun form of the verb, 27, 32, 38, 40
 numerals, 52, 58, 61, 64, 70, 110, 112, 113, 114, 115
 numeral auxiliaries, 58, 64, 70, 73, 110, 111

O
 obligation, 57
oku (verb), 81

only, 79

order: in — to, 14

oru, 31, 71

P

passive form of the verb, 92, 117

past tense, 18, 117

past perfect, 97, 117

permission, 35

personal pronouns, 11, 38, 104

phonetic changes, 18, 30, 61, 63, 67, 73, 101, 112

please, 32, 86

plurals, 4

possession, 13, 49

possessive case, 13

postpositions, 16, 100

potential form of the verb, 36, 90

preference, 59

present perfect, 31, 96, 117

present tense, 7, 26, 96, 117

probable present, 54, 117

progressive form of the verb, 31, 117

prohibition, 36

R

-rashii, 103

relative clauses, 84

S

shika, 79

shimau, 97

shiru, 31

should, 68

so, 5, 29

-sō, sō desu, 65

stereotyped expressions, 100

sugiru, 78

superlative of adjectives, 47

suru, 26, 27, 40, 50, 56, 89, 93, 106, 107

T

take, 37; — *off*, 77

-tara, 74

-te, 30

temporal conjunctions, 80

there is, there are, 49

time, 63

to, 15, 28, 46, 83

transitive and intransitive verbs, 34, 42, 91, 92

try, 66

tsumori, 72

V

verbs, 7, 18, 26, 27, 31, 109, 116, 117

W

wa and *wo*, 3, 5, 20, 21, 85, 92

wakaru, 34, 91

wear, put on, 77

when, 15, 70, 74, 80

which, 73

while, 80

without, 98

Y

ya (postposition), 83

-ya, 60

year periods, 70, 115

yo (final particle), 88

yō desu, yō ni, 65

Z

-zu, 98

-zutsu, 53



EX LIBRIS PROF. DR. DARCY CARVALHO.
SÃO PAULO. BRAZIL